

# X-Class

Operating Instructions



Mercedes-Benz

### **Symbols**



### **↑** WARNING

Warning notes make you aware of dangers which could pose a threat to your health or life, or to the health and life of others.

### Φ Environmental note

Environmental notes provide you with information on environmentally aware actions or disposal.

- Notes on material damage alert you to dangers that could lead to damage to your vehicle.
- Useful instructions or further information. that could be helpful to you.
- This symbol designates an instruction you must follow.
- Several consecutive symbols indicate an instruction with several steps.
- (▷ page) This symbol tells you where you can find further information on a topic.
- This symbol indicates a warning or  $\triangleright \triangleright$ an instruction that is continued on the next page.
- Display Multifunction display/media display
- Highest menu level to be selected in the multimedia system
- Corresponding submenus to be selected in the multimedia system

### Welcome to the world of Mercedes-Benz

Before you first drive off, read these Operating Instructions carefully and familiarise yourself with your vehicle. For your own safety and a longer vehicle life, follow the instructions and warning notes in these operating instructions. Disregarding them may lead to damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

The standard equipment and product description of your vehicle may vary, depending on:

- model
- order
- · country variant
- · availability

The illustrations in these Operating Instructions show a left-hand-drive vehicle. In right-hand-drive vehicles, the arrangement and location of vehicle parts and controls differ accordingly.

Mercedes-Benz is constantly updating its vehicles to the state of the art.

Mercedes-Benz reserves the right to introduce changes in the following areas:

- design
- equipment
- · technical features

Descriptions may therefore differ from your vehicle in individual cases.

The following are integral parts of the vehicle:

- · Operating Instructions
- Maintenance or Service Booklet
- Supplements relating to vehicle equipment

Keep printed copies of the documents in the vehicle at all times. If you sell the vehicle, always pass the documents on to the new owner.

The technical documentation team at Daimler AG wishes you safe and pleasant motoring.

Index	. 4	Child-proof locks Pets in the vehicle	60 61
At a glance	21	Opening and closing	62
Cockpit	21	Key	62
Indicator and warning lamps	23	Doors	65
Overhead control panel	24	Tailgate	68
Door control panel	25	Opening and closing the side win-	
Emergencies and breakdowns	26	dows	69
		Opening and closing the electrical	
Digital Owner's Manual	27	rear sliding window	70
_	27	Anti-theft protection	70
Operating the Digital Owner's Man-	27	<u> </u>	
ual	27	Coate and stance	70
		Seats and stowage	<b>73</b>
General notes	28	Correct driver's seat position	73
Before the first journey	28	Seats	73
Protection of the environment	28	Adjusting the steering wheel	77
Take-back of end-of-life vehicles	28	Stowage areas	78
Genuine Mercedes-Benz parts	29	Ashtray and cigarette lighter	83
Attachments, bodies, installations		Sockets	83
and conversions	29	Fitting/removing the floormat	84
Operating Instructions	30		
Digital and printed Operating		Light and visibility	86
Instructions	30	Exterior lighting	86
Operating safety	30	Setting the interior lighting	88
Declarations of conformity	31	Replacing light bulbs	88
Diagnostics connections	32	Windscreen wipers and windscreen	
Change in the engine power output	32	washer system	92
Qualified specialist workshop	32	Mirrors	
Vehicle registration	32	Operating the sun visors	
Exhaust gas aftertreatment	33	operating the 3th visors	//
Correct use of the vehicle	33		
Information on the REACH regula-		Climate control	98
tion	33	Climate control systems	98
QR codes for rescue card	33	Operating the climate control sys-	
Implied warranty	33	tems	99
Vehicle data memory	33	Air vents	100
Mercedes-Benz Service24h	35		
Copyright	37	Driving and parking	102
00py11611t	0,		
		Driving  DYNAMIC SELECT switch	102 105
Occupant safety	38		
Restraint system	38	Manual transmission	106
Seat belts	39	All whool drive	107
Airbags	42	All-wheel drive	109
Safe travel with children in the vehi-		Refuelling	114
cle	47	Parking	117

Driving systems and driving safety systems	118 135
Instrument display, on-board computer	138 138 138 139 139 140 140
Multimedia systems  Overview and operation  System settings  Navigation (COMAND Online)  Audio 20 navigation  Telephone  Online and Internet functions  Media  Sound	144 147 152 164 165 183 189
	.,,
LINCHATRONIC	
LINGUATRONIC	
LINGUATRONIC	199
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons	<b>199</b> 199
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting	199 199 199 199
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types	199 199 199 199 199
Overview	199 199 199 199 199 199
Overview	199 199 199 199 199
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions	199 199 199 199 199 199 200
Overview	199 199 199 199 199 199 200 200
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition	199 199 199 199 199 199 200 200 200
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands	199 199 199 199 199 200 200 200 201 201
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands  Maintenance and care	199 199 199 199 199 199 200 200 200 201
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands  Maintenance and care ASSYST PLUS service interval dis-	199 199 199 199 199 200 200 201 201
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands  Maintenance and care ASSYST PLUS service interval display	199 199 199 199 199 200 200 200 201 201
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands  Maintenance and care ASSYST PLUS service interval dis-	199 199 199 199 199 200 200 201 201 207
Overview Operation with steering-wheel buttons Voice prompting Command types Entering digits and letters Changing the language setting Help functions Improving voice recognition Individualisation Commands  Maintenance and care ASSYST PLUS service interval display Engine compartment Notes on attaching the licence plate	199 199 199 199 199 200 200 201 201 207

Breakdown assistance Emergency Notes on flat tyres Battery Towing or tow-starting Unlocking the selector lever manually Fuse links	217 217 220 220 223 226 226
Wheels and tyres  Noises or unusual handling characteristics  Regular wheel and tyre checks  Notes on snow chains  Tyre pressure  Spare or emergency spare wheel  Changing a wheel	228 228 228 229 233 234
Technical data Information on technical data	240 240 240 240 242 248 249
Display messages plus indicator and warning lamps	<b>251</b> 251 266

1, 2, 3		Changing the display and sorting
360° camera		criteria for contacts 173
		Deleting contacts 175
Activating/deactivating using	400	Deleting imported contacts 174
reverse gear (multimedia system)	130	Editing a contact 175
Display in the multimedia system	130	Importing contacts 173
Function/notes	129	Introduction 172
Switching on/off	130	Making a call 174
		Receiving vCards 171, 174
A		Saving a contact 174
ABS (Anti-lock Braking System)		Searching for a contact 173
Display message	252	Sending e-mails 175
Function/notes	119	Sending text messages 175
Warning lamp	268	Starting route guidance 175
Access data of the mobile phone		Voice command list 204
network provider		Adjusting the exterior mirrors
Editing	184	(electrically) 94
Making entries	185	Adjusting the headlamp range 87
Selecting	184	Adjusting the volume
Accident		Multimedia system 146
Data transmission	180	Navigation messages 146
Active Brake Assist		Traffic announcements 146
Function/notes	119	Air filter (white display message) 261
AdBlue®	,	Air vents
Additive	245	Setting the rear-compartment air
Display message	258	vents 100
Exhaust gas aftertreatment		Airbag
Filler cap	116	Installation locations 42
Filling	116	Limited protection 43
Filling capacity	245	Overview 42
Filling pump	117	PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator
Important safety notes	245	lamps 43
Notes	115	Airbags
Purity	245	Display message 253
Refill bottles	117	Front airbag (driver, front
Refill canisters	117	passenger) 42
Topping up	116	Kneebag 42
Adding bookmarks	187	Protection provided 42
Additives	107	Sidebag
Petrol	243	Triggering 39
Address	240	Windowbag 42
Entering (navigation)	152	All-wheel drive
Address book	132	Differential lock 112
Adding a new contact	174	Function/notes 109
Adding information to a contact	174	Overview of drive modes 110
Automatically importing contacts	1/3	Alternate route
from the phone	173	

Announcing street names		Batteries	
Switching on/off (multimedia		Charging	221
system)	156	Battery	
Anti-skid chains		Important safety notes	220
see Snow chains		Jump-starting	221
Armrest		Battery (key)	
Stowage compartment		Important safety notes	
Ashtray	. 83	Replacing	. 63
Assistance display (on-board		Battery (vehicle)	
computer)	140	Display message	258
ASSYST PLUS		Belt tensioner	
Special service requirements	207	Activation	
ASSYST PLUS service interval dis-		Belt warning	. 41
play		BlueTEC	
Notes	207	Topping up AdBlue®	116
ASSYST service interval display		BlueTEC exhaust gas aftertreat-	
Notes	20/	ment	
ATA (Anti-Theft Alarm system)	<b>-</b> .	Notes	. 33
Activating/deactivating		Bluetooth <sup>®</sup>	
Interior motion sensor		Activating audio mode	192
Switching off the alarm		Activating/deactivating	149
Tow-away protection		Basic display (audio mode)	193
Attaching a licence plate		Connecting audio devices	192
Attachments/add-on equipment	. 29	De-authorising (de-registering) a	
Audio CD/DVD and MP3 mode		device	193
Playback options	191	Entering the passcode	167
Audio fadeout		Interface	166
Switching the message on/off		Searching for a Bluetooth® audio	
(multimedia system)	156	device	192
Audio mode information	189	Settings	148
Automatic headlamp mode	86	Switching to Bluetooth® audio	
Automatic transmission	0.40	mode	192
Display message	263	Telephony	166
Gearshift recommendation	109	Bluetooth® interface	
Manual shifting	107	Telephony	166
Manually releasing the selector	007	Bonnet	
lever lock	226	Display message	
Selector lever	107	Opening/closing	207
Shift ranges	108	Brake	
Starting the engine	103 217	Brake pad wear	212
Auxiliary battery charge status		Brake fluid	
Avoiding an area	162	Checking the level	211
Axle load, permissible (trailer	0.5.0	Display message	255
towing)	250	Notes	247
n		Brake pad wear	212
В		Brakes	
BAS (Brake Assist System)	120	Brake fluid (notes)	247

Checking brake fluid level		Removing	189
Display message		Central locking	
Warning lamp	267	Emergency unlocking	
Breakdown assistance		Locking/unlocking (buttons)	
Fire extinguisher		Locking/unlocking (key)	
First-aid kit	219	Change of direction	157
Jump-starting	221	Changing a bulb	
Reflective safety jacket		Turn signal lamp (headlamp)	. 89
Warning triangle	219	Changing a wheel	
Breakdowns	. 26	Fitting a wheel	238
Buttons		Fitting the spare wheel	234
On the steering wheel	138	Removing the spare wheel	234
	_	Changing bulb	
C		Door sill light	. 91
Call list		Changing bulbs	
Options	176	Notes	. 88
Call lists	170	Character entry	
Deleting	176	Character bar overview	146
Saving an entry in the address	1, 0	On the touchpad	147
book	176	Using	146
Car	170	Child seat	
see Vehicle		Approval categories	
Car key		Basic instructions	
see Key		Front passenger seat (notes)	. 59
Car wash (care)	213	Front-passenger seat (without	
Care	210	automatic airbag deactivation	
Automatic car wash	213	system)	
High-pressure cleaners	213	ISOFIX/i-Size (fitting)	
Interior		Notes on risks and dangers	. 48
Paint	214	Recommendations for child	
Sensors	214	restraint systems	. 50
Vehicle parts		Seats suitable for belt-secured	
Washing by hand	213	child restraint systems	. 57
CD	210	Seats suitable for ISOFIX child	
Inserting	189	restraint systems	
Removing	189	Securing (notes)	. 51
Selecting a track	191	Securing on the front passenger	
Sound settings (balance, bass,	171	seat	
fader, treble)	197	Securing on the rear seat	. 58
Stop and playback function	191	Suitability of the seats for i-Size	
voice command list		child restraint systems	
CD mode	203	Top Tether	. 56
Playback options	191	Child-proof locks	
CD/audio DVD and MP3 mode	171	Rear doors	. 60
Stop and playback function	191	Children	
CD/DVD	171	Avoiding dangers in the vehicle	
•	189	Basic instructions	
Inserting	107	Cigarette lighter	. 83

Climate control		Cup holder	
Controlling automatically	99	Centre console	81
Demisting the windows	99		
Overview of the automatic air-		D	
conditioning system	98	Dealtheand	
Overview of the manual air-con-		Dashboard	
ditioning system	98	see Cockpit	
Setting the air distribution	99	Dashboard lighting	
	100	see Instrument cluster lighting	
Switching air-recirculation mode		Data import and export function	150
on/off	99	Dealership	
Switching on/off	99	see Qualified specialist workshop	
Switching the A/C function on		Destination	
and off	99	Displaying destination informa-	
Switching the synchronisation		tion	156
	100	Saving to SD memory card	159
Cockpit	21	Storing in the address book	159
COMAND display		Destination (navigation)	
	148	Editing the last destinations	159
COMAND Online		Entering using geo-coordinates	154
	181	From the memory card (travel	
Command list		guide)	154
	201	Keyword search	153
•	199	Saving the current vehicle posi-	
Compass	. , ,	tion	159
•	164	Selecting an address book con-	
Contacts	104	tact as a destination	154
	175	Destination entry	
3	173	Entering a destination by address	152
Control lever	175	Entering a destination by means	
Windscreen wipers	92	of a keyword search	153
Control panel	12	Entering a destination via geo-	
above the windscreen	24	coordinates	154
	144	Entering keywords	153
Conversions/equipment	29	Entering way points	155
Coolant (engine)	27	Selecting a destination from the	
	10	address book	154
8	210	Selecting a destination from the	
. ,	261	list of last destinations	154
	247	Diagnostics connection	32
Warning lamp		Dialling a number (telephone)	167
Copyright	37	Dialogue	
Cruise control	104	Cancelling	199
	124	Continuing	199
1 7 6	257	Interrupting	199
Functions and conditions for		Starting	199
	123	Differential lock	
Operating 1	124	Disengaging	112

Front axle	112	Traffic Sign Assist	134
General notes	112	DSR (Downhill Speed Regulation)	
Differential locks		Function/notes	120
Engaging	112	DTMF tone transmission	168
Terrain	112	DVD video	
Digital tachograph		Operating DVD functions	195
Display messages	264	Dynamic route guidance/TMC	
Dimensions	248	Displays on the map	160
Dipped-beam headlamps		DYNAMIC SELECT switch	
Display message	266	Automatic transmission	105
Discharging the key		Operating	106
battery	63	Operation	105
Display		•	
Multifunction display	139	E	
Selecting the design	147		
Settings	147	E-mail	
Switching on/off	148	Answering	179
Display message		Reading	178
Driving systems	255	E-mails	
Display messages	200	Configuring an e-mail account	177
Calling up (on-board computer)	251	Configuring the e-mails displayed	177
Engine	258	Using text templates	179
Hiding	251	Writing	178
Key	262	EBD (electronic brake force distri-	
Lights	266	bution)	
Safety systems	252	Function/notes	121
Tyres	262	ECO start/stop function	
Vehicle	263	Activating/deactivating	105
Distance warning signal (warning	203	Operation	105
lamp)	275	Electric rear sliding window	
Door	2/3	Opening/closing	. 70
	42	Electromagnetic compatibility	. 31
Central locking/unlocking (key)		Electronic brake force distribu-	
Display message		tion	
Opening (from inside)		see EBD (electronic brake force	
Door control panel		distribution)	
Double lock function	65	Electronic Stability Program	
Driver's door		see ESP® (Electronic Stability Progra	am)
Unlocking (with emergency key		Emergency	
element)	67	Emergency assistance system	
Driving safety systems		Transmitted data	180
	119	Emergency call	, 00
Driving system		Notes	181
ECO Start/Stop function	105	Emergency call button charge	.01
Driving systems		status	217
Display message	255	Emergency call system	21/
Function of the wheel sensors	118	see Mercedes-Benz emergency	
Notes	118	call system	
Overview	119	can system	

Emergency key element	Favourites (Internet) 188
Inserting 63	Fire extinguisher 220
Locking vehicle 67	First-aid kit 219
Removing 63	Fitting a wheel
Emergency spare wheel	Fitting a wheel 238
General notes 233	Lowering the vehicle 239
Engine	Preparing the vehicle 237
Changing the power output 32	Raising the vehicle 237
Display message 258	Removing a wheel 238
ECO start/stop function 105	Securing the vehicle against roll-
Engine number 240	ing away 237
Operating safety 32	Flat tyre
Stopping 117	Changing a wheel/fitting the
Warning lamp (engine diagnos-	spare wheel 237
tics) 275	General notes 220
Engine electronics	Floormat 84
Notes 240	Foglamps
Engine oil	Switching on/off 86
Checking the oil level using the	Four-wheel drive
dipstick 209	Selecting drive mode 111
Display message 261	Frequency
Filling capacity 246	Adjusting for radio stations 196
Notes about oil grades 246	Front airbag
Topping up 209	Front-passenger front airbag
Entering an address (example) 152	deactivation system
<b>Entering digits</b> 199	PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator
Entering the town 152	lamps
Environmental protection	Status indicator
Note 28	Fuel
Returning an end-of-life vehicle 28	Additives (petrol) 243
ESC (Electronic Stability Control)	Refuelling 114
see ESP® (Electronic Stability Program)	Fuel consumption
ESP® (Electronic Stability Pro-	Notes 245
gram)	Fuel filter (white display mes-
Activating 123	sage)
Deactivating	Fuel grade
Function/notes 122	Petrol 242
Important safety guidelines	Fuel grades
Warning lamp	Diesel 244
ESP® trailer stabilisation	Fuel tank
	see Fuel
Exterior mirror heating	Functions
Exterior mirrors	Operable 199
Folding in/out (electrically)	Fuses
Heating 100	Fuse box beside the glove com-
г	partment 227
F	partitione 227
Eastern actting (react function) 150	

Fuse box in the engine compart-		Inspection	
ment	226	see ASSYST service interval display	
Notes	226	Installing/removing the ball cou-	
		pling	136
G		Instrument cluster	
	4 / 4	Warning and indicator lamps	23
GARMIN® MAP PILOT	164		140
Genuine Mercedes-Benz parts	29	Instrument display	
Global		Overview	138
Command	199	Interior lighting	
Glove compartment		Front	88
Gracenote Media Database	190	Overhead control panel	88
Guide rail		Rear	88
Maximum tensile strength	248	Rear interior lighting	88
		Interior motion sensor	
Н		Deactivating	71
Handling control system		Function	71
see ESP® (Electronic Stability Progra	am)	Priming	71
Handwriting recognition	<i>1111)</i>	Switching off	71
Switching text reader function		Intermediate destinations	
on/off	145	Accepting for the route	155
Hazard warning lamps	143	Editing	155
Switching on/off	. 87		155
Head restraints	. 07	Internet	
Removing/fitting	75	Closing the Internet browser	189
Heading up (navigation)	161		188
Headlamps	101	_	189
•		_	188
Changing bulbs (halogen head-	. 89		187
Help function	200		188
		Favourites menu	188
Help window	200	Function restrictions	183
High-pressure cleaners	213	Menu functions	187
Hill start assist	103	Options menu	187
			188
ı			188
i-Size child seat securing system		ISOFIX child seat securing sys-	
Fitting	54	tem	
Suitable seats for securing		Fitting	54
Immobiliser		Suitable seats for securing	52
Implied warranty			
Importing/exporting data	151	J	
Indicator and warning lamps		lack	
Coolant	276	Jack Declaration of conformity	21
Engine diagnostics		Declaration of conformity	31
Individualisation		5.	237
	_0.	Using	237

Jump-start (engine)	Lighting
see Breakdown assistance	Light switch 86
	Lighting systems
K	Notes 86
Key	Lights
	Automatic headlamp mode
Display message	Combination switch 87
	Dipped-beam headlamps
<i>5.</i>	Display message
	Driving abroad
	i Foglamne 86
Position in the ignition lock	Падаги warriing larrius 0/
,	Headlamp range 87
Key positions	Light switch 86
Start/Stop button	Main-beam headlamps
Key positions (ignition lock)	Rear foglamp 86
KEYLESS-GO	Side lamps 86
	Turn signals 87
	Limiter
Start/Stop button	Function/notes 124
Keyword search (navigation)	Operating 124
Selecting an address 15	List of access data
Selecting search options	New provider 185
Selecting search results 15	1 ist of mobile phone network pro-
Using online search	on viders
Kickdown	With the selected provider 185
Manual gearshifting 10	<sup>9</sup> Live Traffic Information
Kneebag	Calling up subscription informa-
	tion 160
L	Load distribution 78
Lane Keeping Assist	Loading
Activating/deactivating	
	•
1 )	,,
Function/notes	Locking
	0
	Lumbar support
Lashing eyelets	0
Permissible tensile load	18 see seats
Lashing points and lashing mate-	М
rials	
Permissible tensile load	<sup>∤8</sup> Main function
Licence plate lamp	Calling up 145
	Making a call
Light switch	Using the call lists 176
operation 8	36

Manual transmission		Mercedes-Benz Contact	
Gear lever	106	Calling the Mercedes-Benz Cus-	
Shift recommendation	107	tomer Centre	181
Starting the engine	103	General notes	181
Manually releasing the selector		Mercedes-Benz emergency call	
lever lock (automatic transmis-		system	
sion)	226	Automatic emergency call	182
Map		Conditions	181
Saving the position	159	Displays in the COMAND display	181
Map (navigation)		Manual emergency call	182
Adjusting the scale	161	Overview	181
Avoiding a new area	162	Switch in the overhead control	
Avoiding an area: functions	163	panel	218
Displaying the next junction	162	Transmitted data	183
Heading	161	Mercedes-Benz Service Centre	
Moving	161	see Qualified specialist workshop	
North orientation	161	Message memory (on-board com-	
RDS-TMC displays	160	puter)	251
Selecting POI symbols on the		Mirrors	
map	161	see Vanity mirror	
Selecting text information on the		Misted-up windows	
map	162	see Climate control	
Showing the map version	162	Mobile phone	
Switching motorway information		Authorising	166
on/off	162	Changing	167
Traffic Sign Assist	162	De-authorising	167
Updating	163	MP3	
Mecca (Qibla)	164	Stop and playback function	191
Media Interface		voice command list	205
Basic display	192	Multifunction display	
Supported devices	191	Overview	139
Switching to Media Interface	192	Multifunction steering wheel	199
Media Interface mode		Multimedia system	
Connection options	191	Display	144
Media search		Overview	144
Starting the media search	191	Music search	
Menu overview		Voice command list	205
CD/DVD audio and MP3 mode	190		
Mercedes me connect		N	
Accident management	180	Navigation	
Breakdown management	180	Navigation	
Calling the Mercedes-Benz Cus-		Adjusting the volume of the navi-	11/
tomer Centre	179	gation announcements	146
Mercedes-Benz emergency call	179	Avoiding an area	162
Mercedes-Benz Apps		Calling up the online search	153
Calling up	186	Deleting an area	163
Mercedes-Benz Connect		Deleting an area	163
Concenting to data transfer	100		

Destination from the memory		0	
card (travel guide)	154		
Displaying destination informa-		Occupant safety	
tion (arrival time, distance to		Airbags	
destination)	156	Belt warning	
Dynamic route guidance/Live		Child-proof locks	. 60
Traffic Information	159	Children in the vehicle	47
Entering a destination by address	152	PASSENGER AIRBAG indicator	
Entering a destination using	102	lamp	. 43
Mercedes-Benz Apps	154	Pets in the vehicle	61
GARMIN® MAP PILOT		PRE-SAFE® (anticipatory occu-	
	164	pant protection)	121
Info on navigation	164	Restraint system	
Lane recommendation	157	Restraint system warning lamp	
Off-road/Off-map (off-road desti-		Seat belts	
nation)	158	Off-road	0,
Previous destinations	154	During route guidance	158
Qibla	164	On-board computer	150
Reading map data	163		140
Repeating announcements	158	Assistance graphic menu	
Route options	155	Display service	207
Route settings	155	Media menu	142
Route with intermediate destina-		Message memory	251
tions	155	Multifunction display	139
Selecting a destination from a		Navigation menu	141
memory card	154	Operation	139
Selecting a destination from the		Radio menu	142
list of last destinations	154	Resetting the values in the trip	
Selecting a destination on the		menu	141
map	154	Service menu	140
Selecting a POI	153	Telephone menu	142
Selecting announcements	156	Trip menu	140
Setting the route type (short	100	On-board diagnostics interface	
route, fast route, dynamic route		see Diagnostics connection	
or economic route)	155	Online and Internet functions	
Showing/hiding the menu	152	Closing the Internet browser	189
	132	Connection status	186
Switching announcements	157	Displaying the connection status	186
on/off	157	Enabling a mobile phone for	
Switching on	152	Internet access	184
voice command list	202	Establishing/ending a connec-	
Navigation announcements	450	tion	186
Repeating	158	Manually setting the access data	100
Switching off	157	of the mobile phone network	
Switching off/on	157	provider	185
North orientation (navigation)	161	Selecting the access data of the	100
Notes on display messages	251	mobile phone network provider	184
Notes on running-in a new vehi-		•	104
cle	103	Setting up an Internet connec-	102
		tion	183

Operating Instructions		Adding information to a contact	172
Before the first journey	28	Automatically importing contacts	
Digital and printed operating		from the mobile phone	169
instructions	30	Calling a contact	171
General notes	30	Changing the display and sorting	
Operating safety		criteria for contacts	170
Correct use	33	Deleting a contact	172
Warning note sticker		Deleting imported contacts	171
Operating safety and registration		Importing contacts	170
Attachments/add-on equipment	29	Saving a contact	171
Changes in engine performance	32	Searching for a contact	170
Installations and conversions		Symbol overview	169
Notes on body/equipment		Picture viewer	
mounting directives	29	Changing view	195
Operating safety and vehicle	_,	Displaying pictures	195
approval		Exiting the picture viewer	195
BlueTEC exhaust gas aftertreat-		General notes	195
ment	33	Searching for pictures on	.,.
Operation		another data medium	195
Digital Owner's Manual	27	Starting a slide show	195
Overhead control panel		PIN protection	.,.
Panor minimum		Activating/deactivating	151
P		PRE-SAFE® (anticipatory occu-	
		pant protection)	
Paintwork (cleaning instructions)	214	Operation	121
Parking			12
Important safety notes	117	Q	
Parking Assist PARKTRONIC		α	
Deactivating/activating	126	Qibla	164
Function/notes	126	QR code	
Parking brake		Rescue card	. 33
Display message	255 (	Qualified specialist workshop	. 32
Emergency braking	118		
Warning lamp	270	R	
PARKTRONIC		Radio	
Problem (fault)	127		10/
Sensors	127	Deleting a station	196
Switching the rear sensors		Displaying radio text	197
on/off	127	Overview	196
PASSENGER AIR BAG		Setting a station	196
Indicator lamps	43	Setting station tracking	197
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF warning		Setting the waveband	196
lamp	274	Storing stations	196
PASSENGER AIRBAG ON indicator		Switching on	196
lamp	272	Tagging music tracks (download-	
	2,2		
Pets in the vehicle		ing/purchasing tracks from the	
Phone book			197 204

Radio station	Function during an accident 39
Searching 196	Limited protection 38
Storing 196	Malfunction 38
<b>Radio text</b> 197	Operational readiness 38
Radio type approvals	Protection provided 38
Tyre pressure monitors 232	Self-check 38
Radio-based vehicle components	Warning lamp 270
Declaration of conformity 31	Warning lamp (function) 38
REACH Regulation 33	Reversing camera
Read-aloud function	Coupling up a trailer 128
Automatic 161	Guide lines in the display 128
Reading e-mails aloud 178	Operation 127
Rear bench seat	Switching on/off 128
Folding up the seat cushion	wide-angle function 128
Stowage compartment 81	Route
Rear compartment	Calculating 155
Head restraints 76	Route (navigation)
Rear foglamp	Selecting an alternative route 156
Switching on/off 86	Setting the route type (short
Rear view camera	route, fast route, dynamic route
Activating/deactivating using the	or economic route) 155
reverse gear (multimedia system) 128	Route guidance
Rear window heating	Cancel 158
Switching on/off 100	Continue 158
Rear-compartment seat belt sta-	Destination reached
tus indicator 41	From an off-road position
Rear-view mirror	General notes
Compass display 95	Lane recommendations
Dipping (automatic) 94	To an off-road destination
Dipping (manual) 95	Route settings
Receiving vCards 171, 174	Selecting the route type 155
Reducing agent	0
see AdBlue®	S
Replacing bulbs	Safety
important safety notes 88	Children in the vehicle 47
Licence plate lamp 92	Operating safety 30
Overview of bulb types 89	Safety notes
Tail lamp 92	Using the telephone 165
<b>Rescue card</b>	Safety system
Reserve fuel	see Driving safety systems
Display message	SD card
Switching the message on/off	Inserting 190
(multimedia system)	Removing 190
Warning lamp	Searching for a filling station
Resetting (factory settings)	When the fuel level is low
Restraint system	Seat
Basic instructions 47	Correct driver's seat position 73

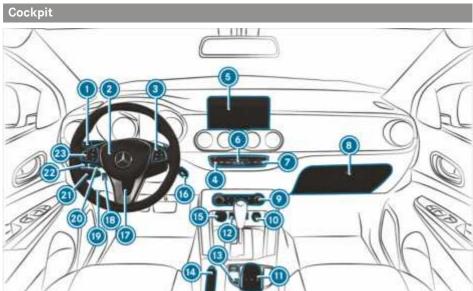
Seat belt		Settings	
Limited protection	40	Sound settings	197
Protection provided	39	Side window	
Seat belts		Child-proof lock	61
Adjusting the height	41	Sidebag	42
Fastening	41	Snow chains	228
Rear seat belt status indicator	41	Socket	
Releasing	41	Armrest centre console	83
Warning lamp	271	Sockets	
Warning lamp (function)	41	Centre console	83
Seats		Rear compartment	84
Adjusting (electrically)	73	Sound	
Adjusting (manually)	74	Switching on/off	145
Adjusting lumbar support	73	Sound settings	
Adjusting the co-driver's seat	73	Balance/fader	197
Adjusting the head restraint	75	Calling up the sound menu	197
Seat heating	77	Equaliser	197
Setting the driver's seat	73	Spare wheel	
Selecting stations		General notes	233
Radio	196	Removing/fitting	233
Sensors (cleaning instructions) 2	214	Specialist workshop	32
Service Centre		Spectacles compartment	80
see Qualified specialist workshop		SPEEDTRONIC	
Service display		Display message (vehicle without	
Special service requirements	207	steering wheel buttons)	257
Service interval display		Spelling	199
	207	Start/Stop button	
Disconnection periods	207	Key positions	102
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	207	Starting the vehicle	
Notes	207	when the key battery is dis-	
Service menu (on-board com-		charged	63
puter)	140	Station memory (radio)	•
Service products		Storing the current station	196
AdBlue <sup>®</sup> special additives	245	Station preset (radio)	
•	247	Moving a marked station	196
	247	Station presets (radio)	
	246	Deleting marked stations	196
_	242	Steering	
Washer fluid	247	•	264
	148	Warning lamps	275
_	147	Steering wheel	
	147	Adjusting	77
	148	Button overview	138
Setting the volume		Buttons (on-board computer)	
Telephone calls	146	Stickers	
	196	Storage compartments	

Storing stations	Telephone
Radio 196	Accepting a call (multimedia sys-
Stowage compartments	tem) 168
Armrest (under) 81	Adding a call 168
<b>Stowage net</b> 81	Adjusting the volume for calls 146
Stowage spaces and compart-	Authorising a mobile phone (con-
ments	necting) 166
Glove compartment 80	Call lists 176
Spectacles compartment 80	Call waiting 168
<b>Sun visor</b> 97	Command list 201
SVHC (Substances of Very High	Conference calls 168
<b>Concern)</b>	E-mail 177
Switching between summer and	Entering a number 167
standard time 148	Functions available during a call 168
Switching off the alarm (ATA) 71	Incoming call during an existing
Switching the loading area light-	call 168
ing on and off 87	Making a call 167
Switching traffic announcements	Reading messages 178
on/off	Rejecting a call (multimedia sys-
Radio 197	tem) 168
System settings	Safety notes 165
Language 150	Sending DTMF tones 168
Selecting summer time 148	Setting the reception and trans-
Switching automatic time set-	mission volume 167
tings on/off 148	Switching between calls (call
Text reader speed 148	waiting) 168
Time zone 148	Telephone menu overview
	Text message (SMS) 177
T	Toggling 168
Tail lamp	Voice recognition
•	Writing e-mails
Replacing bulbs	Writing text messages 178
changing 92	Telephone number
Tailgate 72	Entering
Locking/unlocking 68	Text message
Opening/closing	Replying
Tank capacity	Text message (SMS)
Technical data	Call sender         178           Reading         178
Drawbar load (maximum)	3
Guide rail 248	Reading aloud
Lashing points	Writing 178
Loads	Text messages
Notes	Configuring the text messages displayed 177
Trailer tow hitch	
Vehicle dimensions	Replying to message
Weights	Theft-deterrent system
	ATA (Anti-Theft Alarm system) 71
	AIA (AIIII-IIIEII AIAIIII SYSIEIII) /

Immobiliser 70	Trailer towing
Time	Coupling up a trailer 136
Setting 148	Decoupling a trailer 136
Setting the format 148	Trailer loads 249
Setting the time 148	Transport
Setting the time zone 148	Loading guidelines 78
Setting the time/date format 148	Vehicle 225
TMC (Traffic Message Channel)	Transporting
Displays on the map 160	Load distribution 78
<b>Top Tether</b> 56	Turn signal lamp
Topping up	Replacing bulbs (headlamp)
AdBlue <sup>®</sup> 116	Turn signal lamps (halogen head-
Touchpad	lamps)
Changing the input language for	Replacing bulbs 89
handwriting recognition	Two-way radios
Handwriting recognition	Fitting 241
Operating the touchpad	Type identification plate
Switching 144	see Vehicle identification plate
Tow-away protection	Tyre changing tool kit 236
Activating 71	Tyre pressure
Deactivating 71	Calling up (on-board computer) 231
Function 71	Display message 262
Tow-starting	Notes 229
Emergency engine starting 225	Recommended 230
Towing a trailer	Tables 230
Axle load, permissible 249	Tyre pressure monitor
Installing and removing the ball	Checking the tyre pressure elec-
coupling 136	tronically 231
Mounting dimensions 249	Function/notes 230
Notes	Radio type approval for the tyre
<b>Towing eye</b>	pressure monitor 232
Traffic jam icon	Restarting 231
Showing on route	Warning lamp 277
Traffic jam message	Tyre pressure table 230
Reading out on route 161	Tyres
Traffic jams	Display message 262
Showing in the map 160	Noises 228
Traffic Programme (TA)	Notes 234
Switching off 145	Regular checking 228
Traffic reports	Replacing wheels 236
Showing in the map 160	Snow chains 228
Showing on route 160	
Traffic Sign Assist	U
Function/notes 134	
Instrument cluster display	Unlocking
Switching on/off 134	From inside the vehicle (central
Trailer tow hitch	unlocking button)
Notes 249	With emergency key element 63

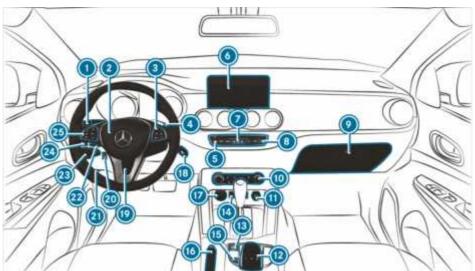
Updating the digital map 163		
USB audio mode	Activating	193
Selecting a track 191		240
USB devices	Voice command list	
Connecting to the Media Inter-	Address book voice commands	204
face 190		205
	Navigation voice commands	202
V	Voice recognition	
Vanity mirror	Notes on improving  Volume	200
Sun visor 97	•	158
Vehicle	Navigation announcements	130
Correct use 33	W	
Data acquisition 33		
Display message 263	Warning and indicator lamps	
Emergency unlocking 63		268
Implied warranty 33		267
Loading 78		275
Locking (key) 62	LOI	268
Locking/unlocking (KEYLESS-	ESP® OFF	269
GO) 66	Fuel tank	275
Lowering 239	Overview	266
Operating safety 30	I diking blake	270
Parking 117	PASSENGER AIR BAG	45
Parking up 118		274
Raising 237	PASSENGER AIRBAG ON	272
REACH Regulation 33	Reserve fuel	275
Registration 32	Restraint system	270
Starting using the KEYLESS-GO	Seat belt	271
start function 103		275
Starting with the key 103	Tyre pressure monitor	277
Tow-starting 225		219
Towing away 223		
Transporting 225	Display message	264
Unlocking (key) 62		247
Vehicle bodies 29	Topping up	212
Vehicle identification number	Way points	
see VIN	Accepting for the route	155
Vehicle identification plate 240		155
Video DVD	Waypoints	
Control option 193	Searching for a filling station	
DVD functions 194		156
DVD menu 194		
Full-screen mode 194	_	248
Picture settings 194		239
Playing conditions 193		
Video menu 194	Fitting a new wheel	238
	Notes on fitting	

Regular checks	228
Removing a wheel	238
Snow chains	228
Storing	236
Tightening torque	239
Wi-Fi	
Setting	149
Switching on/off	149
WiFi	
Changing the name of the SSID	150
Connecting via security key	150
Connecting via WPS PBC	149
Connecting via WPS PIN	149
Generating a new security key	150
Overview	149
Windowbag	. 42
Windows	
Opening and closing the side	
windows	69
Windscreen	
see Windscreen wipers	
Windscreen washer fluid	
Topping up	212
Windscreen washer system	
Topping up	212
Windscreen wipers	
Replacing the wiper blades	93
Switching on	92
Switching windscreen wipers	
on/off	92
Winter operation	
Snow chains	228
Workshop	
see Qualified specialist workshop	



	Function	Page
1	Combination switch	87
2	Horn	
3	Control panel for the multi- media system	138
4	Controls for the multimedia system	144
(5)	Display (multimedia system)	144
6	PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamps	43
7	Hazard warning lamps	87
8	Glove compartment	80
9	Manual air-conditioning system or automatic air-conditioning	98
	system	98
10	12 V socket	83
11)	Control panel for the multi- media system	144

		1
	Function	Page
12	Control panel for: DSR Differential lock Loading area lighting	120 112 87
(13)	ECO start/stop function	105
14)	Manual parking brake	
15	All-wheel-drive mode switch	111
(16)	Ignition lock/Start/Stop button	102
17	Adjusts the steering wheel	77
18	Opens/closes the rear sliding window	70
19	Unlocks the bonnet	207
20	Cruise control lever	123
21)	Light switch	86
22	Control panel for: Lane Keeping Assist Parking Assist PARKTRONIC 360° camera	133 126 129
23	Control panel for the on- board computer	138



	Function	Page
1	Combination switch	87
2	Horn	
3	Control panel for the multi- media system	138
4	Steering wheel gearshift paddles (automatic transmission)	107
5	Controls for the multimedia system	144
6	Display (multimedia system)	144
7	PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamps	43
8	Hazard warning lamps	87
9	Glove compartment	80
10	Manual air-conditioning system or automatic air-conditioning	98
	system	98
11)	12 V socket	83
12	Control panel for the multi- media system	144
(13)	DYNAMIC SELECT switch	105

		1.
	Function	Page
4	Control panel for: DSR Differential lock Loading area lighting	120 112 87
15)	ECO start/stop function	105
16	Manual parking brake	
17	All-wheel-drive mode switch	111
18	Ignition lock/Start/Stop button	102
19	Adjusts the steering wheel	77
20	Opens/closes the rear sliding window	70
21)	Unlocks the bonnet	207
22	Cruise control lever	123
23	Light switch	86
24	Control panel for: Lane Keeping Assist Parking Assist PARKTRONIC 360° camera	133 126 129
25	Control panel for the on- board computer	138

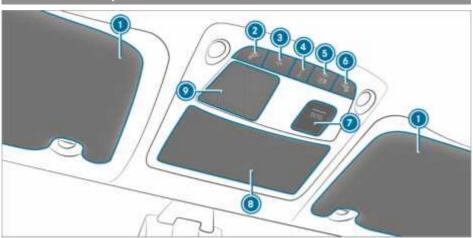
### Indicator and warning lamps



	Function	Page
1	Speedometer	138
2	ESP®	122
3	Distance warning signal	275
4	Power steering malfunctioning	275
(5)	<b>♦</b> Indicator lamp	87
6	Multifunction display	139
7	(ABS malfunctioning	268
8	Engine diagnostics	275
9	Diesel engine: preglow	
10	Rev counter	138
11)	(P) Manual parking brake (red)	270
(2)	(D) Brakes (red)	267
(3)	Coolant temperature display  The coolant is too hot/cold	138

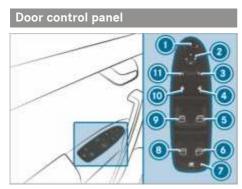
	Function	Page
(4)	Brakes (yellow) (inoperative)	
15	(p) Manual parking brake (yellow)	270
16	Restraint system	270
7	The seat belt is not fastened	271
18	■ Main-beam headlamps	86
19	Dipped-beam head-lamps	86
20	Fuel level display  Reserve fuel with fuel filler cap position indicator	275
21)	⇒oc Side lamps	86
22	<b>₽</b> Foglamp	86
23	0	86
24	(!) Tyre pressure monitor	230
25	₽ ESP® OFF	268

### Overhead control panel



	Function	Page
1	sun visors	97
2	Switches the left- hand reading lamp on/off	
3	Switches the front interior lighting on/off	
4	Console light	
5	Switches the automatic interior lighting control on/off	

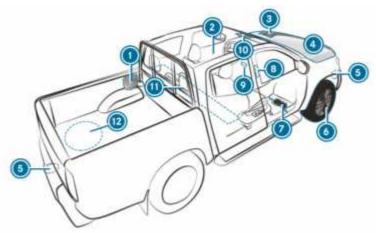
	Function	Page
6	Switches the right- hand reading lamp on/off	
7	SOS emergency call button (Mercedes-Benz emergency call system) LED indicator lamp auxiliary battery, emergency call sys- tem	181 217
8	Spectacles compartment	80
9	Microphone	



	Function	Page
1	Selects the right-hand or left-hand exterior mirror	94
2	Adjusts the exterior mirrors electrically	94
3	Folds out the exterior mirrors	94

	Function	Page
4	Unlocks the vehicle centrally from the inside	65
5	Opens/closes the right-hand side window	69
6	Opens/closes the right-hand rear side window	69
7	Child-proof lock for rear side windows and co-driver's side window	60
8	Opens/closes the left- hand rear side window	69
9	Opens/closes the left- hand side window	69
10	Locks the vehicle centrally from the inside	65
11)	Folds in the exterior mirrors	94

### Emergencies and breakdowns



	Function	Page
1	Fuel filler flap with instruc- tion label for fuel type and QR codes for determining the rescue card	33
2	Reflective safety jackets	219
3	Jump-starting	221
4	Checking and refilling service products	242
5	Tow-starting and towing away	223, 225
6	Flat tyre	220

	Function	Page
7	Fire extinguisher	220
8	QR code for determining the rescue card	33
9	Hazard warning lamps	87
10	Button for SOS emergency call system	217, 218
11)	First-aid kit	219
	Warning triangle	219
	Jack	236
12	Spare wheel	233

## Operating the Digital Owner's Manual

## Operating the Digital Operating Instructions

### General notes

Observe the information on operating the controller (> page 144).

Observe the information on operating the touchpad ( $\triangleright$  page 145).

### **Content pages**

You can access the content pages by means of a visual search, a keyword search or using the contents.



- ► To scroll forward and back: turn the controller ((()).
- ► To display in full screen/animation: slide the controller •(○) to the left (1).
- ➤ To select information texts/save bookmarks: slide the controller ⊙ → to the right ②.
- ► To select a link: slide the controller ○↓ downwards ③.
- ► To call up the main menu of the Digital Operating Instructions: actuate the 🏠 Symbol.
- ► The selected menu opens. The Digital Operating Instructions remain open in the background.

- ► To close the Digital Operating Instructions: press and hold the \_\_\_\_\_ button next to the controller.
- ► Confirm the message ⑤ about whether the browser should be closed.

### Before the first journey

These Operating Instructions, the Maintenance or Service Booklet and the additional equipment-specific instructions are integral parts of the vehicle. Always keep these documents in the vehicle. If you sell the vehicle, always pass on all documents to the new owner.

Before you first drive off, read these documents carefully and familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

For your own safety and a longer vehicle life, follow the instructions and warning notices in these Operating Instructions. Failure to observe the instructions may lead to damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

### Protection of the environment

### ⊕ Environmental note

Daimler's declared policy is one of comprehensive environmental protection.

Our objectives are to use the natural resources which form the basis of our existence on this planet sparingly and in a manner which takes the requirements of both nature and humanity into consideration.

You too can help to protect the environment by operating your vehicle in an environmentally-responsible manner.

Fuel consumption and the rate of engine, transmission, brake and tyre wear depend on the following factors:

- operating conditions of your vehicle
- · your personal driving style

You can influence both factors. Therefore, please bear the following in mind:

Operating conditions:

- avoid short trips, as these increase fuel consumption.
- observe the correct tyre pressure.
- do not carry any unnecessary weight in the vehicle.
- remove the roof rack once you no longer need it.

- a regularly serviced vehicle will contribute to environmental protection. You should therefore adhere to the service intervals.
- all maintenance work should be carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.

Personal driving style:

- do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the engine.
- do not warm up the engine when the vehicle is stationary.
- drive carefully and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.
- avoid frequent, sudden acceleration and braking.
- change gear in good time and use each gear only up to <sup>2</sup>/<sub>3</sub> of its maximum engine speed.
- switch off the engine in stationary traffic.
- monitor the vehicle's fuel consumption.

### Take-back of end-of-life vehicles

For EU countries only:

Mercedes-Benz will take back your end-of-life vehicle for environmentally-friendly disposal in accordance with the European Union (EU) End-of-Life Vehicles Directive.

A network of vehicle take-back points and dismantlers has been established for you to return your vehicle. You can leave it at any of these points free of charge. This makes an important contribution to closing the recycling circle and conserving resources.

For further information about the recycling and disposal of end-of-life vehicles, and the take-back conditions, please visit the national Mercedes-Benz website for your country.

### **Genuine Mercedes-Benz parts**

- Airbags and seat belt tensioners, as well as control units and sensors for these restraint systems, may be installed in the following areas of your vehicle:
  - doors
  - · door pillars
  - · door sills
  - seats
  - dashboard
  - instrument cluster
  - centre console

Do not install accessories such as audio systems in these areas. Do not carry out repairs or welding. You could impair the operating efficiency of the restraint systems.

Have accessories retrofitted at a qualified specialist workshop.

### ⊕ Environmental note

Daimler AG also supplies reconditioned assemblies and parts which are of the same quality as new parts. For these, the same warranty applies as for new parts.

The operating safety of the vehicle could be jeopardised if you use parts, tyres and wheels as well as accessories relevant to safety which have not been approved by Mercedes-Benz. This could lead to malfunctions in safety-relevant systems, e.g. the brake system. Only use genuine Mercedes-Benz parts or parts of equal quality. Only use tyres, wheels and accessories that have been specifically approved for your vehicle.

Mercedes-Benz tests genuine Mercedes-Benz parts, conversion parts and accessories that have been specifically approved for your type of vehicle for reliability, safety and suitability. Despite ongoing market research, Mercedes-Benz is unable to assess other parts. Even if an independent or official approval has been

an independent or official approval has been provided in exceptional cases, Mercedes-Benz accepts no responsibility for the use of such parts in Mercedes-Benz vehicles.

In the Federal Republic of Germany, certain parts are officially approved for installation or modification only if they comply with legal requirements. This is also valid in several other

countries. All genuine Mercedes-Benz parts meet the approval requirements. The use of unapproved parts may result in the general operating permit being invalidated.

The general operating permit will be invalidated in the following cases:

- a change is made to the vehicle type from that which is in the vehicle's general operating permit.
- other road users could be endangered.
- the emissions or noise levels are adversely affected.

Always specify the vehicle identification number (VIN) (▷ page 240) and engine number when ordering genuine Mercedes-Benz parts (▷ page 240).

## Attachments, bodies, installations and conversions

- For safety reasons, have bodies manufactured and fitted in accordance with the applicable Mercedes-Benz body/equipment mounting directives. These body/equipment mounting directives ensure that the chassis and the body form one unit and that maximum operating and road safety is achieved. For safety reasons, Mercedes-Benz recommends that:
  - no other modifications should be made to the vehicle.
  - approval should be obtained from Mercedes-Benz in the event of deviations from approved body/equipment mounting directives.

Approval from certified inspection agencies or official approvals cannot rule out risks to your safety.

Observe the information on genuine Mercedes-Benz parts ( $\triangleright$  page 29).

The Mercedes-Benz body/equipment mounting directives can be found on the Internet at https://bb-portal.mercedes-benz.com.

There you can also find information on PIN assignment and changing fuses.

For more information, contact a qualified specialist workshop.

Even seemingly small changes to the vehicle, such as attaching a radiator trim for winter driving, is not permitted. Do not cover up the

engine radiator. Do not use thermal mats, insect protection covers or anything similar. Otherwise, the values of the diagnostic system may be affected. In some countries, the recording of engine diagnostic data is a legal requirement, and must always be verifiable and accurate.

### **Operating Instructions**

These Operating Instructions describe all models as well as standard and optional equipment of your vehicle that was available at the time of going to print. Country-specific variations are possible. Note that your vehicle may not be equipped with all of the described functions. This also applies to safety-relevant systems and functions. Therefore, your vehicle's equipment may differ from certain descriptions and illustrations.

The original purchase contract documentation for your vehicle contains a list of all of the systems in your vehicle.

Should you have any questions concerning equipment and operation, consult a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

The Operating Instructions and Service Booklet are important documents and should be kept in the vehicle.

### Digital and printed Operating Instructions

The Digital Operating Instructions are not updated electronically. Amendments are only be made by means of Supplements to the printed Operating Instructions.

Always observe the printed Operating Instructions as well as the supplements to the Operating Instructions.

### Operating safety



### **↑** WARNING

If you do not have the prescribed service/ maintenance work or necessary repairs carried out, this could result in malfunctions or system failures. There is a risk of an accident.

Always have the prescribed service/maintenance work as well as necessary repairs carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.



### 

Modifications to electronic components, their software as well as wiring could affect their function and/or the operation of other networked components. This could in particular also be the case for systems relevant to safety. They might not function properly anymore and/or jeopardise the operational safety of the vehicle. There is an increased risk of an accident and injury.

Do not attempt to modify the wiring as well as electronic components or their software. Always have work on electrical and electronic components carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.

If you make any modifications to the vehicle electronics, the general operating permit will be invalidated.

In the following situations, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle:

- the vehicle makes contact with the ground, e.g. on a high kerb or a loose road surface.
- the vehicle drives too quickly over an obstacle, e.g. a kerb, a speed bump or a pothole.
- a heavy object hits the underbody or chassis components.

In these or similar situations, the vehicle body, the underbody, chassis components, wheels or tyres could be damaged even if this is not visible. Components that have been damaged in this way can fail unexpectedly or, in the event of an accident, may not absorb the loads that arise as intended.



### **↑** WARNING

Flammable material such as leaves, grass or twigs may ignite if they come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system. There is a risk of fire.

When driving on an unpaved road or offroad, check the vehicle underside regularly. In particular, remove trapped plant parts or other flammable material. Contact a qualified specialist workshop immediately if damage is detected.

Have the vehicle checked and repaired immediately at a qualified specialist workshop. If you become aware when continuing the journey that driving safety has been affected, stop as soon as possible in accordance with the traffic conditions. In such cases, consult a qualified specialist workshop.

### **↑** WARNING

Gases and liquids from substances that constitute a health hazard or react aggressively can escape, even from securely closed containers. If you transport these substances inside the vehicle, this may affect your health and impair your concentration while you are driving. It may also cause malfunctions or electrical component system failures. There is a risk of fire and accident.

Do not store or transport any substances in the vehicle that are hazardous to health or react aggressively.

Examples of substances that are hazardous to health and/or react aggressively:

- solvents
- fuel
- · oil and grease
- · cleaning agents
- acids

### **Declarations of conformity**

### Electromagnetic compatibility

The electromagnetic compatibility of the vehicle components has been checked and certified according to the currently valid version of Regulation UN-R 10.

### Radio-based vehicle components

The following note applies to all wireless components of the vehicle and all the information

systems and communications equipment integrated in the vehicle:

the wireless components of this vehicle are compliant with the basic requirements and all other relevant regulations stipulated by Directive 2014/53/EU. You can obtain further information from any Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

### jack

Transcript of the original declaration of con-

### DECLARATION OF "CE" CONFORMITY

- 1. The undersigned, Mr. Tony Fabiano, representing the manufacturer, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfils all the relevant provisions of: Directive 2006/42/EC, on Machinery
- 2. Description of the machinery

Part Name: JACK COMPL

Function: lifting motor vehicle

c)

Model: H60B

OEM: Nissan

e)

Part Number: 99550 5XA0A

- Manufacturer:
- 4. Flex-N-Gate / Ventra, 65 Industrial Road, Tottenham, ON CANADA LOW 1W0
- 5. Person authorised to compile the technical file:

Xavier Duro

**Product Engineer** 

FNG - BARCELONA

Avda de la Riera, 7-9

San Just Desvern, Barcelona

Spain 08960

- 6. Applicable Harmonizing Standards: 99551 NDS01
- 7. Other Standards or Specifications: NES M 0301, AS2693-1993
- 8. Done at:

Bradford, Ontario

9. Date:

Jun-8-2017

Tony Fabiano

Director of Engineering

FlexNGate/Ventra

**Bradford Product Development Centre** 

### **Diagnostics connections**

The diagnostics connection is only intended for the connection of diagnostic equipment at a qualified specialist workshop.

### **↑** WARNING

If you connect equipment to a diagnostics connection in the vehicle, it may affect the operation of vehicle systems. As a result, the operating safety of the vehicle could be affected. There is a risk of an accident.

Only connect equipment to a diagnostics connection in the vehicle, which is approved for your vehicle by Mercedes-Benz.

### Change in the engine power output

- Increased power could:
  - · change emission levels
  - · cause malfunctions
  - · lead to consequential damage

The operating safety of the engine cannot be guaranteed in all situations.

Any tampering with the engine management system in order to increase the engine power output will lead to the loss of implied warranty entitlements.

If the vehicle's engine power output is increased:

- · tyres, suspension, brake and engine cooling systems must be adapted to the increased engine power output.
- · have the vehicle recertified.
- · report changes in power output to the accident insurance body.

This will otherwise lead to the invalidation of the vehicle's general operating permit and its insurance coverage.

If you sell the vehicle, inform the buyer of any alterations to the vehicle's engine power output. If you do not inform the buyer, this may constitute a punishable offence under national legislation.

### Qualified specialist workshop

A qualified specialist workshop has the necessary specialist knowledge, tools and qualifications to correctly carry out the work required on the vehicle. This is especially the case for work relevant to safety.

Observe the notes in the Maintenance or Service Booklet.

The following work should always be carried out at a qualified specialist workshop:

- · work relevant to safety
- service and maintenance work
- repair work
- modifications as well as installations and alterations
- work on electronic components

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you use a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

### Vehicle registration

Mercedes-Benz may ask its Service Centres to carry out technical inspections on certain vehicles. The quality or safety of the vehicle is improved as a result of the inspection.

Mercedes-Benz can only inform you about vehicle checks if it has your registration data.

In the following cases your vehicle may still not be registered to you:

- you did not purchase your vehicle at an authorised specialist dealer.
- your vehicle has not been inspected at a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

It is advisable to register your vehicle with a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre, Inform Mercedes-Benz as soon as possible about any change of address or vehicle ownership. You can do this, for example, at a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

### **Exhaust gas aftertreatment**

The exhaust gas aftertreatment system in a BlueTEC vehicle must be operated in conjunction with the reducing agent AdBlue<sup>®</sup> if it is to function correctly.

If you operate the vehicle without AdBlue® or with emissions-relevant malfunctions, the operating permit is invalidated. The legal consequence of this is that the vehicle may no longer be operated on public roads.

Engine management monitors the exhaust gas aftertreatment components for compliance with emissions laws and regulations. If you attempt to operate the vehicle without AdBlue<sup>®</sup>, with diluted AdBlue<sup>®</sup> or with a different reducing agent, this will be detected by the engine management system. Other emissions-relevant malfunctions, e.g. dosage malfunctions or sensor errors, are also detected and logged.

The engine management system subsequently prevents the engine being restarted after issuing a warning message.

Therefore, top up the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> tank regularly during vehicle operation or, at the latest, after receiving the first warning message via the onboard computer (⊳ page 116).

### Correct use of the vehicle

If you remove warning stickers, others may fail to recognise the dangers. Leave the warning stickers in their original position.

Observe the following information when operating the vehicle:

- the safety notes in these operating instructions
- · technical data for the vehicle
- · traffic laws and regulations
- laws pertaining to motor vehicles and safety standards

### Information on the REACH regulation

### EU and EFTA countries only:

The REACH Regulation (Regulation (EU) no. 1907/2006, Article 33) provides for an obliga-

tion to inform for Substances of Very High Concern (SVHCs).

Daimler AG acts to the best of its knowledge to prevent the use of SVHCs, and to enable the customer to handle these substances safely. There are SVHCs known to Daimler AG, according to supplier information and internal product information, found in individual components of this vehicle in quantities of over 0.1 percent by weight.

You can obtain further information at the following addresses:

- http://www.daimler.com/reach (German version)
- http://www.daimler.com/reach/en (English version)

### QR codes for rescue card

The QR code is secured in the fuel filler flap and on the opposite side on the right-hand B-pillar.

In the event of an accident, rescue services can use the QR code to quickly determine the corresponding rescue card for your vehicle. The current rescue card contains, in compact form, the most important information about your vehicle e.g. the routing of electric cables. Further information can be found at http://www.mercedes-benz.de/gr-code.

### Implied warranty

Observe the notes in this Owner's Manual regarding the correct operation of your vehicle and possible damage to the vehicle. Damage to the vehicle which is caused by violation of these notes is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz implied warranty or the new or used-vehicle warranty.

### Vehicle data memory

### **Electronic control units**

Electronic control units are fitted in your vehicle. Some of them are necessary to ensure that your vehicle functions safely, some are there to support the driver (driver assistance systems). In addition to that, your vehicle

offers convenience and entertainment functions which are also made possible by the use of electronic control units.

Electronic control units contain data memories which can store technical information on the vehicle's operating state, component stress, maintenance requirements as well as technical events and faults either temporarily or permanently.

In general, this information documents the status of a component, a module, a system or the surroundings, for example:

- operating states of system components (e.g. fill levels, battery status, tyre pressure)
- status messages concerning the vehicle or its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/speed, deceleration in movement, lateral acceleration, display of fastened seat belts)
- malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- system responses in special driving situations (e.g. airbag deployment, intervention of stability control systems)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor)

In addition to the underlying control unit function, this data can be used for the detection and the rectification of faults as well as the optimisation of vehicle functions by the manufacturer. Most of this data is volatile and is only processed in the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories.

When you use services, the technical data from the vehicle can be read out by Service-Network employees (e.g. workshops, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services). Services can include repair services. maintenance processes, warranty cases and quality assurance measures. Data is read out using the legally prescribed diagnostics connection in the vehicle. The respective representatives of the service network or third parties collect, process and use the data. It documents technical states of the vehicle, helps staff to find faults and improve quality and, in certain cases, is passed on to the manufacturer. Furthermore, the manufacturer is subject to product liability provisions. For this reason, the manufacturer requires technical data from vehicles.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset within the scope of the repair or service work carried out by a service outlet.

Depending on the equipment selected, you can add data to the convenience and infotainment functions of the vehicle yourself.

These include:

- multimedia data, such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use in connection with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- · navigation destinations entered
- · data on the utilisation of Internet services

This data can be saved locally in the vehicle or is located on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). If this data is saved in the vehicle, you can delete it at any time. Transfer of this data to third parties is only possible at your request, predominantly while using online services and in accordance with the settings you have selected.

You can save convenience settings/customisations in the vehicle and change them at any time.

Depending on the piece of equipment in question, these can include:

- settings for the seat and steering wheel positions
- · chassis and climate control settings
- · customisations such as interior lighting

If your vehicle is equipped appropriately, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile end device to the vehicle. You can operate this device using the integrated controls in the vehicle. This allows images and sound from the smartphone to be output through the multimedia system. Simultaneously, certain information is transferred to your smartphone.

Depending on the type of integration, this can include:

- general vehicle status
- position data

This allows the use of selected smartphone apps, such as navigation or music player apps. No further interaction between smartphone and vehicle takes place and, in particular, it is not possible to actively access vehicle data.

The type of additional data processing is determined by the provider of the app being used. Which settings can be made, if at all, depend on the respective app and the operating system of your smartphone.

#### Online services

#### Wireless network connection

If your vehicle has a wireless network connection, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is made possible by the vehicle's own transmitter and receiver or by mobile end devices that you have brought into the vehicle (e.g. smartphones). This wireless network connection can be used to access online functions. This includes online services and apps provided by the manufacturer or other providers.

#### Services provided by the manufacturer

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the manufacturer describes the functions in a suitable place (e.g. manufacturer's operating instructions, website) and provides the associated information subject to data protection legislation. Personal data may be used

when providing online services. The data exchange for this takes place via a secure connection, e.g. with the manufacturer's IT systems intended for the purpose. The collection, the processing and the use of personal data above and beyond the provision of services is only permitted on the basis of a legal permit or the consent of the person involved.

In most cases, you can enable or disable the services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge. In some cases it will also apply to the entire data connection of the vehicle. There are exceptions to this; in particular, legally prescribed functions and services such as the "E-Call" traffic emergency call system.

#### Services provided by third parties

If it is possible to use online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the provider in question and subject to that provider's data protection conditions and terms of use. The manufacturer has no influence over the content exchanged in this connection.

Please ask the respective service provider for information on the type, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data in the context of services provided by third parties.

#### Mercedes-Benz Service24h

If your vehicle will not start or you experience a breakdown on your journey, Mercedes-Benz Service24h will provide assistance throughout Europe 365 days a year, around the clock. You can reach the Mercedes-Benz Service24h emergency call centre using the phone numbers listed below.

#### Please only select the phone number valid for your country of residence.

Please have the following information at hand so that we can assist you as quickly as possible:

- personal data
- telephone number where you can be contacted
- vehicle model and licence plate
- · date of first registration
- · current vehicle position
- nature of the damage

#### Mercedes-Benz Service24h telephone numbers

Country	Service24h hotline	Alternative telephone number
Andorra	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+34 91 375 30 672
Belgium	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+32 2 554 17 272
Bulgaria	02 919 87 87 <sup>2</sup>	+359 2 919 87 872
Denmark	33 78 55 55 <sup>2</sup>	+45 33 78 55 55 <sup>2</sup>
Germany	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+49 69 95 30 72 772
Estonia	515 1512 <sup>2</sup>	+372 515 15122
Finland	0400 41 31 13 <sup>2</sup>	+358 400 41 31 132
France	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+33 1 49 93 21 07 <sup>2</sup>
Gibraltar	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+34 91 375 30 672
Greece	6944 35 47 00 <sup>2</sup>	+30 6944 35 47 002
United Kingdom	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+44 207 975 70772
Ireland	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+353 160 503 772
Iceland	664 2130 <sup>2</sup>	+354 664 2130 <sup>2</sup>
Italy	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+39 027 541 97 772
Croatia	0800 10 40 <sup>3</sup>	+385 1 36 44 8732
Latvia	+371 29 48 85 572	+371 670 99 8882
Liechtenstein	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+41 44 439 15 67 <sup>2</sup>
Lithuania	8 698 24950 <sup>2</sup>	+370 698 24950 <sup>2</sup>
Luxembourg	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+352 29 69 69 56 172
Malta	21411 611 <sup>2</sup>	+356-21411 611 <sup>2</sup>
Monaco	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+33 1 49 93 21 072
Netherlands	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+31 206 545 2772
Norway	67 90 83 00 <sup>2</sup>	+47 67 90 83 002
Austria	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+43 1 50 222 1 7772
Poland	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+48 22 354 40 012
Portugal	00800 1 777 7777 <sup>1</sup>	+351 210 608 1032

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Free of charge; in exceptional cases there may be mobile phone network provider costs.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> charges apply

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Nationally free of charge; in exceptional cases there may be mobile phone network provider costs.

Country	Service24h hotline	Alternative telephone number
Romania	0745 23 24 24 <sup>2</sup>	+40 745 23 24 24 <sup>2</sup>
Russia	+7 499 951 33 85 <sup>2</sup>	+7 499 426 06 75 <sup>2</sup>
Sweden	020 78 44 78 <sup>2</sup>	+46 8 644 62 762
Switzerland	00800 1 777 77771	+41 44 439 15 672
Serbia	011 30 19 019 <sup>2</sup>	+381 11 30 19 0192
Slovakia	00800 1 777 77771	+421 2 50102601 <sup>2</sup>
Slovenia	080 19 11 <sup>2</sup>	+386 1 530 53 15 <sup>2</sup>
Spain	00800 1 777 77771	+34 91 375 30 672
Czech Republic	00800 1 777 77771	+420 296 335 6012
Turkey	444 62 44 <sup>2</sup>	+90 212 444 62 44 <sup>2</sup>
Ukraine	0 800 500 160 <sup>3</sup>	+380 50310 44 382
Hungary	00800 1 777 77771	+36 1 2355301 <sup>2</sup>
United Kingdom	00800 1 777 77771	+44 207-975 70772
Belarus	17 203 9999 <sup>2</sup>	+375 17 203 99992
Cyprus (North)	444 87 87 <sup>2</sup>	+ 90 392 444 87 872
Cyprus (South)	8000 06 06 <sup>2</sup>	+357 99 62 50 622

Please only select the phone number valid for your country of residence.

## Copyright

Licence information from free or open source software used in your vehicle can be found on the data carrier in your vehicle document wallet.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> charges apply

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Free of charge; in exceptional cases there may be mobile phone network provider costs.

<sup>3</sup> Nationally free of charge; in exceptional cases there may be mobile phone network provider costs.

#### **Restraint system**

#### Protection provided by the restraint system

The restraint system includes the following components:

- · Seat belt system
- Airbags
- · Child restraint system
- · Child seat securing systems

The restraint system can reduce the risk of vehicle occupants coming into contact with parts of the vehicle's interior in the event of an accident. In the event of an accident, the restraint system can also reduce the forces to which the vehicle occupants are subjected.

A seat belt can only provide maximum protection when worn correctly. Depending on the type of accident detected, seat belt tensioners and/or airbags may supplement a correctly worn seat belt. Not every accident will trigger the seat belt tensioners and/or deploy the air-

In order for the restraint system to provide the intended level of protection, each vehicle occupant must observe the following information:

- fasten the seat belt correctly.
- be in an almost upright position with the back against the backrest.
- sit with feet resting on the floor, if possible.
- always secure persons under 1.50 m tall in an additional restraint system suitable for this vehicle.

However, no system available today can completely eliminate injuries and fatalities in every accident. In particular, the seat belt and airbag generally do not protect against objects penetrating the vehicle from the outside. The risk of injuries due to a deployed airbag also cannot be completely eliminated.

### Limitations of the protection provided by the restraint system



#### **⚠** WARNING

If the restraint system is modified, it may no longer work as intended. The restraint system may then not perform its intended protective function by failing in an accident or triggering unexpectedly, for example. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Never modify parts of the restraint system. Do not attempt to modify the wiring as well as electronic components or their software.

If it is necessary to adjust the vehicle to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a qualified specialist workshop. Mercedes-Benz recommends that you only use driving aids which have been approved specifically for your vehicle by Mercedes-Benz.

#### Operational readiness of the restraint system

When the ignition is switched on, the restraint system warning lamp lights up 🔭 during the self-check. It goes out no later than a few seconds after the vehicle is started. The components of the restraint system are then in operational readiness.

#### Malfunction in the restraint system

A malfunction has occurred in the restraint system if:

- The restraint system warning lamp does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The restraint system warning lamp lights up continuously or repeatedly during a journey.



#### ♠ WARNING

If the restraint system is malfunctioning, restraint system components may be triggered unintentionally or may not deploy as intended during an accident. This may affect the seat belt tensioner or airbag, for example. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Have the restraint system checked and repaired immediately at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Function of the restraint system in the event of an accident

The way the restraint system responds depends on the severity of the impact detected and the apparent type of accident:

- Head-on collision
- Side impact
- Overturn

The activation threshold for the restraint system components is determined based on the analysis of the sensor values measured at various points in the vehicle. This process is preemptive in nature. The triggering process of the restraint system components should take place in good time at the start of the collision. Factors which can only be seen and measured after a collision has occurred do not play a decisive role in the deployment of an airbag, nor do they provide an indication of airbag deployment.

The vehicle may be deformed significantly without an airbag being deployed. This is the case if only parts which are relatively easily deformed are affected and the rate of vehicle deceleration is not high. Conversely, an airbag may be deployed even though the vehicle suffers only minor deformation. If, for instance, very rigid vehicle parts such as longitudinal body members are hit, the rate of vehicle deceleration may be sufficient.

The restraint system components can be activated or triggered independently of each other:

Component	Detected trigger situation
Belt tensioners	Frontal collision, side impact, overturn
Driver's airbag, front- passenger front air- bag and kneebag	Head-on collision
Sidebag	Side impact
Windowbag	Side impact, head-on collision

The front-passenger front airbag can be deployed in an accident only if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is off. If the front-passenger seat is occupied,

make sure both before and during the journey that the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct (⊳ page 43).

#### **↑** WARNING

After the airbag deploys, the airbag parts are hot. There is a risk of injury.

Do not touch the airbag parts. Have a deployed airbag replaced at a qualified specialist workshop as soon as possible.

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop after an accident. Take this into account, particularly if a seat belt tensioner was triggered or an airbag was deployed.

If the belt tensioners are triggered or an airbag is deployed, you will hear a bang, and a small amount of powder may also be released:

- The bang will not usually affect your hearing.
- In general, the powder released is not hazardous to health but may cause short-term breathing difficulties to persons suffering from asthma or other pulmonary conditions. Provided it is safe to do so, leave the vehicle immediately or open the window in order to prevent breathing difficulties.

#### Seat belts

#### Seat belt protection

Always fasten seat belts correctly before commencing your journey. A seat belt can only provide maximum protection when worn correctly.



#### **↑** WARNING

are sitting properly.

If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, it cannot perform its intended protective function. Furthermore, an incorrectly worn seat belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident, heavy braking or sudden changes of direction. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal. Always ensure that all vehicle occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and

Always observe the notes on correct driver's seat position (⊳ page 73) and seat adjustment (⊳ page 73).

In order for the correctly worn seat belt to provide the intended level of protection, each vehicle occupant must observe the following information:

- the seat belt must not be twisted and must. fit tightly and snugly across the body.
- the seat belt must be routed across the centre of the shoulder and as low down across the hips as possible.
- the shoulder section of the belt should not touch your neck nor be routed under your arm or behind your back.
- avoid wearing bulky clothing, e.g. a winter coat.
- press the lap belt down into your hip joints and pull taut by the shoulder section of the belt. The lap belt must never be routed across your stomach or abdomen.
- never route the seat belt across sharp, pointed, abrasive or fragile objects.
- only one person per seat belt. Infants and children must never travel sitting on the lap of a vehicle occupant.
- never secure objects with a seat belt if the seat belt is also being used by one of the vehicle's occupants. Always observe the notes on "Loading the vehicle" for securing objects, luggage or loads (⊳ page 78). Also make sure that objects are never placed between an occupant and the seat,

If children are travelling in the vehicle, be sure to observe the instructions and safety notes on "Children in the vehicle" (▷ page 47).

#### Limitations of the protection provided by the seat belt



#### **↑** WARNING

e.g. a cushion.

The seat belt does not offer the intended level of protection if you have not moved the backrest to an almost vertical position. When braking or in the event of an accident, you could slide underneath the seat belt and sustain abdomen or neck injuries, for example. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Adjust the seat properly before beginning your journey. Always ensure that the backrest is in an almost vertical position and that the shoulder section of your seatbelt is routed across the centre of your shoulder.



#### ♠ WARNING

Persons under 1.50 m tall cannot wear the seat belts correctly without an additional suitable restraint system. If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, it cannot perform its intended protective function. Furthermore, an incorrectly worn seat belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident, heavy braking or sudden changes of direction. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Always secure persons less than 1.50 m tall in additional suitable restraint systems.

#### / WARNING

Seat belts cannot protect as intended, if:

- they are damaged, have been modified, are extremely dirty, bleached or dyed
- the seat belt buckle is damaged or extremely dirty
- modifications have been made to the belt. tensioners, belt anchorages or inertia reels

Seat belts may sustain non-visible damage in an accident, e.g. due to glass splinters. Modified or damaged seat belts can tear or fail, for example in the event of an accident. Modified seat belt tensioners may be deployed unintentionally or not function as intended. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Never modify seat belts, seat belt tensioners, seat belt anchorages and inertia reels. Ensure that seat belts are not damaged or worn and are clean. After an accident, have the seat belts checked immediately at a qualified specialist workshop.

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you only use seat belts which have been approved specifically for your vehicle by Mercedes-Benz.

#### / WARNING

Pyrotechnical belt tensioners which have been triggered are no longer operational and therefore cannot protect as intended. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even

Have pyrotechnic belt tensioners which have been triggered replaced at a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop after an accident.

Make sure that the seat belt is fully rolled up. Otherwise, the seat belt or belt tongue will be trapped in the door or in the seat mechanism. This could damage the door, the door trim panel and the seat belt. Damaged seat belts can no longer fulfil their protective function and must be replaced. Visit a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Fastening and adjusting the seat belts

If the seat belt is pulled quickly or suddenly, the inertia reel locks. The belt strap cannot be pulled out further.

If the co-driver's seat is not occupied, do not engage the seat belt tongue in the buckle on the co-driver's seat. Otherwise, in the event of an accident the belt tensioner could be triggered in addition to other systems and would need to be replaced.



- ► Always insert seat belt tongue ② into belt buckle (1) that belongs to the seat.
- ▶ Pull release button (3) and slide the belt sash guide into the required position.
- ▶ Let go of release button (3) and make sure that the belt sash guide has engaged.

#### Releasing the seat belts

Press the release button in the belt buckle and guide the seat belt back by the belt tongue.

#### Function of the belt warning for driver and co-driver

The seat belt warning lamp in the instrument display is a reminder that all vehicle occupants must wear their seat belts correctly.

In addition, a warning tone may sound. The belt warning goes out as soon as the driver and front-passenger fasten their seat helts

#### Function of the rear seat belt status indicator

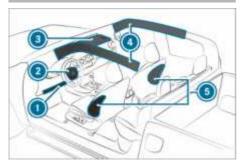


The rear seat belt status indicator informs you which rear seat belt is not fastened.

Hiding the rear seat belt status indicator immediately (⊳ page 251).

#### **Airbags**

#### Overview of airbags



The airbag installation location is identified by the label AIR BAG.

When deployed, an airbag may increase protection for the corresponding vehicle occupant.

	AIRBAG	Possible protection for:
1	Driver's knee airbag	Thighs, knee, lower leg
2	Driver's air- bag	Head and chest
3	Front- passenger front airbag	Head and chest
4	Windowbag	Head
5	Sidebag	Chest and pelvis

The front-passenger front airbag can only be deployed in an accident if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is off. If the co-driver's seat is occupied, make sure the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct both before and during the journey (> page 43).

#### **Airbag protection**

Depending on the accident situation, an airbag may supplement the protection offered by a correctly fastened seat belt.

#### ★ WARNING

If you deviate from the correct seat position, the airbag cannot perform its intended protective function and can even cause additional injuries when deployed. There is an increased risk of serious or even fatal injuries.

In order to avoid such risks, always ensure that all vehicle occupants:

- fasten their seatbelts correctly, including pregnant women
- are seated correctly and maintain the furthest possible distance from the airbags
- observe the following notes

Always ensure that there are no objects located between the airbag and the vehicle occupant.

To avoid the risks resulting from the deployment of an airbag, each vehicle occupant must observe the following information:

- Before starting your journey, adjust your seat correctly; the driver's seat and frontpassenger seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- When doing so, always observe the information on the correct driver's seat position (> page 73).
- Only hold the steering wheel by the steering wheel rim. This allows the airbag to be fully deployed.
- Always lean against the seat backrest when the vehicle is in motion. Do not lean forwards or lean against the door or side window. You may otherwise be in the deployment area of the airbags.
- Always keep your feet on the floor. Do not put your feet on the dashboard, for example. Your feet may otherwise be in the deployment area of the airbag.
- If children are travelling in the vehicle, observe the additional notes (▷ page 47).
- · Always stow and secure objects correctly.

Objects in the vehicle interior may prevent an airbag from functioning correctly. Each vehicle occupant must always make sure of the following:

- There are no people, animals or objects between the vehicle occupants and an air-
- There are no objects between the seat, door and door pillar (B-pillar).
- There are no hard objects, e.g. coat hangers, hanging on the grab handles or coat hooks.
- There are no accessory parts, such as mobile navigation devices, mobile phones or cup holders, attached to the vehicle within the deployment area of an airbag, e.g. on the cockpit, on doors, side windows or side panelling.

In addition, no connection cable, tensioning strap or retainer belt may be routed or secured in the deployment area of an airbag. Always observe the accessory manufacturer's installation instructions, in particular the notes on a suitable place to fit the accessory.

• There are no heavy, sharp-edged or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing. Store such objects in a suitable place.

#### Limitations of the protection provided by airbags



#### **↑** WARNING

If you modify the cover of an airbag or affix objects such as stickers to it, the airbag can no longer perform its intended function. This poses an increased risk of injury.

Never modify the cover of an airbag or affix objects to it.

The installation location of an airbag is indicated by the AIRBAG symbol (▷ page 42).



#### **↑** WARNING

Unsuitable seat covers may obstruct or even prevent deployment of the airbags integrated into the seats. The airbags may then fail to protect the vehicle occupants as intended. Operation of the automatic co-driver's front airbag deactivation system may also

be impaired. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Use only seat covers which have been specifically approved for the respective seat by Mercedes-Benz.



#### **↑** WARNING

Sensors to control the airbags are located in the doors. Modifications or work not performed correctly to the doors or door panelling, as well as damaged doors, can lead to the function of the sensors being impaired. The airbags might therefore not function properly any more. Consequently, the airbags cannot protect vehicle occupants as they are designed to do. This poses an increased risk of injury.

Never modify the doors or parts of the doors. Always have work on the doors or door panelling carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.



#### / WARNING

An airbag that has been deployed once cannot provide any further protection and, in the event of an accident, can no longer perform its intended protective function. There is an increased risk of injury.

Have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop to have the deployed airbag replaced.

Have deployed airbags replaced immediately.

#### Status of the front-passenger front airbag

#### Function of the automatic frontpassenger front airbag deactivation system

The automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system can detect whether a person or a child restraint system is on the frontpassenger seat. The front-passenger front airbag is enabled or disabled accordingly.

To ensure the correct weight classification of a person or a child in a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, always make sure the following conditions are met:

- objects are not stored under or next to the front-passenger seat.
  - The front-passenger seat must always be able to move freely in all directions.
- the ruffled pocket on the rear of the frontpassenger seat may be filled up to a maximum weight of 2 kg.
- do not hang or transport objects on the front-passenger seat.
- do not fasten accessories to the frontpassenger seat.
- do not wedge in objects with the frontpassenger seat, e.g. in the footwell or between the head restraint and roof.
- other vehicle occupants must not lean on the front-passenger seat, e.g. on the backrest.
- do not transport objects on the front passenger's lap.

#### **↑** WARNING

Objects or forces in addition to the person or child in the child restraint system that affect the co-driver's seat may interfere with the weight classification of the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system. Depending on the cause, the weight detected may be too low or too high. The wrong weight classification may result in the front-passenger front airbag not functioning as intended during an accident. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal. Always make sure the following preconditions are met:

- the co-driver's seat is able to move freely in all directions.
- apart from the person or child in the child restraint system, there are no additional forces that will increase or reduce the load on the co-driver's seat.

Always comply with the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions.

When fitting a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, always observe the following points:

- ensure that the child restraint system is positioned correctly (▷ page 60).
- be sure to observe the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions.
- never place objects under or behind the child restraint system, e.g. cushions.
- the entire base of the child restraint system must always rest on the seat cushion of the front-passenger seat.
- the backrest of a forward-facing child restraint system must, as far as possible, rest flat against the backrest of the frontpassenger seat.
- the child restraint system must not touch the roof or be put under strain by the head restraints. Adjust the angle of the backrest and the head restraint position as appropriate.

If necessary, remove the head restraint of the front-passenger seat.

A person occupying the front-passenger seat must observe the following points:

- fasten seat belts correctly (> page 41).
- be in an almost upright position with the back against the backrest.
- with his/her feet resting on the floor, if possible.

The front-passenger front airbag may otherwise be disabled by mistake, for example in the following situations:

- the front-passenger transfers their weight by supporting themselves on a vehicle armrest.
- the front-passenger is sitting such that the weight on the seat cushion is reduced.

#### **⚠** WARNING

If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is lit, the front-passenger front airbag is disabled. It will not be deployed in the event of an accident and cannot perform its intended protective function. A person in the front-passenger seat could then, for example, come into contact with the vehicle's interior, especially if the person is sitting too close to the dashboard. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

When the front-passenger seat is occupied, always make sure that:

- the classification of the person in the front-passenger seat is correct and that the front-passenger front airbag is enabled or disabled in accordance with the person in the front-passenger seat.
- the front-passenger seat has been moved back as far back as possible.
- the person is seated correctly.

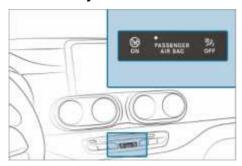
Make sure, both before and during the journey, that the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct.

When the front-passenger seat is occupied, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system performs a self-check followed by the classification of the person or the child restraint system on the front-passenger seat. The status of the front-passenger front airbag is displayed.

Always observe the notes on the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamps.

# Function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamps

# Automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system self-check



Vehicles without automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system have a special sticker on the front-passenger side of the dashboard (> page 59).

Both PASSENGER AIR BAG ON and OFF indicator lamps are lit during the system self-check when the ignition is switched on.

After the self-check, the status of the front-passenger front airbag is displayed:

- PASSENGER AIR BAG ON lights up for 60 seconds, then both indicator lamps PASSENGER AIR BAG ON and OFF are off: the front-passenger front airbag is activated. If, in the event of an accident, all deployment criteria are met, the front-passenger front airbag is deployed.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF lights up: the front-passenger front airbag is disabled. It will then not be deployed in the event of an accident.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator lamp is off, only the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp shows the status of the front-passenger front airbag. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be lit continuously or be off.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp and the prestraint system warning lamp both light up, the front-passenger seat may not be used. In this case, do not fit a child restraint system to the front-passenger seat. Have the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system checked and repaired immediately at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Status indicator

Observe the notes on the function of the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system, in order to ensure the correct weight classification of a person or a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat (> page 43).

If the status of the front-passenger front airbag changes while the vehicle is in motion, the display of the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamps changes.

The automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system has detected a weight that is too low or too high. Observe the following notes:

 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF goes off and PASSENGER AIR BAG ON lights up for 60 seconds, then both PASSENGER AIR BAG ON and OFF indicator lamps are off: the front-passenger front airbag is activated. If, in the event of an accident, all deployment criteria are met, the front-passenger front airbag is deployed. Rectify the cause for the incorrect status of the front-passenger front airbag (⊳ page 272).

• PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF lights up: the front-passenger front airbag is disabled. It will then not be deployed in the event of an accident.

Rectify the cause for the incorrect status of the front-passenger front airbag (⊳ page 274).

If the front-passenger seat is occupied, make sure that the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct depending on the situation both before and during the journey.

After fitting a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front-passenger seat: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain. lit.

## **↑** WARNING

If you secure a child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the frontpassenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is off, the frontpassenger front airbag can deploy in the event of an accident. The child could be struck by the airbag. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury. Make sure that the front-passenger front air-

bag has been disabled. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp must be lit.

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it: DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the child can occur.

When fitting a child restraint system to the front-passenger seat, observe the vehicle-specific notes (⊳ page 59).

Depending on the child restraint system and the stature of the child, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be off. In this case, a rearward-facing child restraint system may not be fitted to the front-passenger seat. Fit the rearward-facing child restraint system on a suitable rear seat instead.

After fitting a forward-facing child restraint system on the front-passenger seat: depending on the child restraint system and the stature of the child, PASSENGER AIR

BAG OFF may remain lit or be off. Always observe the following notes.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you secure a child in a forward-facing child restraint system on the co-driver's seat and you position the co-driver's seat too close to the dashboard, in the event of an accident, the child could:

- · come into contact with the vehicle's interior if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is lit, for example
- be struck by the airbag if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is off

There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Move the co-driver's seat as far back as possible. Always make sure that the shoulder belt strap is correctly routed from the vehicle belt sash guide to the shoulder belt guide on the child restraint system. The shoulder belt strap must be routed forwards and downwards from the belt sash guide. If necessary, adjust the belt sash guide and the co-driver's seat accordingly. Always observe the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions.

When fitting a child restraint system to the front-passenger seat, observe the vehicle-specific notes (⊳ page 60).

A person is sitting in the front-passenger seat: depending on the stature of the person, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF may remain lit or be off. Always observe the following notes.

A person occupying the front-passenger seat must always observe the following information:

 if an adult or a person with a corresponding stature is occupying the front-passenger seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp must be off. This indicates that the front-passenger front airbag is enabled. if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is lit, an adult or a person of corresponding stature must not use the frontpassenger seat.

A rear seat should be used instead.

- if a person of smaller stature (e.g. a teenager or small adult) occupies the front-passenger seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp either remains lit or it goes out depending on the result of the classification.
  - PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is off: move the front-passenger seat as far back as possible or a person of a smaller stature should use a rear seat.
  - PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains lit: a person of smaller stature should not use the front-passenger seat.

A rear seat should be used instead.

## **↑** WARNING

If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp remains lit after the self-check, the front-passenger front airbag is disabled. It will not be deployed in the event of an accident. In this case, the front-passenger front airbag cannot perform its intended protective function, e.g. when a person is seated in the front-passenger seat.

That person could, for example, come into contact with the vehicle interior, especially if the person is sitting too close to the dashboard. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

When the front-passenger seat is occupied, always ensure that:

- the classification of the person in the front-passenger seat is correct and the front-passenger front airbag is enabled or disabled in accordance with the person in the front-passenger seat.
- the person is seated properly with a correctly fastened seat belt.
- the front-passenger seat has been moved as far back as possible.

If children are travelling in the vehicle, be sure to observe the notes on "Children in the vehicle" (> page 47).

#### Safe travel with children in the vehicle

# When children travel with you, things to be observed

#### Be diligent

1 Be sure to observe the safety notes relevant to the situation. In doing so, you will be able to identify possible risks and avoid dangers when children are travelling in the vehicle (> page 48).

Bear in mind that negligence when securing the child in the child restraint system may have serious consequences. Always be diligent and secure a child carefully before each journey.

To improve protection for children younger than twelve years old and under 1.50 m in height, Mercedes-Benz recommends you always observe the following notes:

- Always secure the child in a child restraint system suitable for your Mercedes-Benz vehicle.
- The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.
- The vehicle seat must be suitable for the child restraint system to be fitted (⊳ page 51).

Accident statistics show that children secured on the rear seats are safer than children secured on front-passenger seats. For this reason, Mercedes-Benz strongly advises that you fit a child restraint system to a rear seat.

# The generic term child restraint system

The generic term child restraint system is used in this Owner's Manual. A child restraint system is, for example:

- · a baby car seat
- · a rearward-facing child seat
- · a forward-facing child seat
- a child booster seat with a backrest and seat belt guides

The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.

#### Observing laws and regulations

Always observe the legal requirements for using a child restraint system in the vehicle. Ensure that the child restraint system is approved in accordance with the valid test specifications and guidelines. Further information can be obtained at a qualified specialist workshop. Mercedes-Benz recommends that you use a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

#### Use only approved child restraint systems

Only child restraint systems that meet the following UNECE standards are permitted for use in the vehicle:

- UN-R44
- UN-R129 (i-Size child restraint systems) Information about the approval categories for child restraint systems and details on the approval label on the child restraint system (⊳ page 51).

#### Identifying risks, avoiding danger

#### Securing systems for child restraint systems in the vehicle

Only use the following securing systems for child restraint systems:

- the ISOFIX or i-Size securing rings
- the vehicle's seat belt system
- the Top Tether anchorages

Preferably, fit an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system.

The risk of incorrectly fitting the child restraint system can be reduced by simply fitting it on the securing rings of the vehicle.

When the child is secured using the seat belt integrated in the ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system, be sure to observe the maximum permissible weight of the child and child restraint system together (⊳ page 54).

#### The advantage of a rearward-facing child restraint system

Babies or infants should preferably travel in a suitable rearward-facing child restraint system. In this case, the child is seated in the

opposite direction to the direction of travel and is facing backwards.

Babies and infants have comparatively poorly developed neck muscles in relation to the size and weight of their head. A rearward-facing child restraint system can reduce the risk of injury to the cervical spine in an accident.

#### Secure the child restraint system correctly at all times

#### ♠ WARNING

If the child restraint system is incorrectly fitted on the seat position suitable for this purpose, it cannot perform its intended protective function. In the event of an accident, sharp braking or a sudden change in direction, the child may not be held securely. There is an increased risk of serious or even fatal injuries.

Observe the manufacturer's installation instructions and the correct use for the child restraint system. Make sure that the entire surface of the child restraint system is resting on the seat surface. Never place objects under or behind the child restraint system, e.g. cushions. Only use child restraint systems with the original cover designed for them. Only replace damaged covers with genuine covers.



#### **↑** WARNING

If the child restraint system is fitted incorrectly or is not secured, it can come loose in the event of an accident, heavy braking or a sudden change in direction. The child restraint system could be thrown about, striking vehicle occupants. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal. Always fit child restraint systems properly, even if they are not being used. Make sure that you observe the child restraint system

 Be sure to observe the installation and operating instructions provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being

manufacturer's installation instructions.

used as well as the vehicle-specific notes at all times:

- Fitting an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system to the rear seat ( $\triangleright$  page 54).
- Attaching a child restraint system with the seat belt to the rear seat (⊳ page 58).
- Attaching a child restraint system with the seat belt to the front-passenger seat (⊳ page 60). Observe the specific notes on rearward-facing and forward-facing child restraint systems (⊳ page 59). If the front-passenger seat is occupied, make sure that the status of the frontpassenger front airbag is correct depending on the situation both before and during the journey (▷ page 45).
- Observe the warning labels in the vehicle interior and on the child restraint system.
- Also secure Top Tether, if available.

#### Do not modify the child restraint system



#### ♠ WARNING

If you modify a child restraint system or affix objects to it, e.g. toys or unsuitable accessories, the child restraint system may no longer function properly. This poses an increased risk of injury.

Never modify a child restraint system. Only affix accessories which have been specially approved for this child restraint system by the child restraint system's manufacturer.

Mercedes-Benz recommends you use Mercedes-Benz care products to clean child restraint systems recommended by Mercedes-Benz.

#### Only use child restraint systems which are not damaged



#### 

Child restraint systems or their securing systems that have been damaged or subjected to a load in an accident cannot perform their intended protective function. In the event of an accident, sharp braking or a sudden change in direction, the child may not be

held securely. There is an increased risk of serious or even fatal injuries.

Immediately replace child restraint systems that have been damaged or subjected to a load in an accident. Have the child restraint securing systems checked in a qualified specialist workshop before fitting a child restraint system again.

#### Avoiding direct sunlight



#### ♠ WARNING

If the child restraint system is placed in direct sunlight, the parts could become very hot. Children could be suffer burns by touching these parts, in particular on the metallic parts of the child restraint system. There is a risk of injury.

If you and your child leave the vehicle, always make sure that the child restraint system is not in direct sunlight. Cover it with a blanket, for example. If the child restraint system has been exposed to direct sunlight, leave it to cool down before securing the child in it. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

#### Observe the following when stopping or parking



#### / WARNING

If you leave children unattended in the vehicle, they may be able to set the vehicle in motion if, for example, they:

- release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- start the engine

In addition, they may operate vehicle equipment and become trapped. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



If persons (particularly children) are exposed to heat or cold for a prolonged period, there

is a risk of serious or even fatal injuries. Never leave persons (particularly children) unattended in the vehicle.

#### Overview of recommended child restraint systems

1 You can obtain further information about the correct child restraint system from a qualified specialist workshop. Mercedes-Benz recommends that you use a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

#### Securing with ISOFIX

Weight category Size category	Type <sup>4</sup> Approval number	Order number <sup>5</sup>
Category 0+: up to 13 kg and up to approximately 15 months Size category E	BABY SAFE PLUS E1 04 301 146	B6 6 86 8224
Category I: 9-18 kg Size category B1	DUO PLUS E1 04 301 133	A 000 970 17 02

#### Securing with the vehicle seat belt

Weight category	Type <sup>4</sup> Approval number	Order number <sup>5</sup>
Category 0: up to 10 kg and up to approx- imately 6 months	BABY SAFE plus II E1 04 301 146	A 000 970 13 02
Category 0+: up to 13 kg and up to approx- imately 15 months	BABY SAFE plus II E1 04 301 146	A 000 970 13 02
Category I: 9–18 kg and from approx- imately 9 months to 4 years	DUO PLUS E1 04 301 133	A 000 970 17 02
Category II/III: 15–36 kg and from approximately 4–12 years	KIDFIX E1 04 301 198	A 000 970 20 02
Category II/III: 15-36 kg and from approximately 4-12 years	KIDFIX XP E1 04 301 304	A 000 970 23 02

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Manufacturer: Britax Römer.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> With colour code 9H95.

#### Overview of suitable seats in the vehicle for fitting a child restraint system

#### Securing systems for child restraint systems

Vehicle seat		
Left/right rear seat	Preferred securing system:  i-Size child seat securing system (▷ page 54)  Also secure Top Tether if available (▷ page 56)	Alternative securing system:  • Vehicle seat belt (▷ page 57)
Front-passenger seat	Securing system:  • Vehicle seat belt (▷ page 57)	Be sure to observe:  • If the front-passenger seat is occupied, make sure that the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct depending on the situation both before and during the journey (> page 45).  • Notes on the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system. (> page 43)
Centre rear seat	Securing system:  • Vehicle seat belt (▷ page 57)	

# Approval categories for child restraint systems

# Use only approved child restraint systems

Only child restraint systems that meet the following UNECE standards are permitted for use in the vehicle:

- UN-R44
- UN-R129 (i-Size child restraint systems)

# Identification on the child restraint system

Information about the approval category, weight category and approval number, for example, is on the approval label on the child restraint system.

Depending on the approval category of the child restraint system, there may be further information, e.g. the ISOFIX size category.

# Approval categories in accordance with UN-R44



Example of an approval label

 Universal: child restraint systems in the "Universal" category are approved for installation in vehicles. They can be used, in accordance with overviews of the suitability of seats for securing child restraint systems, on seats labelled U, UF or IUF. The designation IUF refers to ISOFIX child restraint systems in the "Universal" category. These child restraint systems must also be secured using Top Tether or a supporting bracket.

- Semi-Universal: child restraint systems in the "semi-universal" category may only be used if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.
- Vehicle-specific: child restraint systems in the "vehicle-specific" category may only be used if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.

# Approval categories in accordance with UN-R129



P91.00-2332-31

Example of an approval label

 i-Size: child restraint systems in the "i-Size" category are approved for installation in vehicles with i-Size securing rings. They can be used, in accordance with overviews of the suitability of seats for securing child restraint systems, on seats labelled i-U.

The designation i-U refers to i-Size child restraint systems in the "Universal" category. These child restraint systems must also be secured using Top Tether or a supporting bracket.

#### Observe the suitability of vehicle seats

Depending on the approval category, there are forward-facing and/or rearward-facing child restraint systems. Usage may be limited for certain vehicle seats.

- Suitability of the seats for attaching ISOFIX child restraint systems (▷ page 52)
- Suitability of the seats for attaching i-Size child restraint systems (▷ page 54)
- Suitability of the seats for attaching beltsecured child restraint systems
   (> page 57)

## Securing child restraint system with i-Size on the rear seat

## Suitability of seats for securing ISOFIX child restraint systems

## ISOFIX identification



ISOFIX is a standardised securing system for special restraint systems.

- This symbol indicates which seats are suitable for securing an ISOFIX child restraint system in accordance with UN-R44 (▷ page 51).
- Only secure child restraint systems approved by UN-R44 in accordance with the following ISOFIX tables.

#### Carry cot

Size class	Equipment	Left/right rear seat
F	ISO/L1	X
G	ISO/L2	X
		X Not suitable for an ISOFIX child restraint system in this weight category and/or size category.

#### Weight category 0 (up to 10 kg and up to approximately 6 months)

Size class	Equipment	Left/right rear seat
E	ISO/R1	IL
		IL Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in accordance with the table in "Overview of recommended child restraint systems", or if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.

#### Weight category 0+ (up to 13 kg and up to approximately 15 months)

Size class	Equipment	Left/right rear seat
E	ISO/R1	IL
D	ISO/R2	IL
С	ISO/R3	IL (1)
		IL Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in accordance with the table in "Overview of recommended child restraint systems", or if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.  (1) When using a child restraint system of size category (ISO/R3), move the front seat to the highest position and move the seat backrest to an upright position. Make sure that the seat backrest of the front seat does not rest against the child restraint system.

#### Weight category I (9-18 kg and approximately 9 months to 4 years)

Size class	Equipment	Left/right rear seat
D	ISO/R2	IL
С	ISO/R3	IL (1)
В	ISO/F2	IUF
B1	ISO/F2X	IUF

Size class	Equipment	Left/right rear seat
А	ISO/F3	IUF
		IL Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in accordance with the table in "Overview of recommended child restraint systems", or if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.  (1) When using a child restraint system of size category (ISO/R3), move the front seat to the highest position and move the seat backrest to an upright position. Make sure that the seat backrest of the front seat does not rest against the child restraint system. IUF Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the "Universal" category in this weight category.

#### Suitability of seats for fitting i-Size child restraint systems

	i-Size identification
	i-Size is a standardised securing system for special restraint systems.
	<ul> <li>This symbol indicates which seats are suitable for securing an i-Size child restraint system in accordance with UN-R129 (&gt; page 51).</li> </ul>
	Child restraint systems which have been approved in accordance with the following may be secured:
	- UN-R44 in accordance with the ISOFIX tables (▷ page 52)

- UN-R129 in accordance with the following i-Size table

	Front-passenger seat/ centre rear seat	Left/right rear seat
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U
	X Not suitable for an i-Size child restraint system in this weight category and/or size category.	i-U Suitable for forward-facing and rear- ward-facing i-Size child restraint systems in the "Universal" category.

#### Fitting an i-size child restraint system to the rear seat



#### **↑** WARNING

For ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems, where the child is secured using the integrated seat belt of the child restraint system, the permissible gross weight of the child and the child restraint system is 33 kg. If the child together with the child restraint system weighs more than 33 kg, ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems with integrated seat belt no longer offer sufficient protection. ISOFIX or i-Size child seat securing systems may be overloaded and will not be able to restrain the child, for example, in the event of an accident. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury. If the child together with the child restraint system weighs more than 33 kg, only use ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems with which the child is secured with the vehicle seat belt. Also secure the child restraint system with the Top Tether belt, if available.

Always observe the information on the weight of the child restraint system:

- in the installation and operating instructions provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used
- on the label of the child restraint system, if present

Regularly check that the maximum permissible weight of the child and child restraint system together is still complied with.

When fitting a child restraint system, be sure to observe the following:

be sure to observe the correct use and the suitability of seats for securing a child restraint system.

ISOFIX child seat securing system (▷ page 52)

i-Size child seat securing system (▷ page 54)

- be sure to observe the installation and operating instructions provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used.
- make sure that the child's feet do not touch the front seat. If necessary, move the front seat forwards slightly.

When fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system, also observe the following:

- when using a category 0/0+ baby car seat and a category I, rearward-facing child restraint system on a rear seat: adjust the front seat so that the seat does not touch the child restraint system.
- when using a category I, forwardfacing child restraint system: remove the head restraint from the respective seat, if possible. In addition, the seat backrest of the child restraint system must, as far as possible, lie flat against the backrest of the vehicle seat.

After removing the child restraint system, replace the head restraints again immediately and adjust them correctly.

- For certain child restraint systems in weight category II or III, there may be restrictions on the maximum size setting, e.g. due to possible contact with the roof.
- ✓ The child restraint system must not be put under strain between the roof and the seat cushion and/or be fitted facing the

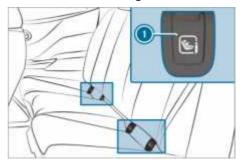
- wrong direction. If possible, adjust the seat angle as appropriate.
- The child restraint system must not be put under strain by the head restraint. Adjust the head restraints as appropriate.

When fitting an i-Size child restraint system, also observe the following:

- when using a rearward-facing child restraint system: adjust the front seat so that it does not touch the child restraint system.
- when using a forward-facing child restraint system: remove the head restraint from the respective seat, if possible. In addition, the seat backrest of the child restraint system must, as far as possible, lie flat against the backrest of the vehicle seat.

After removing the child restraint system, replace the head restraints again immediately and adjust them correctly.

When fitting the child restraint system, make sure that the seat belt for the centre seat does not get trapped. Otherwise, the seat belt could be damaged.



Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system is correctly engaged in both i-Size securing rings.

- ▶ Remove the cover of i-Size securing ring (1).
- ▶ Install the i-Size or ISOFIX child restraint system on both i-Size securing rings (1).
- ► After removing the child seat, replace the respective covers of i-Size securing rings ①.

#### **Securing Top Tether**

If the child restraint system is equipped with a Top Tether belt:

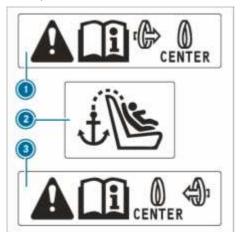
Top Tether can reduce the risk of injury. The Top Tether belt provides an additional connection between the child restraint system secured with i-Size and the vehicle.

#### **↑** WARNING

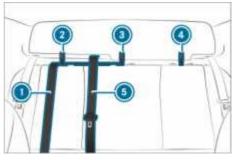
If the loops at the top of the outer rear seats are used for the Top Tether anchorage, the child restraint systems will not be correctly secured. In such cases, the child may, for example, not be restrained correctly in the event of an accident. There is an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Only use the loops on the centre rear seat for the Top Tether anchorage. Never use the loops on the outer rear seats, which are intended as a seat belt guide only.

Observe the labels behind the head restraints of the corresponding rear seats when using the loops.



- Right rear seat
- (2) Centre rear seat
- (3) Left rear seat



Right rear seat display

Top Tether anchorage (loop) ③ is on the top of the centre rear seat backrest. The outer rear seats each have a loop ② and ④ on the top of the seat backrests, which are intended as a seat belt guide only.

- ► Fit the ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system with Top Tether. Always comply with the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions when doing so.
- Remove the head restraints.
- ► Guide Top Tether belt ① through corresponding guide loop ② (right rear seat) or ④ (left rear seat) and under centre seat belt ⑤ (right rear seat only).
- ► Hook Top Tether hook into Top Tether anchorage (loop) (3).
- ► Make sure that the Top Tether belt is not twisted.
- ➤ Tension the Top Tether belt. Always comply with the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions when doing so.
- ➤ When simultaneously using the lefthand and right-hand rear seats: do not tighten the Top Tether belts before both child restraint systems have been secured to the Top Tether anchorage.
- ► Tighten the child restraint systems alternately in order to ensure equal tension.

#### Securing a child restraint system using the seat belt

# Notes on suitability of the seats for attaching belt-secured child restraint systems

#### Rear seats

Weight category	Left/right rear seat	Centre rear seat <sup>1</sup>
		1 Child restraint systems with a supporting bracket are not suitable for this seat.
Category 0: up to 10 kg	U, L	U, L
Category 0+: up to 13 kg	U, L	U, L
Category I: 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U, L
Category II: 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U, L
Category III: 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U, L
	U Suitable for child restraint systems in the "Universal" category in this weight category.	L Suitable for semi-universal child restraint systems in accordance with the table in "Recommended child restraint systems", or if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.

#### Front-passenger seat - notes

#### Notes on child restraint systems on the front-passenger seat

 If circumstances require you to fit a child restraint system to the front-passenger seat, be sure to observe the notes on child restraint systems on the front-passenger seat (▷ page 60).

Observe the specific notes on rearward-facing and forward-facing child restraint systems. If the front-passenger seat is occupied, make sure that the status of the front-passenger front airbag is correct depending on the situation both before and during the journey (> page 45).

Weight category	Front-passenger front airbag is enabled	Front-passenger front airbag is disabled <sup>1</sup>
		1 The vehicle is equipped with a front- passenger front airbag deactivation sys- tem. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indica- tor lamp must be lit.
Category 0: up to 10 kg	X	U, L
Category 0+: up to 13 kg	X	U, L
Category I: 9 to 18 kg	UF, L	U, L
Category II: 15 to 25 kg	UF, L	U, L

Weight category	Front-passenger front airbag is enabled	Front-passenger front airbag is disabled 1
Category III: 22 to 36 kg	UF, L	U, L
	X Not suitable for an ISOFIX child restraint system in this weight category and/or size category.  UF Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems in the "Universal" category in this weight category.	U Suitable for child restraint systems in the "Universal" category in this weight category.  L Suitable for semi-universal child restraint systems in accordance with the table in "Recommended child restraint systems", or if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the child restraint system manufacturer's vehicle model list.

# Securing the child restraint system with the seat belt on the rear seat

When fitting a belt-secured child restraint system, observe the following:

- Be sure to observe the installation and operating instructions provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used.
- When using a "Universal" or "Semi-Universal" category child restraint system, ensure that it is approved for the vehicle seat.
  - Observe the notes under "Suitability of seats for attaching belt-secured child restraint systems" (> page 57).
- When using a category 0/0+ baby car seat and a category I rearward-facing child restraint system on a rear seat: adjust the front seat so that the seat does not touch the child restraint system.
- When using a category I forwardfacing child restraint system: you should remove the head restraint from the respective seat, if possible.

After removing the child restraint system, replace the head restraint immediately and adjust all head restraints to the correct position.

- The backrest of a forward-facing child restraint system must, as far as possible, rest flat against the backrest of the rear seat.
- For certain child restraint systems in weight categories II or III, the maximum size setting may be restricted, for

instance due to possible contact with the roof.

- The child restraint system must not be put under strain between the roof and the seat cushion and/or be fitted facing the wrong direction. If possible, adjust the seat angle as appropriate.
- The child restraint system must not be put under strain by the head restraint. Adjust the head restraints as appropriate.
- Make sure that the child's feet do not touch the front seat. If necessary, move the front seat forward slightly.
- ► Fit the child restraint system.

  The base of the child restraint system must lie fully on the rear seat cushion.
- Always make sure that the shoulder belt strap is correctly routed from the vehicle belt outlet to the shoulder belt guide on the child restraint system.

The shoulder belt strap must be routed forwards and downwards from the belt outlet.

#### Notes on vehicles without automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system



Vehicles without automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system have a special sticker on the front-passenger side of the dashboard which is visible when the frontpassenger door is open.

Be sure to observe the following notes:

- never install a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front-passenger seat:
- always fit a rearward-facing child restraint system to a suitable rear seat.
  - suitability of the seats for attaching beltsecured child restraint systems (⊳ page 57)
  - secure the child restraint system with the seat belt on the rear seat (⊳ page 58)
- Notes on rearward-facing and forwardfacing child restraint systems on the frontpassenger seat (⊳ page 59).

#### Notes on rearward-facing and forwardfacing child restraint systems on the co-driver's seat

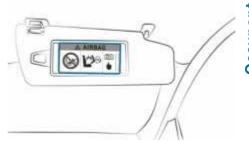


#### / WARNING

If you secure a child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the frontpassenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is off, the frontpassenger front airbag can deploy in the event of an accident. The child could be struck by the airbag. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury. Make sure that the front-passenger front airbag has been disabled. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp must be lit.

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it: DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the child can occur.

Observe the specific notes on rearward-facing and forward-facing child restraint systems.



Warning notice on the front-passenger sun visor

Always pay attention to the status of the frontpassenger front airbag with the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp:

- If circumstances require you to fit a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, always observe the information on the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system (▷ page 43).
- When using a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, the front-passenger front airbag must always be disabled. This is only the case if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is permanently lit (▷ page 45).
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp goes out, the front-passenger front airbag is enabled. The front-passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident.

#### Securing the child restraint system with the seat belt on the co-driver's seat

When fitting a belt-secured child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, always observe the following:

- **▼** Be sure to observe the installation and operating instructions provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used.
- When using a "Universal" or "Semi-Universal" category child restraint system, ensure that it is approved for the vehicle

Observe the notes under "Suitability of seats for attaching belt-secured child restraint systems" (⊳ page 57).

✓ When using a category I forward-facing child restraint system: remove the head restraint from the respective seat, if possible.

After removing the child restraint system, replace the head restraint immediately and adjust all head restraints to the correct position.

- ▼ The backrest of a forward-facing child restraint system must, as far as possible, rest flat against the backrest of the frontpassenger seat.
- For certain child restraint systems in weight categories II or III, the maximum size setting may be restricted, for instance due to possible contact with the roof.
- The child restraint system must not be put under strain between the roof and the seat cushion and/or be fitted facing the wrong direction. If possible, adjust the seat angle as appropriate.
- Never place objects, such as a cushion, under or behind the child restraint sys-
- ▶ Set the front-passenger seat as far back as possible.
- ▶ Adjust the seat angle in such a way that the front of the seat is in the topmost position and the rear of the seat in the lowest posi-
- ▶ Adjust the seat backrest to an almost vertical position.

- ▶ Fit the child restraint system. The base of the child restraint system must lie fully against the seat cushion of the frontpassenger seat.
- ► Always make sure that the shoulder belt strap is correctly routed from the vehicle belt outlet to the shoulder belt guide on the child restraint system.

The shoulder belt strap must be routed forwards and downwards from the belt outlet.

▶ If necessary, adjust the belt outlet and the front-passenger seat as appropriate.

#### **Child-proof locks**

#### Enabling and disabling child-proof locks for the rear doors



#### ♠ WARNING

If you leave children unattended in the vehicle, they may be able to set the vehicle in motion if, for example, they:

- · release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- start the engine

In addition, they may operate vehicle equipment and become trapped. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



#### ♠ WARNING

If persons (particularly children) are exposed to heat or cold for a prolonged period, there is a risk of serious or even fatal injuries. Never leave persons (particularly children) unattended in the vehicle.

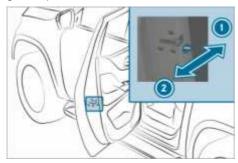
#### **↑** WARNING

If children are travelling in the vehicle, they

- open doors, thus endangering other people or road users
- · exit the vehicle and be caught by oncoming traffic
- · operate vehicle equipment and become trapped, for example

There is a risk of an accident and injury. Always activate the child-proof locks and override feature if children are travelling in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle. always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Child-proof locks are available for the rear doors and the rear side windows. The childproof locks on the rear doors enable you to secure each door individually. They can no longer be opened from the inside.



- ▶ To activate: push the lever towards the vehicle (1).
- ► Then, make sure that the child-proof locks are working properly.
- ► To deactivate: slide the lever away (2) from the vehicle.

#### Enabling and disabling child-proof locks for the side windows



▶ To activate and deactivate: press button (1).

The rear side windows and the side window on the co-driver's side are locked and unlocked.

#### Pets in the vehicle



#### **↑** WARNING

If you leave animals unsupervised or unsecured in the vehicle, they may press buttons or switches, for instance.

In this way, animals may:

- activate vehicle equipment and become trapped, for example
- switch systems on or off and thereby endanger other road users

Furthermore, unsecured animals may be flung around inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or abrupt steering or braking manoeuvre, and thereby injure vehicle occupants. There is a risk of accident and injury. Never leave animals unattended in the vehicle.

Always secure animals properly when driving, for instance with a suitable pet carrier.

#### Kev

#### Overview of key functions

#### **↑** WARNING

If children are left unsupervised in the vehicle, they could:

- open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users
- get out and be struck by oncoming traffic
- operate vehicle equipment and become trapped, for example

In addition, the children could also set the vehicle in motion, for example, if they:

- · release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- start the engine

There is a risk of an accident and injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children and animals unattended in the vehicle. Keep the keys out of the reach of children.

#### **↑** WARNING

If you attach heavy or large objects to the key, the key could be unintentionally turned in the ignition lock. This could cause the engine to be switched off. There is a risk of an accident.

Do not attach any heavy or large objects to the key. Remove any bulky keyrings before inserting the key into the ignition lock.

Keep the key away from strong magnetic fields. Otherwise, the remote control function could be affected.

Strong magnetic fields can occur in the vicinity of powerful electrical installations.



Folding keys

- (1) Fold out the key
- (2) Battery indicator lamp
- 3 Lock
- 4 Unlock

If the indicator lamp of the battery does not light up when you press the or or button, the battery is discharged.



Smart key

- 1 Lock
- 2 Unlock
- (3) Emergency key element

The key locks and unlocks the doors.

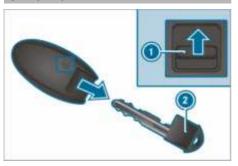
If you do not open the vehicle within approximately 30 seconds of unlocking:

- the vehicle will be locked again
- anti-theft protection is reactivated

Do not keep the key together with electronic devices or metallic objects. This can affect the key's functionality.

- Observe the Smart key warning tones in the following situations:
  - the ignition is switched off: no warning tones sound if the Smart key remains in the vehicle and the vehicle is locked.
  - the ignition is switched on: three short warning tones sound in the engine compartment if the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.

#### Removing and inserting the emergency key element



- ▶ To remove: slide release catch (1) in the direction of the arrow and at the same time. remove emergency key element (2) from the key completely.
- ▶ To insert: push emergency key element ② completely into the key until it engages and the release catch is back in its basic position.

#### Starting the engine when the key battery is low or discharged

- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission: depress the brake pedal and shift to position  $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$  ( $\triangleright$  page 107).
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal and shift to position  $\mathbb{N}$  ( $\triangleright$  page 106).
- ► Touch the Start/Stop button with the intelligent key.
- ▶ Press the Start/Stop button. The engine starts.
- f the Start/Stop button is pressed without the brake pedal or clutch pedal being

depressed, only the power supply is switched on.

#### Replacing the key battery

#### **↑** WARNING

Batteries contain toxic and corrosive substances. If batteries are swallowed, it can result in severe health problems. There is a risk of fatal injury.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children. If a battery is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.

#### **Environmental note**



Batteries contain pollutants. It is illegal to dispose of them with the household rubbish. They must be collected separately and disposed of in an environmentally responsible recycling system.



Dispose of batteries in an environmentally responsible manner. Take discharged batteries to a qualified specialist workshop or to a collection point for used batteries.

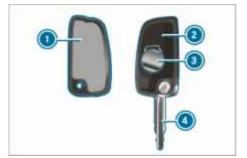
#### Folding keys

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the battery changed at a qualified specialist workshop.



#### Requirements:

- CR 2032 3 V cell battery
- ► Insert a suitable tool, e.g. a screwdriver, into the opening ① of the key.
- ► Carefully prise off the cover with the tool.



- ► Fold out the key (4).
- ► Take off the upper part (1).
- ➤ Tap the lower part ② against the palm of your hand so that the battery ③ falls out of the battery tray.
- Insert the new battery (3) into the battery tray with the positive pole facing downwards.
- ► Fold in the key (4).
- ▶ Attach the upper part ① so that it engages.

#### Smart key

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the battery changed at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Requirements:

- CR 2025 3 V cell battery
- ▶ Pull out the emergency key element from the key (▷ page 63).



- ► Insert a suitable tool, e.g. a screwdriver, into the opening (1) of the key.
- ► Carefully prise off the cover with the tool.



- ► Take off the upper part ③.
- ► Tap the lower part ① against the palm of your hand so that the battery ② falls out of the battery tray.
- ► Insert the new battery into the battery tray with the positive pole facing downwards.
- ▶ Attach the upper part ③ so that it engages.
- ▶ Insert the emergency key element back into the key (> page 63).

## Problems with the key

# Problem Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions The doors are not closed properly. The turn signals do not flash when the vehicle is locked. The central locking system has malfunctioned. Lock the vehicle with the emergency key element (▷ page 67) and then close the doors. Have the central locking system checked as soon as possible at a qualified specialist workshop.

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
You can no longer lock or unlock the vehicle.	The key battery is weak or discharged.  ➤ Check the battery using the battery indicator lamp and replace if necessary (> page 63).  ➤ Lock or unlock the vehicle using the emergency key element (> page 63).
	The key is faulty.  ▶ Lock the vehicle with the emergency key element (▷ page 67).  ▶ Have the key checked at a qualified specialist workshop.
Vehicle with smart key: you cannot start the engine.	The key battery is weak or discharged.  ► Hold the smart key against the Start/Stop button to start the engine (▷ page 63).
You have lost a key.	► Have the key deactivated at a qualified specialist workshop.

▶ If necessary, have the mechanical locks replaced.

#### **Doors**

#### Notes on double lock

Only vehicles for the United Kingdom have the double lock.



#### **↑** WARNING

When the double locks are activated, the doors can no longer be opened from the inside. People in the vehicle can no longer get out, e.g. in hazardous situations. There is a risk of injury.

Therefore, do not leave any people unsupervised in the vehicle, particularly children, elderly people or people in need of special assistance. Do not activate the double lock when people are in the vehicle.

If the vehicle has been locked with the key, the double lock function is activated as standard.

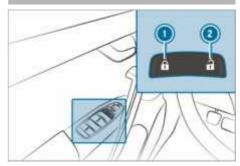
You can deactivate the double lock function by deactivating the interior motion sensor (⊳ page 71).

#### Opening the doors from inside



▶ Pull the door handle (1) and open the door.

#### Centrally locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside



- ▶ To lock: press button ①.
- ► To unlock: press button (2).
- The fuel filler flap and the AdBlue® filler flap are also locked or unlocked.
- If you have locked the vehicle using the key, it will not unlock.
- The doors are not locked if the co-driver's door or one of the rear doors is open.
- Vehicles with folding key: the vehicle is locked if the driver's door is open and the folding key is not inserted in the ignition lock. Do not leave the folding key in the vehicle when locking the vehicle.
- · Vehicles with smart key:
  - The vehicle is not locked if the driver's door is open and the smart key is detected in the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is locked when the driver's door is open and the smart key is detected outside the vehicle.

#### Locking and unlocking the vehicle with KEYLESS-GO

#### **↑** WARNING

If children are left unsupervised in the vehicle, they could:

- open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users
- get out and be struck by oncoming traffic
- operate vehicle equipment and become trapped, for example

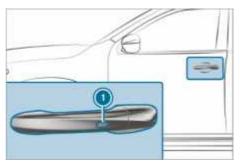
In addition, the children could also set the vehicle in motion, for example, if they:

- release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- · start the engine

There is a risk of an accident and injury. When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children and animals unattended in the vehicle. Keep the keys out of the reach of children.

#### ♠ WARNING

If persons (particularly children) are exposed to heat or cold for a prolonged period, there is a risk of serious or even fatal injuries. Never leave persons (particularly children) unattended in the vehicle.



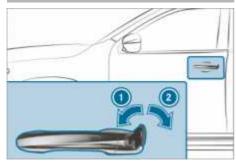
#### Requirements:

- the key is outside of the vehicle
- the distance between the key and the vehicle is less than 80 cm
- all the doors are closed
- ▶ To lock the vehicle: press button (1) on the door handle.
- ▶ To unlock the vehicle: press button (1) on the door handle.

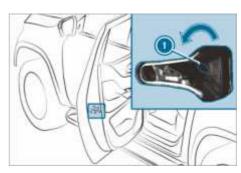
#### **Problems with KEYLESS-GO**

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
You can no longer lock or unlock the vehicle using KEYLESS-GO.	The key battery is weak or discharged.  ▶ Check the battery using the battery indicator lamp and replace if necessary (▷ page 63).
	There is interference from a powerful source of radio waves.  ▶ Use the emergency key element to lock and unlock the vehicle (▷ page 67).
	The key is faulty.  ▶ Have the vehicle and the key checked at a qualified specialist workshop.
	One of the doors is not closed properly.  ▶ Close the doors.
	The ignition is switched on.  ▶ Switch off the ignition (▷ page 102).

# Locking and unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key element



- ► To unlock the driver's door: insert the emergency key element fully into the driver's door lock and turn it anti-clockwise (1).
- ► To unlock the co-driver's door and rear doors: pull the door handle from the inside.
- ► To lock the vehicle: lock all doors except the driver's door from the inside.
- ► Insert the emergency key element fully into the driver's door lock and turn it clockwise ②.



If the electrics and thus electrical closing function of the vehicle fail completely, it will not be possible to lock the co-driver's door and the rear doors from the inside. In this case, you can lock these doors manually.

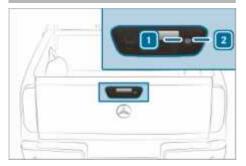
- 1 If you lock the doors manually and the child-proof locks in the rear doors are also enabled, you will not be able to open the rear doors from outside or the inside. It will only be possible to unlock the rear doors when the vehicle's electrical closing function is working again.
- ▶ If necessary, release the child-proof locks in the rear doors (▷ page 60).
- Using a suitable tool, turn the knob ① in the corresponding door anti-clockwise by 90°.

- ▶ Close the door. The door is locked.
- ► To unlock a door: pull the door handle from the inside.

The door is unlocked. The knob (1) jumps back automatically. The door is not locked the next time it is closed.

#### **Tailgate**

#### Locking and unlocking the tailgate



- The tailgate lock has a separate key.
- ► To unlock: turn the key anti-clockwise to position 1.
- ► To lock: turn the key clockwise to position

#### Opening and closing the tailgate

## **↑** WARNING

While opening or closing the tailgate, it may suddenly drop into the end position. There is a risk of injury for anyone in the tailgate's swinging range.

Only open or close the tailgate when there are no persons within its swinging range.

## **↑** WARNING

If the tailgate is overloaded, the ropes may tear and the load may fall. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load on the tailgate.
- Avoid heavy point loading on the outer edge of the tailgate.
- Do not stand under the tailgate during loading.
- If the tailgate is overloaded, the ropes may tear and the load may fall. There is a risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive with an open tailgate. If you drive with an open tailgate, you may damage the vehicle and the tailgate.

When open, the tailgate may only be loaded with a maximum of 225 kg.

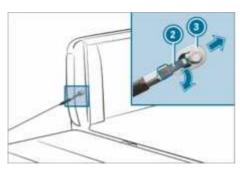


- ▶ To open: pull tailgate handle (1).
- ▶ Lower the tailgate with your hands until the tailgate is in end position. The support cables hold the tailgate.
- ► To close: guide the tailgate upwards with your hands until the tailgate is in end position.
- ▶ Shut the tailgate.

#### Opening the tailgate by 180°

- 1 On vehicles without a rear bumper, you can open the tailgate by an additional 180°.
- If you open the tailgate by 180° on vehicles with a bumper, the bumper can become

On vehicles without a bumper, only open the tailgate by a maximum of 180°. Lower the tailgate carefully with your hands.



- ▶ To open: pull tailgate handle (1).
- ▶ Lower the tailgate with your hands until the tailgate is in end position. The support cables hold the tailgate.
- ► Hold the tailgate in place.
- ▶ Slide the catch (2) to the side in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ Slide and remove the retainer ③ in the direction of the arrow.
- ► Carefully lower the tailgate completely with your hands.
- ► To close: guide the tailgate upwards as far as possible with your hands, until the cables can be secured.
- ► Secure the retainer ③.
- ▶ Slide back the catches ②.
- ▶ Shut the tailgate.

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).

#### Opening and closing the side windows



#### **↑** WARNING

While opening the side windows, body parts could become trapped between the side window and the door frame as the side window moves. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that nobody touches the side window during the opening procedure. If somebody becomes trapped, release the switch or pull the switch to close the side window again.

#### ♠ WARNING

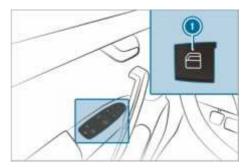
While closing the side windows, body parts in the closing area could become trapped. There is a risk of injury.

When closing make sure that no parts of the body are in the closing area. If somebody becomes trapped, release the switch or press the switch to open the side window again.



If children operate the side windows they could become trapped, particularly if they are left unsupervised. There is a risk of injury.

Activate the override feature for the rear side windows. When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



The switches on the driver's door take precedence.

- ▶ To open manually: press and hold the ①
- ▶ To close manually: pull and hold the ① switch.

The windows of the front doors also have automatic operation.

- ► To open fully: briefly press the (1) switch beyond the pressure point. Automatic operation is started.
- ► To close fully: briefly pull the (1) switch beyond the pressure point. Automatic operation is started.
- ▶ To interrupt automatic operation: briefly press or pull the (1) switch again.

#### **Automatic reversing function**

If an object blocks or restricts a side window during the automatic closing process, the side window opens again automatically. The automatic reversing function is only an aid and is no substitute for your attention.

## **↑** WARNING

The reversing feature does not react:

- to soft, light and thin objects, e.g. small fingers
- · while adjusting

This means that the reversing feature cannot prevent someone being trapped in these situations. There is a risk of injury.

When closing, make sure that no body parts are in the closing area. If someone becomes trapped, press the 🔳 button to open the side window again.

#### Opening and closing the electrical rear sliding window

#### **↑** WARNING

When opening the rear sliding window, body parts could be drawn in or become trapped between the rear sliding window and the window frame. There is a risk of injury.

When opening, make sure that nobody touches the rear sliding window. If someone becomes trapped, release the switch immediately or pull on the switch to close the rear sliding window again.

## ♠ WARNING

When closing the rear sliding window, body parts could be trapped in the closing area. There is a risk of injury.

When closing, make sure that no-one has any parts of the body within the closing area. If someone becomes trapped, release the switch immediately or press the switch to open the rear sliding window again.

#### **↑** WARNING

If persons (particularly children) are exposed to heat or cold for a prolonged period, there is a risk of serious or even fatal injuries. Never leave persons (particularly children) unattended in the vehicle.



- ▶ To open: press and hold switch (1).
- ▶ To close: pull and hold switch (1).

## **Anti-theft protection**

#### **Immobiliser**

#### Activating

- ▶ Vehicles with an ignition lock: remove the key from the ignition lock.
- ▶ Vehicles with a Start/Stop button: switch off the ignition (⊳ page 102).

#### Switching off

▶ Switch on the ignition (▷ page 102).

The immobiliser prevents your vehicle from being started without the correct key.

Always take the key with you and lock the vehicle when leaving the vehicle. If you leave the key in the vehicle, anyone can start the engine.

 Starting the engine always deactivates the immobiliser.

## ATA (anti-theft alarm system)



## Activating

► Press the button on the key. The indicator lamp (1) flashes.

If the alarm system is switched on, an optical and audible alarm is triggered when the following are opened:

- a front door or rear door
- the vehicle with the emergency key element
- the bonnet

#### Switching off the alarm

► Press the button on the key. The alarm stops.

The alarm is not switched off, even if you immediately close the open door that has triggered it, for example.

## Tow-away protection

An optical and audible alarm is triggered if the inclination of the vehicle changes when towaway protection is switched on. This can be the case if the vehicle is raised on one side, for example.

#### Activating

#### Requirements

. The doors are closed.

- ► Lock the vehicle with the key. Tow-away protection is switched on after approximately 20 seconds.
- i) If the tow-away protection is switched on and you load the load surface, the alarm may be triggered.

## Switching off the alarm

► Unlock the vehicle with the key.

#### Interior motion sensor

If motion is detected in the vehicle interior when the interior motion sensor is switched on, an optical and audible alarm is triggered. This can happen if someone reaches into the vehicle interior, for example.

#### **Activating**

Requirements

- The windows and doors are closed.
- There are no objects, e.g. mascots, hanging on the rear-view mirror or on the grab handles on the roof trim.

These can trigger a false alarm.

► Lock the vehicle with the key.

The interior motion sensor is switched on after approximately 20 seconds.

#### Switching off the alarm

▶ Unlock the vehicle with the key.

# Deactivating interior protection and tow-away protection



- ▶ Vehicles with an ignition lock: remove the key from the ignition lock.
- ► Vehicles with a Start/Stop button: switch off the ignition.

- ▶ Press the button ① in the roof lining.
- ▶ Close the doors.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

A confirmation tone sounds.

Tow-away protection and interior protection are deactivated.

The tow-away protection and interior protection remain deactivated until you lock the vehicle again.

- ► Deactivate tow-away protection and interior protection if you lock your vehicle and
  - load and/or transport the vehicle, e.g. on a ferry or car transporter
  - park on a movable surface, such as a split-level garage
  - if there are people or animals remaining in the vehicle

This will prevent a false alarm.

## Correct driver's seat position

#### **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or mirrors
- fasten the seat belt

There is a risk of an accident.

Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and fasten your seat belt before starting the engine.



Observe the following when adjusting steering wheel (1), seat belt (2) and driver's seat (3):

- you are sitting as far away from the driver's airbag as possible
- · you are sitting in an upright position
- your thighs are gently supported by the seat
- your legs are not fully straightened and you can depress the pedals properly
- the back of your head is supported at eye level by the centre of the head restraint
- you can reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent
- you can move your legs freely
- you can see all the displays in the instrument cluster clearly
- you have a good view of traffic conditions
- your seat belt fits snugly across your body and is routed across the middle of your shoulder and in your pelvic area across the hip joints

#### **Seats**

## Adjusting the front seats electrically



#### ♠ WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or
- fasten the seat belt

There is a risk of an accident.

Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and fasten your seat belt before starting the engine.



## **⚠** WARNING

If children adjust the seats, they could become trapped, especially if they are unattended. There is a risk of injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



#### **↑** WARNING

When adjusting a seat, you or another vehicle occupant could become trapped by the guide rail of the seat, for instance. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that no one has any part of their body within the area of movement of the seat when adjusting it.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you adjust the seat height carelessly, you or other vehicle occupants could be trapped and thereby injured. Children in particular could accidentally press the electrical seat adjustment buttons and become trapped. There is a risk of injury.

While moving the seats, make sure that your hands or other body parts do not get under the lever assembly of the seat adjustment system.

## **↑** WARNING

The seat belt does not offer the intended level of protection if you have not moved the backrest to an almost vertical position. When braking or in the event of an accident, you could slide underneath the seat belt and sustain abdomen or neck injuries, for example. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Adjust the seat properly before beginning your journey. Always ensure that the backrest is in an almost vertical position and that the shoulder section of your seatbelt is routed across the centre of your shoulder.

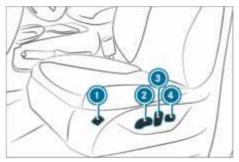
## **⚠** WARNING

If the front seats are positioned too closely to the dashboard or steering wheel, the front airbags could cause additional injuries to vehicle occupants in the front. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

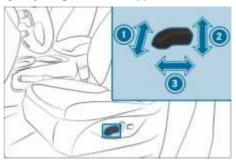
Always adjust the front seats so that they are as far away as possible from the front airbags. In addition, observe the instructions on how to adjust the seats correctly.

- I To prevent damage to the seats and the seat heating, observe the following notes:
  - Do not spill liquids onto the seats. Dry the seats as soon as possible if liquid does get spilt on the seats.
  - If the seat covers are damp or wet, do not switch on the seat heating. Also, do not use the seat heating to dry the seats.
  - Clean the seat covers as recommended; see the "Interior care" section.
  - Do not transport heavy loads on the seats. Do not place pointed objects on the seat cushions such as knives, nails or tools. Where possible, use the seats only for carrying passengers.
  - When operating the seat heating, do not cover the seats with insulating materials, e.g. blankets, coats, bags, protective covers, child seats or booster seats.
  - When the seat heating is switched on, the seat surface can be damaged as a result of objects being placed on the seats, for example, seat cushions, child seats and

- protective covers not approved by Mercedes-Benz.
- Make sure that there are no objects in the footwell under or behind the seats when moving the seats back. There is a risk that the seats and/or the objects could be damaged.



- (1) Switches seat heating on or off
- (2) Adjusts the seat angle/seat height/seat fore-and-aft adjustment
- (3) Adjusts the angle of the seat backrest
- (4) Adjusting the lumbar support



- (1) Adjusts the seat angle
- ② Adjusts the seat height
- (3) Adjusts the seat fore-and-aft adjustment

## Adjusting the front seats manually

#### **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or mirrors
- · fasten the seat belt

There is a risk of an accident.

Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and fasten your seat belt before starting the engine.



#### **↑** WARNING

If children adjust the seats, they could become trapped, especially if they are unattended. There is a risk of injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



#### **↑** WARNING

When adjusting a seat, you or another vehicle occupant could become trapped by the guide rail of the seat, for instance. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that no one has any part of their body within the area of movement of the seat when adjusting it.



### **↑** WARNING

If the driver's seat is not correctly engaged, it could unexpectedly move while driving. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

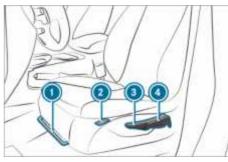
Always ensure that the driver's seat is engaged before starting the vehicle.



#### **↑** WARNING

The seat belt does not offer the intended level of protection if you have not moved the backrest to an almost vertical position. When braking or in the event of an accident, you could slide underneath the seat belt and sustain abdomen or neck injuries, for example. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Adjust the seat properly before beginning your journey. Always ensure that the backrest is in an almost vertical position and that the shoulder section of your seatbelt is routed across the centre of your shoulder.



- (1) Adjusts the seat fore-and-aft adjustment
- (2) Switches seat heating on or off
- (3) Adjusts the seat height (if present)
- (4) Adjusts the angle of the seat backrest
- ▶ To adjust the seat height: pull lever ③ upwards or push it down.
- ▶ To adjust the angle of the seat backrest: lift lever (4) and tilt the seat backrest to the desired position.
- ▶ Make sure that the seat is engaged correctly.
- ▶ To adjust the seat fore-and-aft position: lift lever (1) and slide the seat to the desired position.
- ▶ Make sure that the seat is engaged correctly.

#### Head restraints on the front seats



#### **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or mirrors
- fasten the seat belt

There is a risk of an accident.

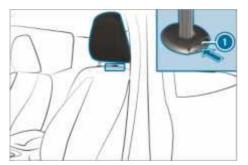
Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and fasten your seat belt before starting the engine.



### **↑** WARNING

The head restraints cannot provide the intended protection unless they are fitted and adjusted correctly. There is an increased risk of injury to the head and neck in the event of an accident or sudden braking, for example.

Always drive with the head restraints fitted. Ensure that the centre of the head restraints support the back of each vehicle occupant's head at eye level before driving off.



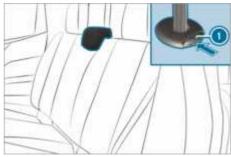
- ▶ To raise: pull the head restraint upwards.
- ▶ To lower: press release knob (1) in the direction of the arrow and press the head restraint downwards.
- ► Ensure that the head restraint has engaged properly.
- ▶ To remove: pull the head restraint up to the
- ▶ Press release button (1) in the direction of the arrow and pull out the head restraint.
- ▶ To fit: insert the head restraint.
- ▶ Push the head restraint down until it engages.

## Head restraints on the rear bench seat

## **↑** WARNING

The head restraints cannot provide the intended protection unless they are fitted and adjusted correctly. There is an increased risk of injury to the head and neck in the event of an accident or sudden braking, for example.

Always drive with the head restraints fitted. Ensure that the centre of the head restraints support the back of each vehicle occupant's head at eye level before driving off.

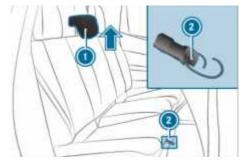


The centre head restraint can be put in an upper and lower position. If the centre seat of the rear bench seat is occupied, the head restraint must be in the upper position.

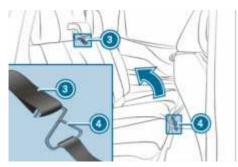
- ▶ To raise: pull the head restraint upwards.
- ▶ To lower: press release button (1) in the direction of the arrow and press the head restraint downwards.
- ▶ To remove: pull the head restraint up to the
- ▶ Press release button ① in the direction of the arrow and pull out the head restraint.
- ▶ To fit: insert the head restraint.
- ▶ Push the head restraint down until it engages.
- Readiust the head restraint.

## Folding the seat cushion on the rear bench seat up/down

1 The seat cushion on the rear bench seat may only be folded up when the vehicle is stationary. During a journey, the seat cushion on the rear bench seat must be folded down and secured to the floor using the hook provided. Driving with the seat cushion folded up is not permitted.



- ► To fold up: push the centre head restraint (1) upwards.
- ▶ Remove the right-hand hook ② from the floor.



- ▶ Pull the Top Tether loop ③ forwards, under and through the head restraint.
- ▶ Fold up seat cushion.
- ▶ Remove the centre hook ④ on the underside of the seat cushion from the Velcro fas-
- ► Secure the hook (4) to the Top Tether loop ③.
- ▶ To fold down: pull the hook (4) out of the Top Tether loop (3).
- ▶ Fasten the centre hook (4) to the underside of the bench seat using the Velcro fastener.
- ► Support the seat cushion with your hands and lower it.
- ▶ Fasten the right-hand hook ② on the floor.
- ▶ Push the centre head restraint (1) down (⊳ page 76).

## Seat heating

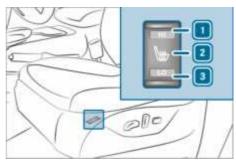


#### **↑** WARNING

The cushion and backrest pads can become very hot if you switch the seat heating on. The health of vehicle occupants with limited temperature sensitivity or a limited ability to react to excessively high temperatures may be affected or they may even suffer burnlike injuries. There is a risk of injury.

Select the lowest heating level for prolonged seat heating operation.

When you leave your seat, do not place anything on the seat and switch off the seat heating. Do not switch the seat heating on when the seat is not occupied, e.g. when driving without a co-driver. The seat heating may otherwise overheat, causing damage to the seat.



- 1 HI for switching on a high heating level
- 2 Seat heating switched off
- **3 LO** for switching on a low heating level
- ▶ To switch on or select the heating level: set the switch to position 1 or 3. The corresponding indicator lamp lights up depending on the heating level selected.
- ▶ To switch off: set the switch to position The indicator lamp goes out.
- 1 The seat heating does not switch off automatically.

## Adjusting the steering wheel



#### **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or mirrors
- fasten the seat belt

There is a risk of an accident.

Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and fasten your seat belt before starting the engine.

#### **↑** WARNING

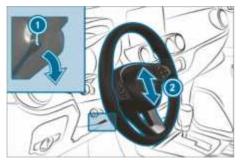
The steering wheel may move unexpectedly if you adjust it while driving. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Make sure that the steering wheel is locked before driving off. Never unlock the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion.

#### **↑** WARNING

Children could become trapped by the steering wheel if they adjust it. There is a risk of injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



- ► Fold release lever (1) down completely.
- ► Adjust height (2).
- ► Fold release lever (1) up completely.
- ► Check and make sure that the steering column is engaged by moving the steering wheel.

## Stowage areas

## Notes on loading the vehicle



#### **↑** WARNING

If objects, luggage or loads are not secured or not secured sufficiently, they could slip, tip over or be flung around and thereby hit vehicle occupants. There is a risk of injury, especially when braking or abruptly changing directions.

Always store objects so that they cannot be flung around. Secure objects, luggage or loads against slipping or tipping before the journey.

## **⚠** WARNING

If you transport objects in the vehicle interior and these are not adequately secured, they could slip or be flung around and thereby strike vehicle occupants. Also, there is a risk that objects stowed in cup holders, mobile phone brackets and in/on open stowage spaces can't be restrained in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury, especially in the event of sudden braking or a sudden change in direction.

- Always stow objects in such a way that they cannot be flung around in these or similar situations.
- · Always make sure that objects do not protrude out of stowage spaces, stowage nets or ruffled pockets.
- Close all sealable stowage spaces before you start your journey.
- · Always stow and secure heavy, hard, pointed, sharp-edged, breakable or oversized objects in the loading area. Use suitable accessories and lashing material to secure loads.



#### ♠ WARNING

As a result of improperly placed or unevenly distributed loads, the centre of gravity of the load being transported may be too high or too far back. This can significantly impair handling as well as steering and braking characteristics. There is a risk of an acci-

Always make sure that the centre of gravity of the load is:

- between the axles and
- as low as possible, near the rear axle.

## **↑** WARNING

When the permissible wheel loads, axle loads and/or the maximum permissible gross vehicle weight are exceeded, driving safety is compromised. The handling as well as steering and braking characteristics may be significantly impaired. Overloaded tyres may overheat, causing them to burst. There is a risk of an accident.

When transporting a load, always observe the permissible wheel loads, axle loads and the maximum permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle (including occupants).

### **↑** WARNING

If the tailgate is overloaded, the ropes may tear and the load may fall. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load on the tailgate.
- Avoid heavy point loading on the outer edge of the tailgate.
- Do not stand under the tailgate during loading.
- If the tailgate is overloaded, the ropes may tear and the load may fall. There is a risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive with an open tailgate. If you drive with an open tailgate, you may damage the vehicle and the tailgate.
- If you are using a roof carrier, observe the maximum roof load and maximum roof carrier load.
- Excessive point loading on the loading area can lead to a deterioration of the driving characteristics and can damage the loading area.
- Observe the notes regarding the maximum load capacity of individual lashing points. If you combine several lashing points to secure a load, you must always observe the maximum loading capacity of the weakest lashing point.

For example, when the brakes are fully applied, forces act which can be many times that of the weight force of the load. To distribute the load evenly, always use several lashing points. Load the lashing points as evenly as possible.

When open, the tailgate may only be loaded with a maximum of 225 kg.

### Load distribution and securing loads

The handling characteristics of your vehicle are dependent on the distribution of the load within the vehicle. Therefore, please observe the following notes when loading:

- the overall centre of gravity of the load should always be as low as possible, centred and between the axles near the rear axle.
- when transporting a load, never exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight or the permissible axle loads for the vehicle (including occupants).
- transport loads on the loading area.
- move large and heavy loads as far towards the front of the vehicle as possible against the cab's rear panel, stack loads flush with the cab panel.
- secure the load to the lashing eyelets and spread the load as evenly as possible.
- use lashing eyelets and fastening components which are suitable for the weight and size of the load.

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring

 the load is secured against slipping, tipping, rolling or falling off in normal traffic conditions, should the vehicle swerve to avoid an obstacle, in the event of full brake application and on poor road surfaces.

Always observe the operating instructions of the respective manufacturer when using suitable load securing aids or lashing material and particularly the information on the end of service life contained in these operating instruc-

Load securing aids or lashing material must not be used if:

- the identification is missing or is illegible.
- there are yarn breaks, damage to load-bearing seams or other traces of crack formation.
- there is cutting, deformations, squashed areas or other damage.
- the compensation elements or fasteners are damaged.

These types of load securing aids or lashing materials are worn out; they should not be used and must be replaced. If you use load securing aids and lashing materials that are ready to be discarded, the load is not secured sufficiently.

In the event of an accident, have a damaged loading area, the lashing eyelets and the lashing material checked at a specialist workshop. Otherwise, when you next transport a load, it may not be sufficiently secured.

## When loading

- ▶ observe the notes on load distribution.
- ▶ secure the load.
- fill spaces between the load and the load compartment walls or wheel arches. For this purpose use rigid load securing aids, such as chocks, wooden fixings or padding.
- ▶ attach secured and stabilised loads in all directions to the lashing eyelets.
- when securing a load, always use the closest lashing eyelets and pad sharp edges for protection.
- ▶ Do not stand under the tailgate.

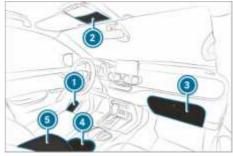
### After loading:

- ► make sure that the load is secure before every journey and at regular intervals during a long journey, and correct it if necessary.
- ▶ adjust the headlamp range (▷ page 87).
- ▶ adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load (> page 230).
- adapt your driving style according to the load.
- Make sure that the tailgate is closed and secured.

## Stowage spaces in the interior

# Overview of the front stowage compartments

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle ( $\triangleright$  page 78).

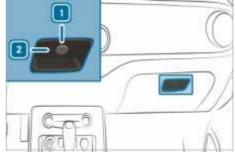


- (1) Stowage space in the doors
- ② Spectacles compartment
- (3) Glove compartment
- 4 Centre console with cup holder and small parts tray/ashtray
- Stowage compartment in the armrest with multimedia connector unit, 12 V socket and stowage space, for example for an MP3 player

## Locking and unlocking the glove compartment

Observe the notes on the loading the vehicle (> page 78).

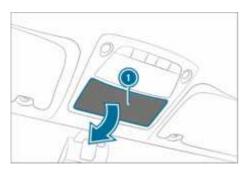
If you have a smart key, use the emergency key element (> page 63) for locking and unlocking.



- 1 Locking
- 2 Unlocking
- ► Turn the key 90° clockwise 1 (to lock) or anti-clockwise 2 (to unlock).

## Opening the spectacles compartment

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (> page 78).



▶ Briefly press spectacles compartment (1). The spectacles compartment opens downwards.

## Opening the stowage compartment under the armrest

Observe the notes on the loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).



▶ Pull release catch (1) and lift the cover of the armrest upwards.

## Cup holders in the centre console



#### **↑** WARNING

The cup holder cannot secure a drinks container in place during a journey. If you use a cup holder during a journey, the drinks container could be flung around and liquid could be spilt. Vehicle occupants could come into contact with the liquid and, in particular, be scalded by hot liquid. You could be distracted from the traffic situation and lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

Only use the cup holder when the vehicle is stationary. Only place containers of a suitable size in the cup holder. Seal the container, in particular when it contains hot liquid.



Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).

▶ Place containers only in cup holder (1).

## Stowage net

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).

You can use the stowage net in the co-driver's footwell to store small, lightweight items.

## Stowage compartment under the rear bench seat

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).

There is a stowage compartment located under the seat cushion of the rear bench seat. Lift up the seat cushion ( $\triangleright$  page 76).

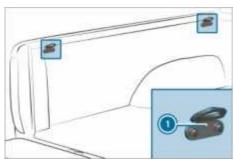
## Lashing eyelets on the load surface

## Fixed lashing eyelets

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle (⊳ page 78).

Information on suitable load securing aids, lashing materials and suitable accessories can be obtained from a qualified specialist work-

When a load is fastened to the lashing eyelets, the tensile load of 150 daN not be exceeded.



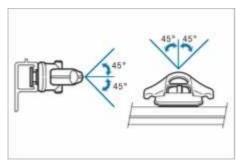
Fixed lashing eyelets

## Movable lashing eyelets

## **↑** WARNING

If the lashing eyelets are not properly fitted, they may slip or become detached in the event of abrupt changes in direction, braking manoeuvres or an accident. This may cause objects, luggage or the load to slip, tip over or be flung around, striking vehicle occupants or other road users. There is a risk of injury.

Before using the lashing eyelets, always make sure they are properly fitted and cannot be moved.

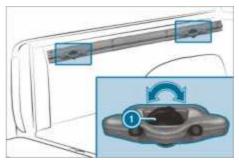


Observe the notes on the loading the vehicle ( $\triangleright$  page 78).

Also observe the following notes:

- when a load is fastened to the lashing eyelets, the angle between the load and the lashing eyelets must not exceed 45°.
- when a load is fastened to the lashing eyelets, the tensile load of 150 daN may not be exceeded.

Information on suitable load securing aids, lashing materials and suitable accessories can be obtained from a qualified specialist workshop.



### Fitting lashing eyelets

- ► Turn the bolt connection ① anti-clockwise and unscrew it completely.
- ► Insert the lashing eyelet into the guide rail rotated by 90°.
- ► Turn the lashing eyelet 90° clockwise.
- ➤ Slide the lashing eyelet near the load.

  The nubs on the underside of the lashing eyelet must be fully seated in the notches of the guide rail.
- ► Turn the bolt connection ① clockwise and tighten it.

#### Moving the lashing eyelets

- ► Turn the bolt connection ① anti-clockwise and unscrew it completely.
- ➤ Slide the lashing eyelet near the load.

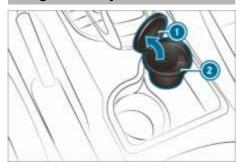
  The nubs on the underside of the lashing eyelet must be fully seated in the notches of the guide rail.
- ► Turn the bolt connection ① clockwise and tighten it.

#### Removing lashing evelets

- ► Turn the bolt connection ① anti-clockwise and unscrew it completely.
- ► Turn the lashing eyelet 90° anti-clockwise.
- ► Take the lashing eyelet out of the guide rail.

## Ashtray and cigarette lighter

## Using the ashtray



- ▶ To insert the ashtray: remove the rubber mat from the stowage space.
- ▶ Press the ashtray ② into the flat recess in the centre console with slight pressure until it sits firmly.
- ▶ To open the ashtray: push the lid (1) of the ashtray upwards.
- ▶ To remove the ashtray: push the ashtray (2) forwards slightly and lift it up and out.

## Using the cigarette lighter

#### **↑** WARNING

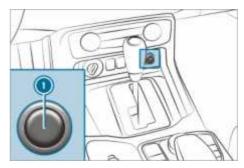
You can burn yourself if you touch the hot heating element or the socket of the cigarette lighter.

In addition, flammable materials can ignite if:

- · the hot cigarette lighter falls
- a child holds the hot cigarette lighter to objects, for example

There is a risk of fire and injury.

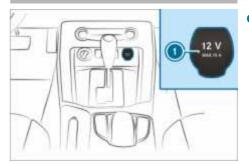
Always hold the cigarette lighter by the knob. Always make sure that the cigarette lighter is out of reach of children. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



- ▶ Press cigarette lighter ①. The cigarette lighter will pop out automatically when the heating element is red-hot.
- 1 Use only the sleeve provided for the cigarette lighter.

#### **Sockets**

## Using the 12 V socket in the centre console

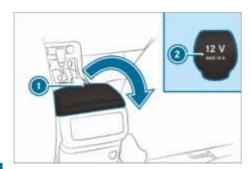


#### Requirements

- Only connect devices with a maximum power consumption of 180 watts (15 A).
- ▶ Lift up cover (1) of the 12 V socket and insert the plug of the device.

## Using the 12 V socket under the armrest

If you use the 12 V sockets under the armrest and in the rear simultaneously, be aware not to exceed the maximum power consumption of 180 W. You will otherwise overload the fuse.

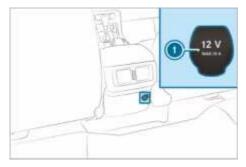


## Requirements:

- only connect devices with a maximum power consumption of 180 watts (15 A).
- ▶ pull release catch ① and lift the cover of the armrest upwards.
- ▶ lift up cover ② of the 12 V socket and insert the plug of the device.

# Using the 12 V socket in the rear compartment

If you use the 12 V sockets under the armrest and in the rear simultaneously, be aware not to exceed the maximum power consumption of 180 W. You will otherwise overload the fuse.



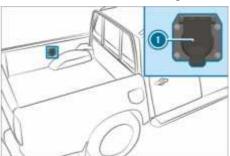
#### Requirements:

- only connect devices with a maximum power consumption of 180 watts (15 A).
- ► Lift up cover ① of the 12 V socket and insert the plug of the device.

## Using 12 V sockets in the load surface

I The accessories are supplied with power via the socket even when the ignition is switched off. Run the engine more frequently if you want to connect accessories for an extended period of time. This will keep the battery charged up. Disconnect accessories from the socket if the vehicle is to be parked up for an extended period of time.

Otherwise, the battery may discharge. You will then be unable to start the engine.



#### Requirements:

- only connect devices with a maximum power consumption of 240 watts (20 A).
- use this socket only while the engine is running to prevent the starter battery from discharging.
- ▶ lift up cover ① of the 12 V socket and insert the plug of the device.

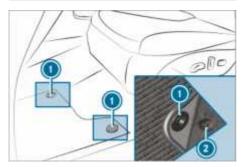
## Fitting/removing the floormat

## **⚠ WARNING**

Objects in the driver's footwell may restrict the clearance around the pedals or block a depressed pedal. This jeopardises the operating and road safety of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Stow all objects securely in the vehicle so that they do not get into the driver's footwell. Always fit the floormats securely and as prescribed in order to ensure that there is always sufficient room for the pedals. Do

not use loose floormats and do not place several floormats on top of one another.



- ► To fit: press studs ① onto retainers ②.
- ► To remove: pull the floormat away from retainers ②.

## **Exterior lighting**

# Changing over the lights when driving abroad

Vehicles with static LED headlamps: the headlamps do not need to be switched. The legal requirements are also met in countries where vehicles drive on the other side of the road.

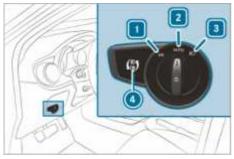
**Vehicles with halogen headlamps:** contact a qualified specialist workshop.

# Lighting systems and your responsibility

The various lighting systems are merely aids designed to assist driving. The driver of the vehicle is responsible for adjusting the vehicle's lighting to the prevailing light and visibility conditions, the legal requirements as well as the traffic conditions.

## **Light switches**

## Operating the light switches



- Side lamps, licence plate and instrument cluster lighting
- 2 Automatic headlamps, controlled by the light sensor
- 3 Dipped-beam or main-beam head-lamps
- Switches the rear foglamp and front foglamp on or off

Always park the vehicle in accordance with legal stipulations in a secure and adequately lit location.

Leaving the side lamps on for several hours drains the battery.

## Automatic driving lights

The side lamps, dipped-beam headlamps and daytime driving lights are switched on automatically depending on the status of the ignition, whether the engine is running and the light conditions.

## **↑** WARNING

When the light switch is set to AUTO, the dipped-beam headlamps may not be switched on automatically if there is fog, snow or other causes of poor visibility due to the weather conditions such as spray. There is a risk of an accident.

In such situations, turn the light switch to  $\boxed{\text{BD}}$ .

Automatic headlamps are only a driving aid. You are responsible for the vehicle lighting at all times.

# Switching the front and rear foglamp on and off

Requirements:

- the light switch is in the ☑, ⊃o⊊ or Auto position.
- ► To switch on the front foglamp: press the button once.
- ► To switch on front and rear foglamps:

  press the // button twice.
- ► To switch off the rear foglamp: press the button three times.
- ► To switch off the front foglamp: press the button four times.

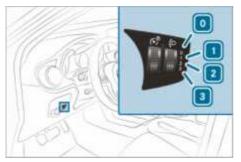
or

Press and hold the button for approx. three seconds.

Please take note of the country-specific regulations for the use of front and rear foglamps.

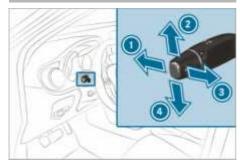
# Adjusting the headlamp range (only for vehicles with halogen headlamps)

The headlamp range controller allows you to adjust the light cone from the headlamps to suit the vehicle load.



- o Driver's and co-driver's seats occupied
- 1 Driver's, co-driver's and rear seats occupied
- 2 Driver's seat, co-driver's seat and rear seats occupied, load surface laden
- 3 Driver's and co-driver's seats occupied and use of the maximum permissible rear axle load
- ► Turn headlamp range controller to the position appropriate to the vehicle load.

# Operating the combination switch for lights



- 1 Main-beam headlamps
- 2 Turn signal, right
- (3) Headlamp flasher
- 4 Turn signal, left

#### Requirements

The dipped-beam headlamps are switched on.

- ➤ To switch on the main-beam headlamps: switch on the dipped-beam headlamps (▷ page 86).
- Press the combination switch beyond the pressure point in the direction of the arrow ①.

The main-beam indicator lamp comes on.

- ► To switch off the main-beam headlamps: move the combination switch back to its out-of-use position.
- ➤ To indicate briefly: press the combination switch briefly to the pressure point in the direction of the arrow ② or ④.

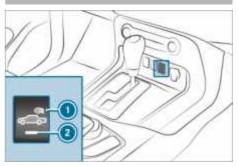
  The corresponding turn signal flashes three times
- ▶ To indicate permanently: press the combination switch beyond the pressure point in the direction of the arrow ② or ④).

## Switching hazard warning lamps on and off



▶ Press the ① button.

# Switching the loading area lighting on and off



- ► Press button ①.

  The loading area lighting is switched on when the indicator lamp ② lights up.
- It is only possible to switch the loading area lighting on when the ignition is switched off because driving with the loading area lighting switched on is prohibited.
- 1 The loading area lighting and the indicator lamp 2 are switched off automatically after approx. 30 minutes in order to protect the starter battery.

## Setting the interior lighting

### Front overhead control panel



- (1) Switches the left-hand reading lamp on/off
- ② Switches the front interior lighting on/off
- ③ Console lighting
- (4) Switches the automatic interior lighting control on/off
- (5) Switches the right-hand reading lamp on/off

## Interior lighting in rear compartment



- 1 Switches the rear interior lighting ON
- Switches the rear interior lighting OFF
- 3 Switches the rear automatic interior lighting control on/off (DOOR)

## Replacing light bulbs

## Notes on changing bulbs

## **⚠ WARNING**

Bulbs, lamps and plug connectors can become very hot during use. When replacing a bulb, you could burn yourself on these components. There is a risk of injury.

Allow these components to cool down before replacing the bulb.

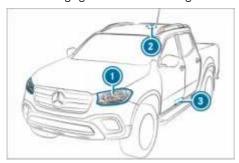
Make sure bulbs are positioned securely.

Observe the following notes:

- do not use a light bulb that has been dropped or that has scratches on its glass tube.
   The light bulb may explode.
- use light bulbs only in closed lamps that have been designed for this purpose. Fit only spare bulbs of the same type and the specified voltage.
- marks on the glass tube reduce the service life of the light bulbs. Do not touch the glass tube with your bare hands. If necessary, clean the glass tube with alcohol or spirit while it is cold and wipe with a lint-free cleth
- protect the light bulbs from moisture and do not bring into contact with liquid.

## Overview of light source type

The following light bulbs can be changed.



Vehicles with halogen headlamps

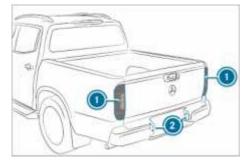
1 Main-beam headlamp/dipped-beam head-

lamp: H7 55 W

Turn signal lamp: WY21W 21 W Side lamp: WY21/5W 21 W

2 Interior light: 12V8WAL 8 W

③ Entrance lighting: HT D6 3.4 W



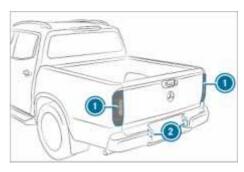
Vehicles with halogen headlamps

① Tail light: P21/5W 5 W Reversing lamp: W21W 21 W Brake light: P21/5W 21 W

Turn signal lamp (rear): WY21W 21 W

Rear foglamp: H21W 21 W

(2) Licence plate lamp: W5W 5 W



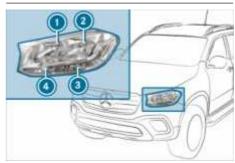
Vehicles with LED headlamps
(1) Reversing lamp: W21W 21 W

Turn signal lamp: WY21W 21 W

② Licence plate lamp: W5W 5 W

## Replacing front light bulbs

# Changing light bulbs for the halogen headlamp



- (1) Main-beam headlamps
- ② Dipped-beam headlamps
- ③ Side lamps
- (4) Turn signal lamp



- Housing cover for dipped-beam headlamps/side lamps
- Housing cover for main-beam headlamps/ turn signal lamps

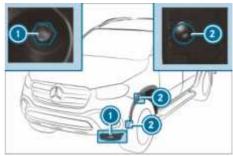
#### Requirements:

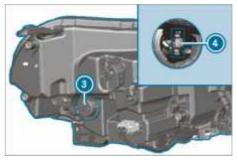
- main-beam headlamp/dipped-beam headlamp: light bulb type H7 55 W
- side lamps: light bulb type WY21/5W 21 W
- turn signal lamp: light bulb type WY21W 21 W
- the lighting system is deactivated.
- the bonnet is open (> page 207).
- ► Turn the corresponding housing cover ① or ② anti-clockwise and remove it.
- Main-beam headlamp/dipped-beam headlamp: turn the socket anti-clockwise and pull out.
- ► Turn signal lamp/side lamp: press the clips on the socket together and pull out.
- ▶ Pull the light bulb out of the socket.
- ▶ Insert the new light bulb into the socket, so that the base of the lamp is resting fully on the bottom of the socket.
- Main-beam headlamp/dipped-beam headlamp: insert the socket and turn it clockwise.
- Turn signal lamp/side lamp: insert the socket.
- Press on housing cover and turn it clockwise.

# Replacing the light bulb of the turn signal indicator (LED headlamp)

#### Requirements

- turn signal lamp: light bulb type WY21W 21 W
- the lighting system is deactivated.

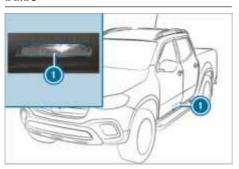




- ➤ To change a bulb set in the left headlamp, turn the steering wheel clockwise as far as it will go. To change a bulb set in the right headlamp, turn the steering wheel anticlockwise as far as it will go.

  The clearance in front of the cover in the front wheel arch then becomes greater.
- ► Remove the screws (1).
- ► Remove the screws ②.
- ► Carefully prise out the cover in the wheel arch using a suitable tool.
- ▶ Reach under the cover in the wheel arch.
- ▶ Turn cover (3) anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ▶ Pull out the socket on the holder ④.
- ▶ Pull the light bulb out of the socket.
- ▶ Insert the new light bulb into the socket, so that the base of the lamp is resting fully on the bottom of the socket.
- ► Do not touch the glass tube with your bare fingers.
- ▶ Insert the socket on the holder ④.
- ▶ Position the cover (3) and turn it clockwise.
- ► Carefully press down the cover in the wheel arch.
- ► Fasten the screws ①.
- ► Fasten the screws ②.

## Changing courtesy exit lamp light bulbs



## Requirements

- Light bulb type HT D6 3.4 W
- The lighting system is deactivated.
- 1 The courtesy light is located inside the driver's and co-driver's door.
- ▶ Open the corresponding door.
- ▶ Remove the cover (1).
- ▶ Pull the light bulb out of the socket.
- ► Insert the new light bulb into the socket, so that the base of the lamp is resting fully on the bottom of the socket.
- ▶ Insert the cover and press down firmly.

# Changing light bulbs for the interior light



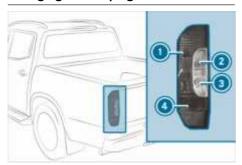


## Requirements

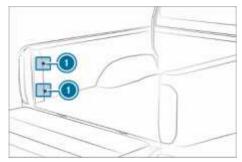
- Light bulb type 12V8WAL 8 W
- The lighting system is deactivated.
- ► Slide a suitable tool in the gap ③ between the cover ① and the switch ②. Cover the tip of the tool with a cloth in order to prevent damage.
- ► Carefully prise off the cover (1).
- ► Gently press the front holder ④ in the direction of the arrow.
- ► Pull the light bulb ⑤ out of the socket at an angle.
- ► First insert the new light bulb in the rear holder (6).
- ▶ Release the front holder (4).
- ▶ Insert the cover and press down firmly (1).

## Replacing rear light bulbs

## Changing tail lamp light bulbs



- Tail light/brake lamp (vehicles with halogen headlamps)
- 2 Turn signal lamp
- (3) Reversing lamp
- Rear foglamp (vehicles with halogen headlamps)

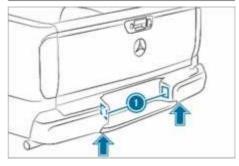


#### Requirements:

- turn signal lamp: light bulb type WY21 21 W
- reversing lamp: light bulb type W21W 21 W
- brake lamp/tail light: light bulb type P21/5W 21 W/5 W
- rear foglamp: light bulb type H21W 21 W
- the lighting system is deactivated.
- ▶ Unscrew screws (1).
- ▶ Remove the tail lamps carefully.
- ► Pull the connector off the bulb holder of the tail lamp.
- ► Turn the corresponding socket anti-clockwise and remove from the bulb holder.
- ➤ Turn the respective light bulb anti-clockwise, applying slight pressure, and pull it out of the socket.

- Insert the new light bulb into socket and turn it clockwise.
- ► Insert the socket into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise.
- Press the connector into the bulb holder of the tail lamp.
- ▶ Press the tail lamp onto the vehicle.
- ► Tighten the screws (1).

# Changing light bulbs in the licence plate lamp



#### Requirements

- Light bulb type W5W 5 W
- The lighting system is deactivated.
- ► Reach into the opening next to the licence plate lamp ① from below.
- ► Turn the socket anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ▶ Pull the light bulb out of the socket.
- ▶ Insert the new light bulb into the socket, so that the base of the lamp is resting fully on the bottom of the socket.
- ▶ Insert the socket and turn it clockwise.

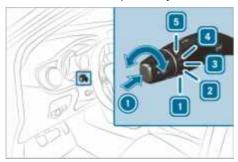
# Windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system

# Switching the front windscreen wipers on and off

■ Do not operate the windscreen wipers when the windscreen is dry, as this could damage the wiper blades. Moreover, dust that has collected on the windscreen can scratch the glass if wiping takes place when the windscreen is dry. If it is necessary to switch on the windscreen wipers in dry weather conditions, always operate them using washer fluid.

Intermittent wiping with rain sensor: due to optical influences and the windscreen becoming dirty in dry weather conditions, the windscreen wipers may be activated inadvertently. This could damage the windscreen wiper blades or scratch the windscreen.

For this reason, you should always switch off the windscreen wipers in dry weather.



- Windscreen wipers off 1
- 2 · · · Intermittent wipe, normal
- 3 ···· Intermittent wipe, frequent
- 4 Continuous wipe, slow
- 5 Continuous wipe, fast
- 1) Press briefly: single wipe (windscreen wiper in position 1)/press and hold: wiping with washer fluid

## Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



## **↑** WARNING

If the windscreen wipers begin to move while you are changing the wiper blades, you can be trapped by the wiper arm. There is a risk of injury.

Always switch off the windscreen wipers and ignition before changing the wiper blades.

Never open the bonnet if a windscreen wiper arm has been folded away from the windscreen.

Never fold a windscreen wiper arm without a wiper blade back onto the windscreen.

Hold the windscreen wiper arm firmly when you change the wiper blade. If you release the windscreen wiper arm without a wiper blade and it falls onto the windscreen, the windscreen may be damaged by the force of the impact.

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the wiper blades changed at a qualified specialist workshop.

Only touch the wiper blade on the wiper arm. Otherwise, you could damage the wiper blade.

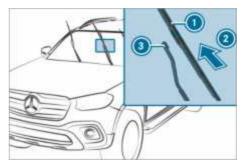
## Positioning the windscreen wiper arms vertically

- ▶ Using the combination switch, put the windscreen wiper into the slow continuous wipe position.
- ► As soon as the windscreen wiper arms are vertical to the bonnet, switch off the ignition.
- ► Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



## Removing the wiper blades

▶ Press and hold locking knob (1) and remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow (2).



## Fitting the wiper blades

▶ Push the new wiper blade (1) into the windscreen wiper arm (3) in the direction of the arrow (2) until it engages.

#### Mirrors

## Operating the exterior mirrors



#### **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle while driving if you:

- · adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or
- fasten the seat belt.

There is a risk of an accident.

Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or mirror and fasten the seat belt before starting the engine.

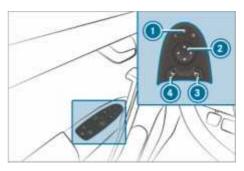
## **↑** WARNING

The exterior mirrors reduce the size of the image. Objects visible in the mirrors are closer than they appear. You could misjudge the distance from road users driving behind you when changing lanes, for instance. There is a risk of an accident.

You should therefore always look over your shoulder to determine the actual distance from road users driving behind you.

Only fold the electrical exterior mirrors in and out electrically. If you fold the exterior mirrors in and out manually you could damage the exterior mirrors or they may not engage properly.

In particular, make sure that the exterior mirrors are folded in before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash. The washing brushes could otherwise force the exterior mirrors to fold in and damage them.



## Folding the exterior mirrors in or out

- ▶ To fold in: press the ④ button.
- ▶ To fold out: press the ③ button.
- ▶ Vehicles without electrically folding exterior mirrors: push the exterior mirror into the required position manually.

#### Adjusting the exterior mirrors

- ▶ Using switch (1) select right-hand exterior mirror R or left-hand exterior mirror L.
- ▶ Using the ② button set the position of the selected exterior mirror.

## Re-engaging disengaged exterior mirrors

- ▶ Vehicles without electrically folding exterior mirrors: push the exterior mirror into the required position manually.
- ▶ Vehicles with electrically folding exterior mirrors: press and hold the (3) button. You will hear a click followed by a clunking sound. The exterior mirror will move into the correct position.

## Automatic anti-dazzle rear-view mirror



### **↑** WARNING

Electrolyte may escape if the glass in an automatic anti-dazzle mirror breaks. The electrolyte is harmful and causes irritation. It must not come into contact with your skin, eyes, respiratory organs or clothing or be swallowed. There is a risk of injury.

If you come into contact with the electrolyte, observe the following:

- Rinse off the electrolyte from your skin immediately with water.
- Immediately rinse the electrolyte out of your eyes thoroughly with clean water.
- If the electrolyte is swallowed, immediately rinse your mouth out thoroughly. Do not induce vomiting.
- If electrolyte comes into contact with your skin or hair or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
- Immediately change out of clothing which has come into contact with electrolyte.
- If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.

If the function is activated, the rear-view mirror automatically goes into anti-dazzle mode when light from headlamps falls on the rear-view mirror.

The rear-view mirror does not go into anti-dazzle mode in the following situations:

- the engine is switched off.
- reverse gear is engaged.
- the interior lighting is switched on.

The function is switched on automatically together with the ignition. You can also switch the function on or off manually.



## Switching automatic anti-dazzle mode on or off

- ► To activate: press and hold the ② button. Indicator lamp ① lights up.
- ➤ To deactivate: press and hold the ② button.
  Indicator lamp ① goes out.

## Manually setting the rear-view mirror to anti-dazzle mode



► Fold anti-dazzle lever ① forwards or backwards.

## Compass display in the rear-view mirror



Current direction of travel ① is displayed in the rear-view mirror.

► To switch the compass display on/off: briefly press the ② button.

## Calibrating the compass in the rear-view mirror



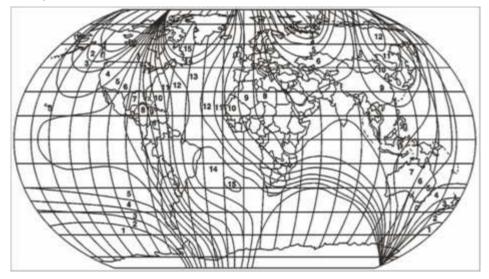
If the compass is not calibrated or is malfunctioning due to external influences, the current direction of travel is not displayed in the rear-view mirror. The display (1) then shows C.

i Large buildings, bridges, power lines or strong transmitting antennas as well as metallic objects on or in the vehicle can disrupt the compass display.

In order to calibrate the compass correctly, observe the following points:

- find a suitable place where you can drive in a full circle.
- calibrate the compass in the open and not in the vicinity of steel constructions or high-voltage transmission lines.
- switch off electrical consumers, e.g. the climate control, windscreen wipers or rear window heating.
- ► To start the compass calibration manually: press and hold the ② button for eleven seconds.
  - The display (1) shows C.
- ▶ With the vehicle, drive in three full circles at less than 8 km/h.

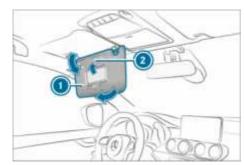
  When the calibration is completed successfully, the compass display appears in the mirror.
- The compass is automatically calibrated during a normal journey when it has detected three complete circles.



The difference between the North Magnetic Pole and the Geographic North Pole can lead to errors in the compass display. To prevent this, a zone can be set for the compass.

- ▶ To set a zone: press and hold the ② button for six seconds. The display ① shows the number of the currently set zone.
- ▶ Press the ② button repeatedly until the desired zone is set. After a few seconds, the compass display will appear.

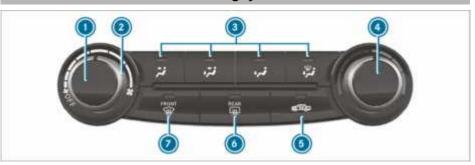
## Operating the sun visors



- ► Glare from the front: fold sun visor ① down.
- ► Glare from the side: swing sun visor ① to the side.
- ➤ Vanity mirror in the sun visor: fold mirror cover ② up.
  Mirror light lights up.

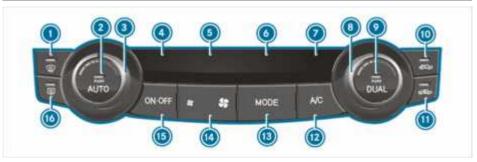
## Climate control systems

## Overview of the manual air-conditioning system



- ① Turn: switch climate control on/off Press: switch the A/C function on/off
- ② Setting the airflow
- (3) Setting the air distribution
- (4) Setting the temperature
- S Activating/deactivating air-recirculation mode
- (6) Switching the rear window heating and mirror heating on/off
- (7) Ventilating and demisting the windscreen

## Overview of the automatic air-conditioning system



- 1) Ventilating and demisting the windscreen
- 2) Switching automatic control of the climate control on/off
- 3 Setting the temperature
- 4) Temperature set on left side
- (5) Set airflow
- (6) Set air distribution
- 7 Temperature set on right side
- 8 Setting the temperature (inoperative when synchronisation is activated)
- Activating/deactivating synchronisation
- (iii) Activating fresh air mode
- (1) Activating air-recirculation mode
- (12) Switching the A/C function on/off

- (3) Setting the air distribution
- (4) Setting the airflow
- (5) Activating/deactivating climate control
- (6) Switching the rear window heating and mirror heating on/off

## Operating the climate control systems

## Switching climate control on and off

### Manual air-conditioning system

## Automatic air-conditioning system

- ► To switch on/off: press the ON/OFF button.
- 1 The windows may mist up more quickly if climate control is switched off. Only switch off climate control briefly.

## Air distribution setting

The symbols indicate through which vents the air is being directed:

Centre and side air vents

الزر Centre air vents, side air vents and footwell vents

Footwell vents نر

Demister and footwell vents

# Switching the A/C function on and off

The A/C function climatises and dehumidifies the air inside the vehicle.

- ► To switch on: press the A/C button. The indicator lamp lights up.
- ► To switch off: press the A/C button again. The indicator lamp goes out.

Only switch off the A/C function briefly. Otherwise, the windows could mist up faster.

Condensation may appear on the underside of the vehicle when in cooling mode. This is not a sign that there is a malfunction.

## Demisting the windows

- ▶ Press the Auto button.
- ▶ If the windows are still misted up, press the the button.

## Activating and deactivating air-recirculation mode

## Manual air-conditioning system

► To switch on/off: press button <a>□</a>.

The air inside the vehicle is circulated when the indicator lamp is lit.

### Automatic air-conditioning system

- ▶ To switch on: press button ��.

  The indicator lamp lights up. The air inside the vehicle is then circulated.
- ► To switch off: press button Auto.
- 1 The windows may mist up more quickly if air-recirculation mode is activated. Only activate air-recirculation mode for a short time.

# Regulating climate control automatically (automatic air-conditioning system)

In automatic mode, the set temperature is automatically regulated and kept constant by the air supply.

- ► Press the Auto button.
- ► To switch to manual mode: press the

  \$\frac{\pmathbf{f}}{2}\$ or \text{MODE} button.

## Activating/deactivating synchronisation (automatic air-conditioning system)

- ▶ To switch on: press the DUAL button. The indicator lamp goes out. The temperature setting on the left temperature control is automatically accepted for the right side. The temperate control on the right side is then inoperative.
- ► To switch off: press the DUAL button again.

The indicator lamp lights up. The temperature for the left and right side can be set separately via the left and right temperature control.

## Switching the rear window and mirror heating on/off

If the exterior mirror is heated, the mirror heating is switched on/off together with the rear window heating.

- ▶ To switch the heating on: turn the key to position 2 in the ignition lock.
- ▶ Press the WEFAR button. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- 1 The heating switches off automatically after approx. 15 minutes. The indicator lamp in the button goes out.
- ▶ To switch the heating off manually: press the wear button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes out.

# Air vents

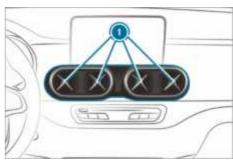
## Adjusting the air vents in the front



## **↑** WARNING

Very hot or very cold air can flow from the air vents. This could result in burns or frostbite in the immediate vicinity of the air vents. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that all vehicle occupants always maintain a sufficient distance to the air outlets. If necessary, redirect the airflow to another area of the vehicle interior.



Air vents, for example

- ▶ To open: turn the adjuster (1) anti-clockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ To close: turn the adjuster (1) clockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ To adjust the air direction: hold air vent (1) in the centre and move it up or down or to the left or right.

## Adjusting the air vents in the rear



#### ♠ WARNING

Very hot or very cold air can flow from the air vents. This could result in burns or frostbite in the immediate vicinity of the air vents. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that all vehicle occupants always maintain a sufficient distance to the air outlets. If necessary, redirect the airflow to another area of the vehicle interior.



- ► To open or close: turn control ② up or down.
- ► To adjust the air direction: hold control ① in the centre and move it up or down or to the left or right.

## **Driving**

## Start/Stop button and key positions

### **↑** WARNING

If you leave children unattended in the vehicle, they may be able to set the vehicle in motion if, for example, they:

- · release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- · start the engine

In addition, they may operate vehicle equipment and become trapped. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

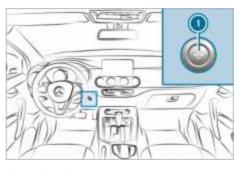
## / DANGER

Combustion engines emit poisonous exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Breathing in these exhaust gases is hazardous to health and results in poisoning. There is a risk of fatal injury. Therefore, never leave the engine running in an enclosed space without sufficient ventilation.

## **↑** WARNING

Flammable materials introduced through environmental influence or by animals can ignite if in contact with the exhaust system or parts of the engine that heat up. There is a risk of fire.

Carry out regular checks to make sure that there are no flammable foreign materials in the engine compartment or in the exhaust system.



## Start/Stop button

## Requirements:

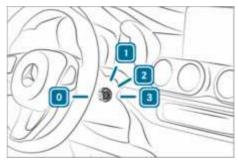
- the key is in the vehicle and the key battery is not discharged.
- ► To switch on the power supply: press button (1) once.
- ▶ To switch on the ignition: press button ①

The indicator lamps light up in the instrument cluster.

The ignition is switched off again if you do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes.

► To switch off the power supply and the **ignition:** press button (1) three times.

## Key positions



- To insert/remove the key, to lock the steering wheel
- 1 Power supply for some consumers
- **2** To switch on the ignition, power supply for all consumers and driving position
- 3 To start the engine

## Starting the vehicle

## Starting the vehicle with the Start/ Stop button



## Requirements

- The key is in the vehicle and the key battery is not discharged.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal.
- ► Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the transmission to position P or N.
- ▶ Depress the brake and press button ① once.

## Starting the vehicle with the key

- Do not depress the accelerator when starting the engine.
- ► Vehicles with manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the transmission to position P or N.
- ► Turn the key to position 2 in the ignition lock.
  - The open preglow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly.

#### Information on hill start assist

Hill Start Assist holds the vehicle when pulling away uphill under the following circumstances:

- Vehicles with manual transmission: a gear is engaged.
- Vehicles with automatic transmission:
   the transmission is in position D or R.
- The parking brake is released

## **↑** WARNING

After a while, hill start assist no longer holds the vehicle and it may roll away. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

Therefore, quickly move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. Never leave the vehicle when it is held by hill start assist.

## Running-in notes

Protect the engine during the first 1600 km by:

- driving at varying road and engine speeds.
- shifting to the next gear up when or before the rev counter needle is <sup>2</sup>/<sub>3</sub> of the way to the red area.
- avoiding stress on the vehicle such as driving at full throttle.
- after 1600 km, gradually increase the engine speed and accelerate the vehicle up to full speed.
- Vehicles with automatic transmission:
- **vehicles with OM642 engine:** driving in drive program **C** or **E**.
- not shifting manually to a lower gear to brake.
- not using kickdown.

This also applies if the engine or parts of the drive train have been renewed.

Also observe the following running-in notes:

 in certain driving and driving safety systems, the sensor system adjusts automatically while a certain distance is being driven after the vehicle has been delivered or after repairs. Full system effectiveness is not reached until the end of this teach-in procedure.

- new or exchanged brake pads/linings, brake discs and tyres only provide optimal braking and adhesion after several hundred kilometres. Compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying greater force to the brake pedal.
- do not drive with a trailer during the first 800 km.

## **Driving tips**

## **↑** WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can impede pedal travel or block a pedal which is depressed. This jeopardises safe operation of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Stow all objects in the vehicle safely, so that they cannot reach the driver's footwell. Make sure the floormats and carpets are properly secured so that they cannot slip and obstruct the pedals. Do not lay several floormats or carpets on top of one another.

#### **↑** WARNING

Unsuitable footwear can hinder correct usage of the pedals, e.g.:

- shoes with thick soles
- · shoes with high heels
- slippers

There is a risk of an accident.

Wear suitable footwear to ensure correct usage of the pedals.



### **↑** WARNING

If you switch off the ignition while driving, safety-relevant functions are only available with limitations, or not at all. This could affect, for example, the power steering and the brake boosting effect. You will require considerably more effort to steer and brake. There is a risk of an accident.

Do not switch off the ignition while driving.

## **↑** DANGER

Combustion engines emit poisonous exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Breathing in these exhaust gases is hazardous to health and results in poisoning. There is a risk of fatal injury. Therefore, never leave the engine running in an enclosed space without sufficient ventilation.

### ♠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or sufficient ventilation is not possible, poisonous exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide may enter the vehicle. This is the case, for example, if the vehicle gets stuck in snow. There is a risk of fatal injury.

If you have to leave the engine running, keep the exhaust pipe and the area around the vehicle free of snow. Open a window on the leeward side of the vehicle to ensure an adequate supply of fresh air.

## **↑** WARNING

The braking system can overheat if you leave your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This increases the braking distance and could even cause the braking system to fail. There is a risk of an accident.

Never use the brake pedal as a footrest. Do not simultaneously depress both the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal while driving.

- Depressing the brake pedal constantly results in excessive and premature wear to the brake pads.
- Warm up the engine quickly. Do not use the engine's full performance until it has reached operating temperature.

When pulling away on a slippery surface, do not allow the drive wheels to spin if possible. You could otherwise damage the drive-

If the vehicle is predominantly used for short-distance driving, this could lead to a fault in the automatic cleaning function for the diesel particle filter. As a result, fuel may accumulate in the engine oil and cause engine failure.

During automatic regeneration, extremely hot exhaust gases escape from the exhaust pipe. Maintain a distance of at least 1 metre to other objects, e.g. parked vehicles, in order to avoid damage to property.

If you mainly drive short distances, you should drive on a motorway or an inter-urban road for 20 minutes every 500 km. This facilitates the regeneration of the diesel particle filter.

Limited braking performance on salt-treated roads

- A layer of salt on the brake disks or brake pads can increase braking distances considerably.
- Maintain a greater distance to the vehicle in front.

To remove the layer of salt:

- apply the brakes from time to time, paying attention to traffic conditions.
- carefully apply the brakes at the end of a trip and after commencing a new trip.

## ECO start/stop function

## How the ECO start/stop function operates

### / WARNING

If the engine is switched off automatically and you exit the vehicle, the engine is restarted automatically. The vehicle may begin moving. There is a risk of accident and injury.

If you wish to exit the vehicle, always turn off the ignition and secure the vehicle against rolling away.

The engine is switched off automatically in the following cases:

- vehicles with manual transmission: when the vehicle is stationary, select neutral N and then release the clutch pedal.
- vehicles with automatic transmission: keep the vehicle in transmission position D or **N** and depress the brake pedal.
- All on vehicle conditions for automatic engine switch-off are met.

While the vehicle is stationary, the A symbol appears in green in the multifunction display.

The engine restarts automatically in the following cases:

- vehicles with manual transmission: depress the clutch pedal.
- vehicles with manual transmission: select reverse gear **R**.
- vehicles with automatic transmission: you leave transmission position **P**.
- vehicles with automatic transmission: you select transmission position **D** or **R**.
- you depress the accelerator pedal.
- an automatic engine start is necessary.

## Activating and deactivating the ECO start/stop function



▶ Press the <a>A</a> button. If the indicator lamp (1) in the button is lit, the ECO start/stop function is activated.

## **DYNAMIC SELECT switch**

## Function of the DYNAMIC SELECT switch

You can select the following drive programs for automatic transmission using the DYNAMIC SELECT switch.

- E (Eco): particularly economical driving
- C (Comfort): driving with optimal accelerator pedal sensitivity on a loose surface, e.g. slush or snow
- S (Sport): sporty driving
- M (Manual): manual gearshifting
- O (Off-road): driving off-road

A drive mode can be selected depending on the drive program ( $\triangleright$  page 111). For further information on all-wheel drive ( $\triangleright$  page 109) and on the differential lock ( $\triangleright$  page 112).

, , <del>,</del> ,	
Drive program	Adjustable drive mode (vehicles with permanent all- wheel drive)
E (Eco)	4MAT
C (Comfort)	4MAT 4H
S (Sport)	4MAT
M (Manual)	4MAT 4H 4L Differential lock
O (Off-road)	4H 4L Differential lock

When the ignition is switched off and switched back on again, a standard drive program is selected.

- In driving mode 4MAT and 4H: Comfort
- In driving mode 4MAT and 4L: Off-road

Depending on the drive program selected, the following vehicle characteristics will change:

- drive: engine and transmission management
- availability of the ECO start/stop function

## Operating the DYNAMIC SELECT switch

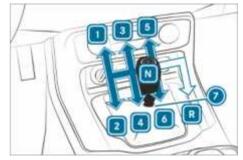


Press the DYNAMIC SELECT switch ① forwards or backwards.
The selected drive program appears in the multifunction display (▷ page 139).

### **Manual transmission**

## Using the gear lever

- Select reverse gear R only when the vehicle is stationary. You could otherwise damage the transmission.
- Mercedes-Benz recommends pulling away in 2nd gear, on level ground and in unladen condition.



- R Reverse gear
- 1 6 Forward gears
- N Neutral
- Reverse gear pull ring
- ▶ Depress the clutch pedal and move the gear lever to the desired position.

### Gearshift recommendation

The gearshift recommendation assists you in adopting a fuel-efficient driving style.



▶ If gearshift recommendation (1) appears in the multifunction display, shift up or down a gear in accordance with the gearshift recommendation.

## **Automatic transmission**

## Changing gear manually using the steering wheel gearshift paddles

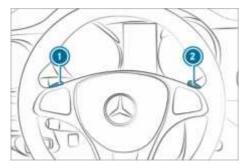


#### **↑** WARNING

If you shift down on a slippery road surface in an attempt to increase the engine's braking effect, the drive wheels could lose their grip. This increases the risk of skidding and having an accident.

Do not shift down for additional engine braking on a slippery road surface.

When the engine is switched off, coasting in neutral N can damage the power transmission and the transmission itself.



Requirement for changing gear manually:

• drive program **M** is activated (▷ page 106).

► To shift up: briefly pull the steering wheel gearshift paddle (2).

If the engine speed is sufficient, the automatic transmission shifts up to the next gear. If the maximum engine speed is reached in the currently engaged gear and you continue to accelerate, the automatic transmission will not shift up automatically. Always make sure that the engine speed does not reach the red area of the rev counter. Observe the upshift indicator in the multifunction display (> page 109). When the engine reaches its maximum speed, the fuel supply is cut to prevent the engine from overrevving.

- ► To shift down: briefly pull the steering wheel gearshift paddle (1). Provided that the engine will not exceed its maximum speed when shifting down, the automatic transmission shifts down to the next gear.
- 1 The shift range is restricted or extended when one of the steering wheel gearshift paddles is pulled in drive program E, C, S or **O** (⊳ page 108).

## Operating the selector lever



## **↑** WARNING

If you shift down on a slippery road surface in an attempt to increase the engine's braking effect, the drive wheels could lose their grip. This increases the risk of skidding and having an accident.

Do not shift down for additional engine braking on a slippery road surface.



#### **↑** WARNING

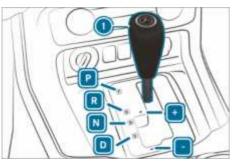
The vehicle can suddenly accelerate if the engine speed is above the engine idling speed and you then select transmission position **D** or **R**. There is a risk of an accident.

When selecting transmission position **D** or **R**, always firmly press the brake pedal; do not accelerate simultaneously.

If the engine speed is too high or the vehicle is coasting, do not shift the automatic

transmission directly from  $\boxed{\textbf{D}}$  to  $\boxed{\textbf{R}}$ , from  $\boxed{\textbf{R}}$  to  $\boxed{\textbf{D}}$  or directly to  $\boxed{\textbf{P}}$ . Otherwise, the automatic transmission may be damaged.

When the engine is switched off, coasting in neutral **N** can damage the power transmission and the transmission itself.



- P Park position with parking lock
- R Reverse gear
- N Neutral
- D Driving position
- Shift button
- + / Changing gear manually

## Vehicles with OM699 engine

- ► To switch from P to R or D: start the engine.
- ► Press button ① while simultaneously depressing the brake pedal.
- ▶ Shift the selector lever to R or D.
- ► To switch from R to P: press button 1.
- ► Shift the selector lever to P.
- ► To switch from N to R: press button 1.
- ightharpoonup Shift the selector lever to ightharpoonup.
- ► To select N or D: shift the selector lever to N or D.

## Changing gear manually

- ► To shift up manually: press the selector lever to the side and shift to +.
- ► To shift down manually: press the selector lever to the side and shift to \_\_\_\_.
- ► To end manual gear shift mode: shift the selector lever to D.

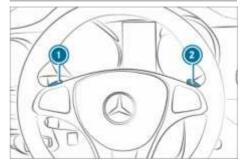


- P Park position with parking lock
- R Reverse gear
- N Neutral
- D Driving position
- 1) Shift button

## Vehicles with OM642 engine

- ► To switch from P to R or D: start the engine.
- ► Press button ① while simultaneously depressing the brake pedal.
- ► Shift the selector lever to R or D.
- ▶ To switch from R to P: press button (1).
- ► Shift the selector lever to P.
- ▶ To switch from N to R: press button ①.
- ightharpoonup Shift the selector lever to ightharpoonup.
- ► To select N or D: shift the selector lever to N or D.
- (i) Vehicles with OM642 engine: observe the information on manual gearshifting with steering wheel gearshift paddles (▷ page 107).

## Restricting the shift range



#### Requirement:

- transmission position **D** is engaged.
- one of the drive programs E, C, S or O is active (▷ page 106).
- ➤ To restrict the shift range: briefly pull the steering wheel gearshift paddle ①. The automatic transmission shifts to the next gear down, depending on the gear currently engaged. The shift range is also restricted.

The multifunction display shows the selected shift range. The automatic transmission shifts only as far as the relevant gear.

٥r

▶ Pull and hold the steering wheel gearshift paddle (1).

The automatic transmission will shift to a shift range which allows easy acceleration and deceleration. To do this, the automatic transmission shifts down one or more gears and restricts the shift range.

The multifunction display shows the selected shift range. The automatic transmission shifts only as far as the relevant gear.

The automatic transmission does not shift down if you pull the left steering wheel gearshift paddle whilst travelling at too high a speed. If the maximum engine speed for the restricted shift range is reached and you continue to depress the accelerator pedal, the automatic transmission will shift up automatically. This protects against engine overspeed.

- ➤ To extend the shift range: briefly pull the steering wheel gearshift paddle ②. The multifunction display shows the selected shift range. The automatic transmission shifts only as far as the relevant gear. The automatic transmission shifts to the next gear up, depending on the gear cur-
  - The automatic transmission shifts to the next gear up, depending on the gear currently engaged. This derestricts the shift range at the same time.
- ▶ To derestrict the shift range: pull and hold steering wheel gearshift paddle ②. The automatic transmission shifts up one or more gears depending on the gear currently engaged. At the same time, the shift range restriction is deactivated and the display shows transmission position □.

or

► Engage transmission position D again.

### Gearshift recommendation

The gearshift recommendation assists you in adopting a fuel-efficient driving style.



▶ If gearshift recommendation ① appears in the multifunction display, shift up or down a gear in accordance with the gearshift recommendation..

## Using kickdown

Vehicles with OM642 engine

► For maximum acceleration: depress the accelerator pedal.

The automatic transmission does not shift up if the shift range is restricted and the maximum engine speed of the restricted shift range has been reached (> page 108).

Vehicles with OM699 engine

For maximum acceleration: depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point.

To protect against engine overspeed, the automatic transmission shifts up to the next gear when maximum engine speed has been reached.

Vehicles with OM642 or OM699 engine

► Ease off the accelerator pedal once the desired speed is reached.

#### All-wheel drive

#### Notes on all-wheel drive

All-wheel drive ensures permanent drive for all four wheels, and together with ESP® it improves the traction of the vehicle.

If a driven wheel spins due to lack of traction:

- when pulling away, make use of the traction control integrated in ESP<sup>®</sup>. Depress the accelerator pedal as far as necessary.
- while driving, slowly take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Use winter tyres (M+S tyres), with snow chains ( $\triangleright$  page 228) if necessary, when the road conditions are wintry. This is the only way to get the full benefit from the all-wheel drive system.

Use DSR (Downhill Speed Regulation) when driving downhill off-road (⊳ page 120).

If you fail to adapt your driving style or if you are inattentive, the all-wheel drive system can neither reduce the risk of an accident nor override the laws of physics. The all-wheel drive system cannot take road, weather and traffic conditions into account. The all-wheel drive system is only an aid. You are responsible for maintaining a safe distance from the vehicle in front, for vehicle speed, for braking in good time and for staying in lane.

The following notes only apply to vehicles with OM642.

- A function or performance test should only be carried out on a twin-axle dynamometer. Before you operate the vehicle on such a dynamometer, please consult a qualified workshop. You could otherwise damage the drive train or the brake system.
- Never tow the vehicle with one axle raised. This may damage the transfer case. Damage of this sort is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz implied warranty. All wheels must remain either on the ground or be fully raised. Observe the instructions for towing the vehicle with all wheels in full contact with the ground.

You can find information on towing away under "Tow-starting and towing away" (> page 223).

#### Overview of drive modes

### Vehicles with permanent all-wheel drive

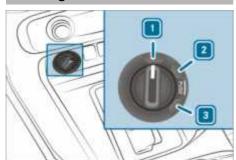
Drive mode	Function/application
4MAT	Drive mode for normal driving on firm road surfaces
4H (High Range)	Drive mode for journeys on rocky, sandy or snow-covered roads
4L (Low Range)	Drive mode for journeys, where drive with maximum power at low speeds is necessary, for example on steep slopes, on gravel or on muddy roads  If drive mode 4L is selected, ESP® is deactivated. ABS is also deactivated when the differential lock is engaged.

Drive mode	Adjustable drive program via the DYNAMIC SELECT switch (▷ page 105)
4MAT	E (Eco) C (Comfort) S (Sport) M (Manual)
4H (High Range)	M (Manual) O (Off-road)
4L (Low Range)	M (Manual) O (Off-road)

## Vehicles with engaging four-wheel drive

Drive mode	Function
2WD	Only the rear wheels are driven. Drive mode for normal driving on firm road surfaces
4H (High Range)	All-wheel drive is activated. Drive mode for journeys on rocky, sandy or snow-covered roads
4L (Low Range)	All-wheel drive is activated. Drive mode for journeys, where drive with maximum power at low speeds is necessary, for example on steep slopes, on gravel or on muddy roads If drive mode 4L is selected, ESP® is deactivated. ABS is also deactivated when the differ-
	ential lock is engaged.

## Selecting drive mode



## Permanent four-wheel drive: switching between 4MAT and 4H

#### Requirements:

 the vehicle is driving forwards and straightahead. ► Turn the switch from position 1 to position 2 or from position 2 to position 1.

During transition, the selected drive mode 4MAT or 4H flashes in the multifunction display.

If the indicator for **4MAT** or **4H** lights up constantly, the corresponding drive mode has been selected.

## Permanent four-wheel drive: switching between 4H and 4L

## Requirements:

- maximum speed when changing from position 2 to 3 when driving forwards:
   40 km/h.
- maximum speed when changing from position 2 to 3 when reversing: 2 km/h.

- · maximum speed when changing from position 3 to 2 when driving forwards: 70 km/h.
- · maximum speed when changing from position 3 to 2 when reversing: 20 km/h.
- ► Engage neutral N.
- ▶ Press the switch downwards and turn from position 2 to position 3 or from position 3 to position 2.

During transition, the selected drive mode 4H or 4L flashes in the multifunction display.

If the indicator for 4H or 4L lights up constantly, the corresponding drive mode has been selected.

▶ If the indicator for **4H** or **4L** lights up constantly, engage transmission position  $\boxed{\textbf{D}}$ .

## Permanent four-wheel drive: multifunction display indicators

4MAT

4H

4L

## **↑** WARNING

If you engage the engaging four-wheel drive when driving on a firm, high-traction surface, the steerability of the vehicle is severely impaired. You could lose control of the vehicle, especially when engaging on a bend. There is a risk of an accident.

Disengage the engaging four-wheel drive immediately when driving on a firm, hightraction surface.

Do not engage the engaging four-wheel drive if the drive wheels are spinning. Otherwise you could damage the engaging fourwheel drive.

## Engaging four-wheel drive: switching between 2WD and 4H

#### Requirements:

- · the vehicle is driving forwards and straightahead.
- switching between 2WD and 4H: the vehicle is travelling less than 100 km/h.

► Turn the switch from position 1 to position 2 or from position 2 to position 1. During transition, the selected drive mode 2WD or 4H flashes in the multifunction display.

If the indicator for 2WD or 4H lights up constantly, the corresponding drive mode has been selected.

#### Engaging four-wheel drive: switching between 4H and 4L

#### Requirements:

- the vehicle is stationary.
- neutral N is engaged.
- ▶ Press the switch downwards and turn from position 2 to position 3 or from position 3 to position 2.

During transition, the selected drive mode 4H or 4L flashes in the multifunction display.

If the indicator for 4H or 4L lights up constantly, the corresponding drive mode has been selected.

## Engaging four-wheel drive: multifunction display indicators

2WD

4H

4L

## Engaging and disengaging the differential lock

The differential lock improves the traction of the vehicle.

The vehicle has a differential lock for the rear axle. The differential lock deactivates the differential gear system of the rear axle. The differential gear system of the rear axle enables the differential compensation between the two wheels while cornering.



#### ♠ WARNING

If you engage the differential locks when driving on a firm, high-traction surface, the steerability of the vehicle is severely impaired. You could lose control of the vehicle, especially when activating on a bend. There is a risk of an accident.

Disengage the differential locks immediately on a firm, high-traction surface.

## **↑** WARNING

ABS and ESP® are deactivated when the differential lock is engaged. Because of this, the wheels can lock while braking and the braking distance is increased. There is a risk of an accident.

Disengage the differential lock immediately when driving on a firm, high-traction surface.

## **↑** WARNING

If you press the differential lock button and the requirements for engaging the differential lock are not fulfilled, ESP® is deactivated. This means that the power assistance for the vehicle stabilisation is also deactivated. There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

Reactivate ESP® by pressing the differential lock button.

- Observe the following points. The differential lock could otherwise be damaged.
  - Do not engage the differential lock if the drive wheels are spinning.
  - Only engage the differential lock when the vehicle is stationary or at walking pace.
  - Do not engage the differential lock while depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.
  - Pull away slowly after engaging the differential lock. The teeth of the differential locks could not be engaged completely.
  - Do not drive on high-grip roadways with engaged differential locks.
  - Do not drive faster than 50 km/h with the differential locks engaged.

#### Vehicles with OM642 engine:

Performance tests may only be carried out on a two-axle roller dynamometer. Otherwise, the braking system or the transfer case could be damaged. Contact a qualified specialist workshop for more information on performance tests.



## Engaging the differential lock

Requirements:

- the vehicle is stationary.
- drive mode 4L is selected.
- ► Press button ①.

  The indicator in the multifunction display flashes. Indicator lights up

continuously when the differential lock is engaged.

If the indicator does not light up, let the

vehicle roll forward slightly.

1 If you press the button 1 and the requirements for engaging the differential lock are not fulfilled, ESP® is deactivated. The ESP® warning lamp Ights up in the instrument cluster.

## Disengaging the differential lock

- ► Press button ①.

  The indicator in the multifunction display goes out.
- 1 The differential lock is automatically disengaged when you switch from drive mode 4L
  - to drive mode 4H. The indicator in the multifunction display flashes until you disengage the differential lock. The differential lock is engaged again once the conditions for engaging the differential lock are met.
- (1) ESP® remains deactivated until the button (1) is pressed again. The ESP® warning lamp [Fig. ] in the instrument cluster goes out.

## Refuelling

## Refuelling the vehicle

#### ♠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable. Improper handing of fuel creates a risk of fire and explosion.

Avoid fire, naked flames, smoking and creating sparks under all circumstances. Switch off the engine and, if applicable, the auxiliary heating before refuelling.

#### **↑** WARNING

Fuels are poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Be sure to avoid swallowing fuel or letting it come into contact with skin, eyes or clothing.

Do not breathe the fuel vapours in. Keep fuels out of the reach of children.

Keep the doors and windows closed while refuelling.

If you or others come into contact with fuel, observe the following points:

- Immediately rinse fuel off your skin with soap and water.
- If fuel comes into contact with your eyes, rinse your eyes with clean water immediately. Consult a doctor without delay.
- Consult a doctor without delay if you swallow fuel. Do not induce vomiting.
- · Immediately change out of clothing that has come into contact with fuel.

## **↑** WARNING

Electrostatic charge can cause sparks and thereby ignite fuel vapours. There is a risk of fire and explosion.

Before you open the fuel filler cap or take hold of the pump nozzle, touch the metallic vehicle body. This discharges any electrostatic charge that may have built up. Do not get into the vehicle again during the refuelling process. Otherwise, electrostatic

charge could build up again.

Do not get into the vehicle again during the refuelling process. Otherwise, electrostatic charge could build up again.

## **↑** WARNING

Vehicles with a diesel engine:

If you mix diesel fuel with petrol, the flash point of this fuel mixture is lower than that of pure diesel fuel. When the engine is running, components in the exhaust system may overheat unnoticed. There is a risk of fire.

Never refuel with petrol. Never add petrol to diesel fuel.

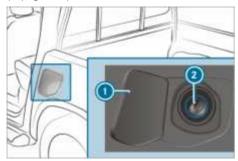
#### **Environmental note**

If fuels are handled improperly, they pose a danger to persons and the environment. Do not allow fuels to run into the sewage system, the surface waters, the ground water or into the ground.

- Using fuel that does not correspond with the quality specified can lead to increased wear and damage to the engine and exhaust system. Only use the fuel recommended. Operating the vehicle with other fuels can lead to engine failure.
- Do not use petrol to refuel vehicles with a diesel engine. Do not use diesel to refuel vehicles with a petrol engine. Even small amounts of the wrong fuel result in damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Do not switch on the ignition if you accidentally refuel with the wrong fuel. Otherwise, the fuel will enter the fuel lines. Notify a qualified specialist workshop and have the fuel tank and fuel lines drained completely.
- I Overfilling the fuel tank could damage the fuel system.
- I Take care not to spill any fuel on painted surfaces. You could otherwise damage the paintwork.
- Use a filter when adding fuel from a fuel can. The fuel lines and/or the fuel injection system could otherwise be blocked by particles from the fuel can.

The fuel filler flap is located on the left side of the vehicle.

Observe the notes on service products (> page 242).



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle (▷ page 62).
- ▶ Press fuel filler flap (1).
- ► Turn fuel filler cap ② anti-clockwise and remove.
- Completely insert the filler neck of the fuel pump nozzle into tank, hook in place and refuel.
- ► Only fill the fuel tank until the fuel pump nozzle switches off.
- Vehicles with a diesel engine: the tank is designed for refuelling at diesel filling pumps.
- (1) Vehicles with a diesel engine: if the fuel tank has been run completely dry, top up with at least 5 litres of diesel. If the vehicle is not level, the minimum amount required may be much higher.

## AdBlue® (BlueTEC vehicles only)

#### Notes on AdBlue®

AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is a liquid urea solution used for exhaust gas aftertreatment of diesel engines. AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is:

- · non-toxic
- · colourless and odourless
- non-flammable
- AdBlue<sup>®</sup> freezes at a temperature of approximately -11 °C. The vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue<sup>®</sup> preheating system at the factory. Winter operation can thus be guaranteed even at temperatures below -11 °C.

If you top up AdBlue<sup>®</sup> at temperatures below -11 °C, the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> level in the instrument cluster may not be displayed correctly. If the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is frozen, drive for at least 20 minutes and then park the vehicle for a minimum of 30 seconds, so that the level is correctly displayed.

Only use AdBlue® which meets the ISO 22241 standard.

Do not mix AdBlue<sup>®</sup> with any additives and do not dilute AdBlue<sup>®</sup> with water. Exhaust gas aftertreatment may otherwise not function correctly and its components may be damaged.

II In order to fill the AdBlue® tank, the vehicle must be parked on a level surface. The AdBlue® tank can only be filled as intended with the vehicle parked on a level surface. In this way, differences in filling quantities can be avoided.

Filling a vehicle standing on an uneven surface is not permitted. There is a danger of overfilling. The components of the exhaust gas aftertreatment system may be damaged as a result.

- Immediately rinse off surfaces which come into contact with AdBlue® when topping up or remove AdBlue® with a damp cloth and cold water. If AdBlue® has already crystallised, clean using a sponge and cold water. AdBlue® residue crystallises after a short period and contaminates the affected surfaces. Furthermore, electrical components in the vicinity may be damaged by AdBlue®.
- AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is not a fuel additive and must not be added to the fuel tank. If AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is added to the fuel tank, this can lead to engine damage.

If you open the AdBlue® tank, small amounts of ammonia vapour may be released.

Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and are particularly irritating to skin, mucous membranes and eyes. You may experience a burning sensation in your nose, throat and eyes. You may also experience coughing and watery eyes.

Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Only fill the AdBlue® tank in well-ventilated areas.

Do not swallow AdBlue® or let it come into contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children.

If you or others come into contact with AdBlue®, observe the following:

- $\bullet$  immediately rinse  $\text{AdBlue}^{\circledR}$  off your skin with soap and water.
- if AdBlue<sup>®</sup> comes into contact with your eyes, immediately rinse them thoroughly with clean water. Seek immediate medical attention.
- if AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is swallowed, immediately rinse your mouth out thoroughly. Drink plenty of water. Seek immediate medical attention.
- change immediately out of clothing that has come into contact with AdBlue<sup>®</sup>.

When filling the AdBlue® tank, completely empty refill bottles or refill canisters where possible to avoid transporting opened refill containers in the vehicle.

Additional information on AdBlue $^{\otimes}$  can be found under "Service products and capacities" ( $\triangleright$  page 245).

## Calling up the AdBlue® level display



Instrument cluster display with colour display

AdBlue<sup>®</sup> level

On-board computer:

▶ **¬** Service

► select AdBlue and confirm. The AdBlue® level appears.

## Topping up AdBlue®

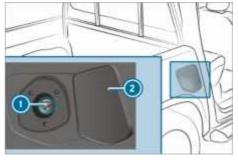
AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is available at numerous filling stations or qualified specialist workshops in

AdBlue® refill canisters or AdBlue® refill bottles. The AdBlue® tank can also be filled using the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

### Requirements:

- the following messages in the multifunction display may prompt you to refill AdBlue<sup>®</sup>:
  - Refill AdBlue See Owner's Manual the AdBlue® level has dropped to the reserve level. The AdBlue® range is approximately 2400 km.
- Vehicles with OM699 engine: Refill AdBlue No start in ... mi you will only be able to drive the vehicle the maximum distance shown. Refill AdBlue<sup>®</sup> as quickly as possible.
- Vehicles with OM699 engine: Refill AdBlue Eng. start not possible the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> tank is empty. No further engine start possible.
- Vehicles with OM642 engine: Refill AdBlue Emer. oper. in ... mi See Owner's Manual you will only be able to drive the vehicle the maximum distance shown. Refill AdBlue® as quickly as possible.
- Vehicles with OM642 engine: Emer.
   oper.: 20km/h No start in: ... mi
   See Owner's Manual the AdBlue® tank is empty. You can drive a further 50 km at a maximum speed of 20 km/h.

The AdBlue<sup>®</sup> filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle.



## Opening the AdBlue® filler cap

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle (> page 62).
- ► Press the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> filler flap ②.

- ► Fold the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> filler flap ② out.
- ► Turn the AdBlue® filler cap (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.

## Filling procedure with the AdBlue® refill canister

- ► Unscrew the cap of the AdBlue® refill canis-
- ▶ Screw the disposable hose onto the opening of the AdBlue® refill canister until handtight.
- ▶ Insert the disposable hose into the filler neck on the vehicle and refill with AdBlue®. When doing so, do not overfill the AdBlue® tank. If any AdBlue® overflows, do not continue filling the tank.
- ► Unscrew the filler hose of the AdBlue® refill canister.
- ► Reseal the AdBlue® refill canister with the
- ► Store the partially empty AdBlue® refill canister and filler hose or dispose of the empty AdBlue® refill canister and filler hose in an environmentally responsible manner.

## Filling procedure with the pump nozzle of an AdBlue® filling pump

- ▶ Insert the pump nozzle into the filler neck on the vehicle and refill with AdBlue®.
- ▶ If the pump nozzle automatically switches off during refilling, do not continue the filling procedure.

The AdBlue® tank is completely full.

# Filling procedure with an AdBlue® refill bot-

- ► Unscrew the cap of the AdBlue® refill bottle.
- ► Place the AdBlue® refill bottle on the filler neck and screw it on clockwise until handtight.
- ▶ Press the AdBlue® refill bottle towards the filler neck.
  - The AdBlue® tank is filled. This could take up to one minute.
  - If you release the AdBlue® refill bottle, the filling process stops. The AdBlue® refill bottle can be removed when it has been only partially emptied.
- ► Release the AdBlue® refill bottle.

- ► Turn the AdBlue® refill bottle anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ► Close the AdBlue® refill bottle.
- 1 Avoid keeping the AdBlue® refill bottle permanently in the vehicle.

## Closing the AdBlue® filler cap

- ► After filling the AdBlue® tank, place AdBlue® filler cap (1) on the filler neck and turn it clockwise.
- ► Turn AdBlue<sup>®</sup> filler cap (1) until it engages securely and the AdBlue® lettering is legible and horizontal.
  - The filler neck is only locked correctly when this is the case.
- ► Close the AdBlue® filler flap ②.

## **Parking**

## Parking the vehicle



#### ♠ WARNING

Flammable material such as leaves, grass or twigs may ignite if they come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system or exhaust gas flow. There is a risk of fire.

Park the vehicle so that no flammable material can come into contact with hot vehicle components. In particular, do not park on dry grassland or harvested grain fields.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you leave children unattended in the vehicle, they may be able to set the vehicle in motion if, for example, they:

- release the parking brake
- shift the automatic transmission out of park position P or shift manual transmission into neutral
- start the engine

In addition, they may operate vehicle equipment and become trapped. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

## **↑** WARNING

The automatic transmission switches to neutral position **N** when you switch off the engine. The vehicle may roll away. There is a risk of an accident.

After switching off the engine, always switch to parking position **P**. Prevent the parked vehicle from rolling away by applying the parking brake.

If the coolant temperature is very high, e.g. after driving on hilly roads, leave the engine running at idle speed for about two minutes before turning it off.

This allows the coolant temperature to return to normal.

- Always secure the vehicle correctly against rolling away. Otherwise, the vehicle or its drivetrain could be damaged.
- When the vehicle is parked, always remove the key to prevent the battery from becoming discharged.
- ► On uphill or downhill gradients, turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: select gear 1 or reverse gear R.
- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission: select transmission position P.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Vehicles with Start/Stop button: press the Start/Stop button once.
- ▶ Vehicles with an ignition lock: turn the key to position o in the ignition lock and remove it.

## Performing emergency braking

If, in exceptional cases, the service brake fails, the parking brake can be used to brake the vehicle in an emergency. The braking distance is then considerably greater.

► Pull the parking brake handle while the vehicle is in motion.

## Parking up the vehicle

If you leave the vehicle parked up for longer than four weeks, the battery may have already been, or may become damaged by heavy discharging.

▶ Disconnect the battery.

or

► Connect the battery to a trickle charger.

Make sure you observe the notes on charging the battery (> page 221).

You can obtain information about trickle chargers from a qualified specialist workshop. If you leave the vehicle parked up for longer than six weeks, it may suffer from lack of use. You can obtain information on parking up the vehicle at a qualified specialist workshop.

# Driving systems and driving safety systems

# Driving systems and your responsibility

Your vehicle is equipped with driving systems which assist you while driving, parking and manoeuvring. The driving systems are aids and do not relieve you of your responsibility. Always observe the traffic conditions and intervene when necessary. Stay within the limits of safe use.

## **Function of radar sensors**

Certain driving and driving safety systems use radar sensors and cameras to monitor the area in front, behind or next to the vehicle (depending on vehicle equipment).

The radar sensors are integrated behind the bumpers and or behind the radiator trim, depending on the vehicle equipment. Keep these components free of dirt, ice or slush. The sensors must not be covered, e.g. by cycle racks, overhanging loads or radar reflecting stickers. After a collision, have the function of the radar sensors checked at a qualified specialist workshop as damage (both visible or non-visible) may have occurred to the bumper or radiator trim. The driver assistance system may no longer work properly in such cases.

## Overview of driving systems and driving safety systems

This section contains information on the following driving systems and driving safety sys-

- ABS (Anti-lock Braking System)
- Active Brake Assist
- BAS (Brake Assist System)
- DSR (**D**ownhill **S**peed **R**egulation)
- EBD (Electronic Brake Force Distribution)
- ESP® (Electronic Stability Program)
- Cruise control
- Limiter
- PARKTRONIC
- · Reversing camera
- 360° camera
- · Lane Keeping Assist
- Traffic Sign Assist

## Function of ABS (anti-lock braking system)



#### **↑** WARNING

If ABS is faulty, the wheels could lock when braking. The steerability and braking characteristics may be severely impaired. Additionally, further driving safety systems are deactivated. There is an increased danger of skidding and accidents.

Drive on carefully. Have ABS checked immediately at a qualified specialist workshop.

ABS controls the braking pressure in critical situations:

- the wheels are prevented from blocking when braking, e.g. during full brake application or there is insufficient tyre traction
- the steerability of the vehicle is ensured when braking
- ABS functions above a speed of approximately 4 - 5 km/h.

If ABS intervenes when braking, you will feel a pulsing in the brake pedal. The pulsating brake pedal can be an indication of hazardous road conditions and functions as a reminder to take extra care while driving.

#### System limitations

If there is a malfunction and the yellow (B) ABS warning lamp lights up continuously in the instrument cluster after starting the engine, ABS may be impaired or without function.

#### **Function of Active Brake Assist**

Active Brake Assist consists of:

- · radar and camera-based distance warning
- situation-dependent braking boosting effect through Adaptive Brake Assist
- autonomous braking function

Active Brake Assist can help you to minimise the danger of collision with vehicles/pedestrians or reduce the effects of such a collision. If Active Brake Assist detects that there is a danger of collision, you will be warned audibly. If you apply the brake yourself in a critical situation or during autonomous braking, situation-dependent braking boosting effect is provided. If necessary, this increases the brake pressure up to full brake application.

The Active Brake Assist assists you if there is a danger of collision in the following speed ranges:

- for moving obstacles in the speed range of 5 km/h to 200 km/h
- for stationary obstacles in the speed range of 5 km/h to 80 km/h
- for pedestrians in the speed range of 10 km/h to 60 km/h

If you do not react to the warning tone, autonomous braking can be initiated in critical situations.

If the Active Brake Assist recognizes a danger of collision and the driver is not activated, autonomous braking with significant speed reduction is initiated:

- for speeds up to 40 km/h, autonomous braking with maximum deceleration is initi-
- for speeds above 40 km/h, autonomous partial brake application with an intensity of 0.6 g is initiated.

In particularly critical situations Active Brake Assist may directly initiate autonomous braking. In this case, the warning tone is emitted at the same time as the vehicle is braked. The warning lamp \( \begin{aligned} \alpha \] also lights up in the instrument cluster.

#### **↑** WARNING

Active Brake Assist cannot always clearly identify objects and complex traffic situations.

In these cases, Active Brake Assist may:

- warn or brake for no reason
- not issue a warning
- · not brake

There is a risk of an accident.

Always pay careful attention to the traffic situation and do not rely on Active Brake Assist alone. Be prepared to brake or manoeuvre if necessary.



### **↑** WARNING

The distance warning function does not

- to people or animals
- · to oncoming vehicles
- · to crossing traffic
- when cornering

The distance warning function may not give warnings in all critical situations. There is a risk of an accident.

Always pay careful attention to the traffic situation and be ready to brake.

Always adapt your speed to suit the prevailing road and traffic conditions.



### **↑** WARNING

Severe jolting, for example in the case of a collision, may cause the radar sensors to be misaligned. The function of Active Brake Assist is then impaired.

There is a risk of an accident.

Always pay careful attention to the traffic situation and be ready to brake.

Have Active Brake Assist checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

## Function of BAS (Brake Assist System)



### **↑** WARNING

If BAS is malfunctioning, the braking distance in an emergency braking situation is increased. There is a risk of accident.

In an emergency braking situation, depress the brake pedal with full force. ABS prevents the wheels from locking.

If BAS is malfunctioning, the 🚊 warning lamp lights up while the engine is running (▷ page 268) and the multifunction display shows a message (▷ page 252).

BAS supports you with additional braking force in an emergency braking situation.

If you depress the brake pedal quickly, BAS is activated:

- BAS automatically boosts the braking pressure of the brakes.
- BAS can shorten the braking distance.
- ABS prevents the wheels from locking.

When you release the brake pedal, the brakes function as usual again. BAS is deactivated.

## Function of DSR (Downhill Speed Regulation)



#### ♠ WARNING

If the speed driven and the target speed deviate and you activate DSR on a slippery road surface, the wheels may lose traction. There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

Take the road surface and the difference between the speed driven and the target speed into account before activating DSR.

On vehicles with all-wheel drive and OM642 engine, DSR can be activated as assistance when driving downhill off-road. The speed for DSR is not adjustable. The target speed is 5 km/h in drive mode 4L and is 8 km/h in drive mode 4MAT/4H. DSR may not always be able to keep to the target speed, depending on the road surface and tyres.

On vehicles with all-wheel drive and OM699 or M200 engine, DSR can be activated as assistance when driving downhill off-road. The speed for DSR is not adjustable. The target speed is 5 km/h in drive mode 4L and is 8 km/h in drive mode 4H. DSR may not always be able to keep to the target speed, depending on the road surface and tyres.

If you fail to adapt your driving style, DSR can neither reduce the risk of accident nor override the laws of physics. It cannot take into account road, weather or traffic conditions. DSR is only an aid. You are responsible for the safe distance to the vehicle in front, for vehicle speed, braking in good time and for staying in your lane. You are always responsible for maintaining control over your vehicle on downhill gradients.



## DSR in active/passive mode

DSR must be deactivated for operating mode 2WD, otherwise the display message noperative permanently in the multifunction display of the instrument cluster and a warning tone sounds.

If DSR is in passive mode, the display message inoperative is shown permanently in the multifunction display of the instrument cluster until the active mode is reached again or DSR is deactivated.

If the conditions of the DSR active mode have been met and the display message inoperative continues to appear in the multifunction display of the instrument cluster, there may be a defect in the DSR(>> page 255).

Vehicles with OM642 engine: DSR is activated using the button ②. DSR remains active until you exceed a speed of 25 km/h in drive mode 4L or 35 km/h in drive mode 4MAT/4H, or actively brake. DSR then switches to passive mode. When you drive again at a speed of 25 km/h or 35 km/h or below, DSR is active again.

Vehicles with OM699 or M200 engine: DSR is activated using the button ②. DSR remains active until you exceed a speed of 25 km/h in drive mode 4L or 35 km/h in drive mode 4H, or actively brake. DSR then switches to passive mode. When you drive again at a speed of 25 km/h or 35 km/h or below, DSR is active again.

#### Activating and deactivating DSR

► Press button ②.
The indicator lamp ① is lit when DSR is activated.

# Function of EBD (electronic brake force distribution)

## **↑** WARNING

If EBD is malfunctioning, the rear wheels can lock, e.g. under full braking. This increases the risk of skidding and an accident.

You should therefore adapt your driving style to the different handling characteristics. Have the brake system checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

EBD has the following functions:

- monitoring and adjusting the braking pressure distribution between the front and rear wheels
- improving driving stability when braking, especially on bends

#### PRE-SAFE

#### Introduction

The driver assistance system Active Brake Assist and Active Lane Keeping Assist initiate preventive measures to prevent accidents in certain hazardous situations.

The display message PRE-SAFE® consists of the driver assistance systems Active Brake Assist and Active Lane Keeping Assist. An independent system PRE-SAFE® is not installed in your vehicle.

## Important safety notes

Although the vehicle is fitted with a driver assistance system, an accident cannot be ruled out. Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and weather conditions and maintain a sufficient, safe distance from other road users. Drive carefully.

### **Function**

The existing driver assistance system can detect certain critical driving conditions and initiate preventive measures to avoid accidents. The following measures can be initiated independently of each other:

- When an obstacle is detected in front, you will be warned by an audible and visual warning message.
- If a danger of collision exists, the driver assistance systems initiate brake-assisting measures right up to autonomous braking(> page 119).
- When you leave the lane, you are warned by vibrations on the steering wheel. The vehicle can also be guided back into the lane by corrective brake application(▷ page 132).

## ESP® (Electronic Stability Program)

# Function of ESP® (Electronic Stability Program)

## **⚠ WARNING**

If  $\mathsf{ESP}^{\otimes}$  is malfunctioning it will not provide any vehicle stabilisation. There is an increased risk of skidding or of an accident. Exercise caution when continuing to drive. Have  $\mathsf{ESP}^{\otimes}$  checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

I Do not operate the vehicle on a roller dynamometer (e.g. for performance testing). If you have to operate the vehicle on a roller dynamometer, please consult a specialist workshop beforehand. You could otherwise damage the drivetrain or the brake system.

ESP® monitors and improves driving stability and traction especially in the following situations:

- when pulling away on wet or slippery road surfaces
- when braking
- vehicles with a trailer tow hitch: when towing a trailer from speeds of 60 km/h or above, if the vehicle/trailer combination starts to swerve

ESP® can stabilise the vehicle by performing the following actions:

- one or more wheels are braked.
- engine output is adapted depending on the situation.

ESP® is deactivated if the ESP® warning lamp

\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the instrument cluster lights up continuously:

- · driving stability is no longer improved.
- the drive wheels may start to spin.
- ETS traction control is no longer active.
- vehicles with a trailer tow hitch: vehicle/ trailer combination stabilisation is no longer active.
- 1 Even if ESP® is deactivated, ABS will still support you when braking.

If ESP® intervenes, the ESP® warning lamp

[ ] flashes in the instrument cluster:

- do not deactivate ESP® under any circumstances.
- when pulling away, only depress the accelerator pedal as far as is necessary.
- adapt your driving style to suit the prevailing road and weather conditions.

To improve traction, deactivate ESP® in the following circumstances:

- if snow chains are being used
- in deep snow
- on sand or gravel
- 1 Spinning the wheels results in a cutting action, which enhances traction.

ESP® is deactivated when driving mode 4L is set and differential lock is engaged.

The warning lamps ESP® OFF 🚡 and ABS 🍘 then light up continuously in the instrument cluster.

If the ESP® warning lamp [ ] lights up continuously, ESP® is not available due to a malfunction.

Observe the information that may be shown in the instrument cluster:

- indicator and warning lamps (> page 266)
- display message (> page 251)

### ETS (Electronic Traction System)

ETS traction control is part of ESP®. ETS traction control is also deactivated if ESP® is deactivated.

ETS may improve the traction of the vehicle by performing the following actions:

- if the driven wheels are spinning they are braked individually.
- more drive torque is transferred to the wheel or wheels with traction.

## Activating and deactivating ESP® (Electronic Stability Program)



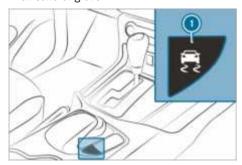
## **↑** WARNING

If you deactivate ESP®, ESP® no longer stabilises the vehicle. There is an increased risk of skidding and an accident.

Only deactivate ESP® in the situations described in the following.

To improve traction, deactivate ESP® in the following circumstances:

- if snow chains are being used
- in deep snow
- · on sand or gravel



▶ Press button (1). up continuously in the instrument cluster, ESP® is deactivated.

Observe the information on warning lamps and display messages which may be shown in the instrument cluster.

## Functions of the ESP® trailer stabilisation



#### ♠ WARNING

If road and weather conditions are poor, trailer stabilisation will not be able to prevent the vehicle/trailer combination from swerving. Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over before ESP® can detect this. There is a risk of an accident.

Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and weather conditions.

ESP® trailer stabilisation can stabilise your vehicle with trailer if it starts to swing from side to side and you apply the brakes firmly:

- ESP® trailer stabilisation is active from a speed of 60 km/h and above.
- slight swinging from side to side is reduced by a targeted and one-sided brake application.
- if severe swinging from side to side occurs, engine output is also reduced and all the wheels are braked.

ESP® trailer stabilisation may be impaired or inoperative in the following situations:

the trailer is not connected correctly.

## Cruise control and speed limiter

### Function of cruise control

Cruise control accelerates the vehicle automatically in order to maintain a previously stored speed.

If you fail to adapt your driving style, cruise control can neither reduce the risk of an accident nor override the laws of physics. It cannot take into account road, weather or traffic conditions. Cruise control is only an aid. You are responsible for the safe distance to the

vehicle in front, for vehicle speed, braking in good time and for staying in your lane.

You operate cruise control with the cruise control lever. You can select any road speed above 40 km/h.

If you accelerate to overtake, for example, the stored speed is not deleted. If you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after overtaking, cruise control will resume speed regulation back to the stored speed.

## **System limitations**

Cruise control may not be able to maintain the set speed on uphill gradients. The stored speed is resumed when the gradient evens

Cruise control does not brake on downhill gradients. Cruise control may not be able to maintain the set speed on downhill gradients.

Do not use cruise control in the following situations:

- in traffic situations where frequent speed changes are required, e.g. in heavy traffic or on winding roads
- · on icy or slippery roads Accelerating may cause the driven wheels to lose traction and the vehicle could then skid.
- if there is poor visibility

## Function of the speed limiter

The speed limiter restricts the speed of the

If you fail to adapt your driving style, the speed limiter can neither reduce the risk of an accident nor override the laws of physics. It cannot take into account road, weather or traffic conditions. The speed limiter is only an aid. You are responsible for the safe distance to the vehicle in front, for vehicle speed, braking in good time and for staying in your lane.

You can operate the variable speed limiter with the cruise control lever. You can select any road speed above 30 km/h.

#### Kickdown

The variable speed limiter switches to passive when you depress the accelerator pedal (kickdown). The Limiter passive message appears in the multifunction display.

After completion of kickdown, the variable speed limiter is activated again in the following situations:

- if the driven speed drops below the stored
- if the stored speed is called up
- if you store a new speed

## System limitations

The speed limiter does not brake on downhill gradients. The speed limiter may exceed the set speed on downhill gradients. If the set speed is exceeded by more than 10 km/h for longer than ten seconds, you will hear an audible warning and a message will appear in the multifunction display (▷ page 139).

## Operating cruise control and the variable speed limiter

#### ♠ WARNING

If you call up the stored speed and this differs from your current speed, the vehicle will accelerate. If you do not know the stored speed, the vehicle can accelerate unexpectedly. There is a risk of an accident.

Before you call up the stored speed, pay attention to traffic conditions. If you do not know the stored speed, store the desired speed again.

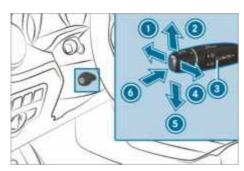
## Requirements:

cruise control

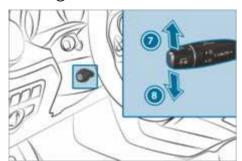
- · cruise control is selected.
- ESP® is switched on, but may not intervene.
- Vehicles with M200, OM 642 or OM699 engine: the driving speed is at least 40 km/h.

Variable speed limiter

- · the vehicle has been started.
- the variable speed limiter is selected.



- ► Switching between cruise control and variable speed limiter (6).
  - Indicator lamp ③ off: cruise control is selected.
  - Indicator lamp ③ on: variable speed limiter is selected.
- ► After starting the engine for the first time (vehicles with a petrol engine): store the current speed (5).
- ► After starting the engine for the first time (vehicles with a diesel engine): store the current speed ②, ④ or ⑤.
- ► Calling up the last speed stored ② or ④).
- ► Deactivating cruise control or variable speed limiter (1).



#### cruise control

- ▶ Briefly press lever up ⑦ or down ⑧. The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 1 km/h increments.
- ▶ Press the lever up ⑦ or down ⑧ to the pressure point or beyond. The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 1 km/h increments.
- ▶ Press the lever up ⑦ or down ⑧ beyond the pressure point and hold. The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 1 km/h increments as long as the lever is held.

#### Variable speed limiter

- ▶ Briefly press lever up ⑦ or down ⑧. The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 1 km/h increments.
- ▶ Press the lever up ⑦ or down ⑧ to the pressure point or beyond.
  The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 5 km/h increments.
- ► Press the lever up ⑦ or down ⑧ beyond the pressure point and hold. The stored speed is increased ⑦ or reduced ⑧ in 5 km/h increments as long as the lever is held.

If cruise control or the variable speed limiter is deactivated, (4) or (7) calls up the stored speed. The current speed is then stored with (8).

The last speed stored is deleted when you switch off the ignition.

Cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- you apply the brakes.
- you apply the parking brake and the mindicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.
- you are driving slower than 40 km/h.
- ESP® intervenes.
- there is a malfunction in the ESP® or ABS system.
- vehicles with manual transmission: you depress the clutch pedal for longer than six seconds while driving.
- vehicles with manual transmission: you shift to neutral and release the clutch pedal while driving.

- vehicles with manual transmission: you shift to too high a gear and as a result, the engine speed is too low.
- vehicles with automatic transmission: you shift to neutral N while driving.

The variable speed limiter is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- there is a malfunction in the ESP® or ABS system.
- The variable speed limiter switches to passive when you kickdown. After falling below the stored speed, the variable speed limiter is active again.

## **Parking Assist PARKTRONIC**

# Functions of Parking Assist PARKTRONIC

Parking Assist PARKTRONIC is an electronic parking aid with ultrasound. It monitors the area around your vehicle using four sensors on the front bumper and four sensors on the rear bumper. Parking Assist PARKTRONIC shows you the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle visually and audibly.

Parking Assist PARKTRONIC is only an aid. It is not a substitute for your attention to the immediate surroundings. You are responsible for safe manoeuvring, parking and pulling away. Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects in the manoeuvring area while manoeuvring and parking in/leaving parking spaces.

In the standard setting, an intermittent warning tone sounds from a distance of 0.5 m to the obstacle. From a distance of 0.4 m a continuous warning tone sounds.

#### System limitations

Parking Assist PARKTRONIC does not take into account the following obstacles:

- obstacles below the detection range, e.g. animals or objects
- obstacles above the detection range, e.g. overhanging loads, overhangs or loading ramps of lorries

The sensors must be free of dirt, ice and slush. Otherwise, they cannot function correctly. Clean the sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them.

Vehicles with a trailer tow hitch: once you have established an electrical connection between your vehicle and the trailer, the rear sensors must be deactivated.

If the sensors are deactivated, the Rear Parktronic - Activate with OK message appears in the multifunction display once the ignition is started.

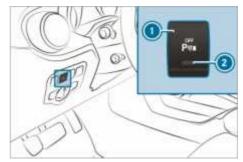
## Activating and deactivating PARKTRONIC

Pay particular attention to obstacles above or below the sensors when parking, such as flower pots or trailer towbars. PARKTRONIC does not detect such objects when they are in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle. You could damage the vehicle or objects.

PARKTRONIC can suffer interference from:

- ultrasonic sources such as a lorry's compressed-air brakes, an automatic car wash or a pneumatic drill
- attachments to the vehicle, e.g. rear mounted racks
- number plates (vehicle licence plates) that are not affixed flat against the bumper
- · dirty or icy sensors

Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects in the manoeuvring area while manoeuvring and parking in/leaving parking spaces.



- ▶ Press button ①.

  If indicator lamp ② is not lit, Parking Assist PARKTRONIC is active. If the indicator lamp ② is lit and the ﷺ symbol appears in the multifunction display, Parking Assist PARKTRONIC is not active.
- 1 Parking Assist PARKTRONIC is automatically activated when the vehicle is started.

## Switching the rear sensors on/off

On-board computer:

- ▶ **Settings** Rear Parktronic
- ► Press the OK button.

### Problems with PARKTRONIC

Problem	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Only the red segments in the PARKTRONIC warning displays are lit. In addition, a warning tone sounds for approx. two seconds.  PARKTRONIC is then deactivated.	PARKTRONIC has malfunctioned and has switched itself off.  ▶ If problems persist, have PARKTRONIC checked at a qualified specialist workshop.
The PARKTRONIC warning displays implausible distances. For example, all the segments may be lit even though there is no obstacle present.	The PARKTRONIC sensors are dirty or iced up.  ► Clean the PARKTRONIC sensors (> page 214).  ► Switch the ignition back on.
	The licence plate or other parts attached near the sensors may not be secured correctly.  ➤ Check the licence plate and attachment parts near the sensors for correct seating.
	An external source of radio or ultrasound waves may be causing interference.  ▶ Check to see if PARKTRONIC works at a different location.

## Reversing camera

## Function of the reversing camera

- Objects that are not at ground level appear further away than they actually are, for example:
  - the bumper of the vehicle parked behind
  - · the drawbar of a trailer
  - the ball coupling of a trailer tow hitch
  - the tail-end of a lorry
  - slanted posts

Only use the camera guide lines for orientation. Do not get any closer to objects than the lowest horizontal guide line. You may otherwise damage your vehicle and/or the object.

If you have activated the function in the multimedia system, the image from reversing camera is displayed in the multimedia system when reverse gear is engaged. Dynamic guide lines show the path the vehicle will take for the current steering input. This helps you to orientate yourself and to avoid obstacles when reversing.

The reversing camera is only an aid. It is not a substitute for your attention to the immediate surroundings. You are responsible for safe manoeuvring and parking. When manoeuvring and parking, make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects in the manoeuvring area.

You can select from the following views:

- · normal view
- wide-angle view
- trailer view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed as a mirror image, as in the rear-view mirror.

## System limitations

The reversing camera will not function or will only partially function in the following situations:

- if there is heavy rain, snow or fog
- if the light conditions are poor, e.g. at night
- if the camera lens is obstructed, dirty or misted up
- if the rear of the vehicle is damaged. In this case, have the camera position and setting checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

The field of vision and other functions of the reversing camera may be restricted due to special bodies or attachments on the rear of the vehicle (e.g. bicycle rack).

# Switching automatic operation of the reversing camera on and off

The reversing camera is only an aid. It is not a substitute for your attention to the immediate surroundings. You are responsible for safe manoeuvring, parking and pulling away. Make sure that no persons, animals or objects are in the manoeuvring range. Pay attention to your surroundings and be ready to brake at all times.

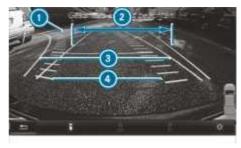
Multimedia system:

- ▶ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> Rear view camera ▶> Activation by R gear
- $\blacktriangleright$  Activate  ${\color{red} \underline{ \hspace{0.05in} \hspace{0.05in}}}$  or deactivate  ${\color{red} \square}$  the function.

## Views of the reversing camera

Observe the notes on the reversing camera ( $\triangleright$  page 127).

The following camera views are available in the multimedia system:



Normal view

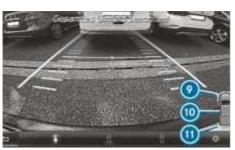
- 1 Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 4.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- ② White guide line without steering input, vehicle width including the exterior mirrors (static)
- ③ Yellow guide line for the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors, at the current steering input (dynamic)
- Yellow lane marking the course the tyres will take at the current steering input (dynamic)



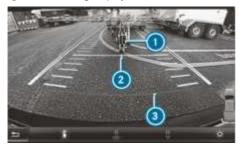
- (5) Vehicle centre axis (locating aid)
- Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 1.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the rear of the vehicle
- 8 Bumper

The guide lines are shown when the transmission is in position  $\boxed{\bf R}$  or when reverse gear is engaged.

The distance specifications only apply to objects that are at ground level.

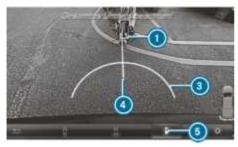


- (9) Front warning displays
- Wehicle symbol as PARKTRONIC measurement operational readiness indicator
- (1) Rear warning displays

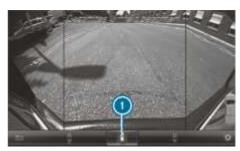


Trailer view

- Trailer drawbar
- Vehicle centre point on the yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 1.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- 3 Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the ball coupling



- (1) Trailer drawbar
- 3 Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the ball coupling
- (4) Trailer drawbar locating aid
- Symbol for the "Coupling up a trailer" function



Wide-angle view

1) Symbol for the wide-angle function

## 360° camera

### Function of the 360° camera

- Objects that are not at ground level appear further away than they actually are, for example:
  - the bumper of the vehicle parked behind
  - the drawbar of a trailer
  - the ball coupling of a trailer tow hitch
  - the tail-end of a lorry
  - · slanted posts

Only use the camera guide lines for orientation. Do not get any closer to objects than the lowest horizontal guide line. You may otherwise damage your vehicle and/or the object.

The 360° camera is a camera system that consists of four cameras. The cameras cover the immediate surroundings of the vehicle. If you have activated the function in the multimedia system, the image from the 360° camera is displayed in the multimedia system when reverse gear is selected. Dynamic guide lines show the path the vehicle will take with the steering wheel in its current position. This helps you to orientate yourself and to avoid obstacles when reversing.

The 360° camera is only an aid. It is not a substitute for your attention to the immediate surroundings. You are responsible for safe manoeuvring and parking. Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects in the manoeuvring area while manoeuvring and parking in parking spaces.

The system evaluates images from the following cameras:

- · rear view camera
- · front camera
- two side cameras on the exterior mirrors You can select from the following views:
- · top views
- · wide-angle view
- · trailer view

## **System limitations**

The 360° camera will not function or will only partially function in the following situations:

- the doors are open
- there is heavy rain, snow or fog
- light conditions are poor, e.g. at night
- the camera lens is obstructed, dirty or misted up
- the vehicle components in which the cameras are fitted are damaged. In this event, have the camera position and setting checked at a qualified specialist workshop

Do not use the 360° camera under such circumstances. You could otherwise injure others or collide with objects when parking.

On vehicles with height-adjustable suspension or when driving with a heavily laden vehicle, diverging from the standard height can, for technical reasons, result in inaccuracies in the guide lines and in the display of generated images.

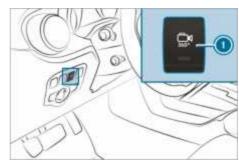
The field of vision and other functions of the camera system may be restricted due to additional accessories on the rear of the vehicle (e.g. licence plate holder or bicycle rack).

## Switching the 360° camera on and off

The 360° camera is only an aid. It is not a substitute for your attention to the immediate surroundings. You are responsible for safe manoeuvring, parking and pulling away. Make sure that no persons, animals or objects are in the manoeuvring range. Pay attention to your surroundings and be ready to brake at all times.

### Using reverse gear

- ➤ Multimedia system: → Vehicle ➤>
  System settings ➤> 360° camera ➤>
  Activation by R gear
- ► Activate ✓ or deactivate ☐ the function.



## Using the 360° camera button

▶ Press button (1).

#### Views of the 360° camera

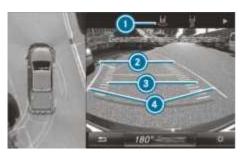
Observe the notes on the  $360^{\circ}$  camera ( $\triangleright$  page 129).

The following camera views are available in the multimedia system:



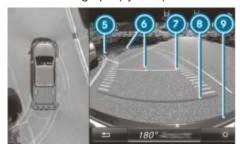


- PARKTRONIC warning displays
- ② Vehicle symbol

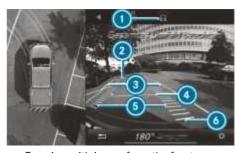


Top view with image from the reversing camera

- ① Symbol for the split-screen setting with top view and image from the reversing camera
- ② Yellow guide line for the maximum steering input
- ③ Yellow lane marking the course the tyres will take at the current steering input (dynamic)
- 4 Yellow guide line for the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors, at the current steering input (dynamic)



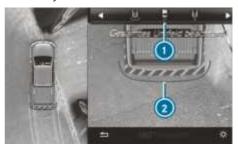
- (5) Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 4.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- (6) Vehicle centre axis (locating aid)
- Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 1.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- (8) Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the rear of the vehicle
- Bumper



Top view with image from the front camera

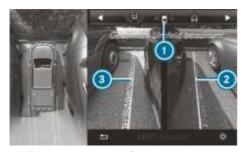
(1) Symbol for the split-screen setting with top

- Symbol for the split-screen setting with top view and image from the front camera
- Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 4.0 m from the front of the vehicle
- ③ Yellow guide line for the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors, at the current steering input (dynamic)
- Yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 1.0 m from the front of the vehicle
- Yellow lane marking the course the tyres will take at the current steering input (dynamic)
- Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the front of the vehicle



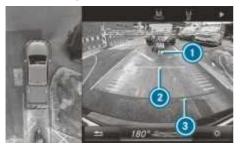
Top view and enlarged rear view

- Symbol for the split-screen setting with top view and enlarged image from the reversing camera
- ② Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the rear of the vehicle



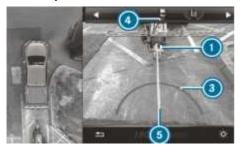
Top view with image from the side cameras

- Symbol for the setting with top view and forward view from the side cameras
- Yellow guide line for the vehicle width including the exterior mirror (right side of the vehicle)
- ③ Yellow guide line for the vehicle width including the exterior mirror (left side of the vehicle)



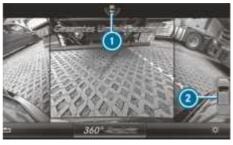
Trailer view

- 1 Trailer drawbar
- ② Locating aid vehicle centre point on the yellow guide line at a distance of approximately 1.0 m from the rear of the vehicle
- 3 Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the rear of the vehicle



- 1 Trailer drawbar
- Red guide line at a distance of approximately 0.3 m from the ball coupling

- Symbol for the "Coupling up a trailer" function
- (5) Trailer drawbar locating aid

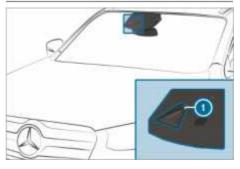


Wide-angle view

- Symbol for the full-screen setting with image from the reversing camera (rear view)
- ② Own vehicle

## **Lane Keeping Assist**

## Function of Lane Keeping Assist



Lane Keeping Assist monitors the area in front of your vehicle with multifunction camera ①. It should protect you from leaving your lane unintentionally.

Vehicles with OM699 or M200 engine: you will be warned by a pulsating vibration in the steering wheel and assisted by active steering intervention, if necessary.

Vehicles with OM642 engine: you will be warned by a pulsating vibration in the steering wheel, a warning in the instrument cluster and assisted by active braking action, if necessary.

You will be warned by a pulsating vibration in the steering wheel, if the following conditions are met:

- if Lane Keeping Assist detects lane mark-
- if a front wheel drives over a lane marking.

If you do not react to the haptic warning on the steering wheel, Lane Keeping Assist can intervene actively in the braking to guide the vehicle back into the lane. The system is active at speeds above approx. 60 km/h.

Lane Keeping Assist only intervenes when lane markings are crossed unintentionally. If you cross the lane marking deliberately or when indicating, the system does not intervene.

If you fail to adapt your driving style, Lane Keeping Assist can neither reduce the risk of accident nor override the laws of physics. It cannot take into account road, weather or traffic conditions. Lane Keeping Assist is only an aid. You are responsible for the safe distance to the vehicle in front, for vehicle speed, braking in good time and for staying in your lane.

### **System limitations**

The system may be impaired or may inoperative in the following situations:

- if there is poor visibility, e.g. due to insufficient illumination of the road, if there are highly variable shade conditions or in rain, snow, fog or spray
- if there is glare, e.g. from oncoming traffic, direct sunlight or reflections
- if the windscreen in the area of the multifunction camera is dirty, or if the camera is misted up, damaged or covered
- there are no lane markings, or several unclear lane markings for one lane are present, e.g. around construction sites
- if the lane markings are worn away, dark or covered up
- the distance to the vehicle in front is too short and thus the lane markings cannot be detected
- the lane markings change quickly, e.g. lanes branch off, cross one another or merge
- the road is narrow and winding

## Activating and deactivating Lane Keeping Assist



#### ♠ WARNING

Lane Keeping Assist cannot always clearly detect lane markings.

In such cases, Lane Keeping Assist can:

- · issue an unnecessary warning
- not issue a warning

There is a risk of an accident.

Always pay particular attention to the traffic situation and keep within the lane, especially if Lane Keeping Assist alerts you.



#### **↑** WARNING

The Lane Keeping Assist warning does not return the vehicle to the original lane. There is a risk of an accident.

Always steer, apply the brakes or accelerate the vehicle yourself, especially if Lane Keeping Assist alerts you.

### Requirements

The driving speed exceeds 60 km/h.

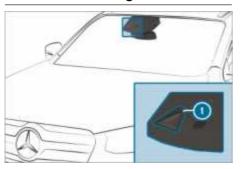


▶ Press button (1).

If indicator lamp (2) lights up, Lane Keeping Assist is activated.

## **Traffic Sign Assist**

## **Function of Traffic Sign Assist**



Traffic Sign Assist detects traffic signs with multifunction camera ① and assists you by displaying detected speed limits and overtaking restrictions in the instrument cluster. The camera also detects traffic signs with a restriction indicated by an additional sign (e.g. in wet conditions).

#### System limitations

Traffic Sign Assist is only an aid and is not always able to correctly display speed limits and overtaking restrictions. The actual traffic signs always have priority over the Traffic Sign Assist display.

The system may be impaired or may inoperative in the following situations:

- if there is poor visibility, e.g. due to insufficient illumination of the road, if there are highly variable shade conditions or in rain, snow, fog or spray
- if there is glare, e.g. from oncoming traffic, direct sunlight or reflections
- if the windscreen in the area of the multifunction camera is dirty, or if the camera is misted up, damaged or covered
- if the traffic signs are hard to detect, e.g. due to dirt or snow, or because they are covered or because of insufficient lighting
- if the information in the navigation system's digital map is incorrect or out-of-date
- if the signs are ambiguous, e.g. traffic signs on construction sites or in adjacent lanes

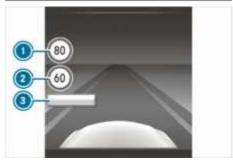
# Activating and deactivating Traffic Sign Assist

The Traffic Sign Assist message function can be switched on in the on-board computer. When you pass a traffic sign, the display shows the traffic regulations (speed limit and overtaking restriction) for 5 seconds. The previous menu then reappears automatically.

On-board computer:

- ► Settings ► Assistance ► Traffic Sign Assist
- ► Press the OK button.
  The function is activated or deactivated.

## Displays in the multifunction display

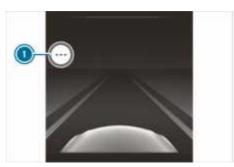


- (1) Permissible speed
- ② Permissible speed when there is a restriction
- (3) Additional sign with restriction

Vehicles with COMAND Online: Traffic Sign Assist also uses the data stored in the navigation system.

Therefore the display can be updated in the following situations without detecting traffic signs:

- the vehicle changes roads, a motorway exit or slip road, for example.
- a village or town boundary that is stored in the digital map is passed.



The (1) display appears when no traffic information is available.

#### Trailer tow hitch

## Notes on towing a trailer



## ♠ WARNING

If the maximum permissible load for a carrier system is exceeded, the carrier could come loose from the vehicle and endanger other road users. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

Never exceed the maximum permissible load when using a carrier.



## **↑** WARNING

You could lose control of the vehicle/trailer combination if it begins to swerve. The vehicle/trailer combination could even overturn. There is a risk of an accident.

On no account should you attempt to straighten out the vehicle/trailer combination by increasing speed. Decrease your speed and do not countersteer. Brake if necessary.

You can secure carrier systems such as bicycle racks or load-bearing implements to the ball coupling. The maximum payload of 75 kg applies when using carrier systems on the ball coupling.

Follow the information from the trailer coupling manufacturer when using a detachable trailer coupling (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

Couple and decouple the trailer carefully. When reversing the towing vehicle towards the trailer, make sure there is nobody between the trailer and the vehicle.

A trailer which is incorrectly coupled to the towing vehicle could break away. A correctly coupled trailer must be positioned horizontally behind the towing vehicle.

The following values may not be exceeded:

- permissible noseweight
- permissible trailer load
- permissible rear axle load of the towing
- · maximum gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle
- · maximum gross vehicle weight of the trailer
- · maximum gross vehicle weight of car/trailer combination
- maximum permissible speed of the trailer The applicable permissible values that may not be exceeded can be found:
- · in your vehicle documents
- on the identification plate for the trailer tow hitch
- on the identification plate for the trailer
- on the vehicle identification plate (⊳ page 240)

Where the values differ, the lowest is valid. You will find the values approved by the manufacturer on the vehicle identification plates and those for the towing vehicle in the "Technical data" section (▷ page 249).

Make sure of the following before pulling awav:

- the tyre pressure on the rear axle of the towing vehicle is set to maximum load.
- the headlamps are set correctly.

When towing a trailer, your vehicle's handling characteristics will be different in comparison to when driving without a trailer.

Bear the following in mind:

- the car/trailer combination is heavier.
- the car/trailer combination is restricted in its acceleration and climbing ability.
- the car/trailer combination has an increased braking distance.
- the car/trailer combination is more susceptible to crosswind gusts.

- the car/trailer combination requires more sensitive steering.
- the car/trailer combination has a larger turning circle.

This may impair the handling characteristics. When towing a trailer, always adjust your speed to suit the road and weather conditions. Drive carefully. Maintain a safe distance.

Use a drawbar noseweight that is as close as possible to the maximum permissible noseweight. Do not fall below a noseweight of 50 kg, otherwise the trailer may come loose.

Observe the following notes:

- do not exceed the legally maximum permissible speed for car/trailer combinations in the relevant country. Before beginning the journey, check the trailer's documents for the maximum permissible speed of your trailer. In Germany, the maximum permissible speed is 80 km/h (100 km/h in exceptional cases).
- the trailer tow hitch is one of the most important components on the vehicle with regard to road safety. Observe the notes on operation, care and maintenance of the trailer tow hitch (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).
- vehicles with a detachable trailer coupling: reduce the risk of damage to the ball coupling. If you do not require the ball coupling, remove it from the ball coupling recess.

You can obtain information on the installation of trailer electrics at any qualified specialist workshop.

The height of the ball neck changes with the load of the vehicle. If this is case, use a trailer with a height-adjustable trailer drawbar.

## Installing and removing the ball coupling



## **⚠ WARNING**

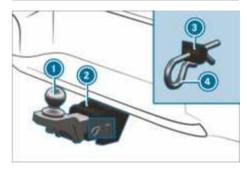
If the ball coupling is not properly engaged, it could come loose and endanger other road users. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

Engage the ball coupling as described, making sure that it is securely attached.

#### ♠ WARNING

If the ball coupling is not engaged, the trailer could become detached. There is a risk of an accident.

Always engage the ball coupling as described and make sure that it is securely attached.



- ▶ Slide the ball coupling (1) into the mounting (2) as far as it will go.
- ▶ Slide the bolt ③ into the hole such that the holes in the bolt are visible on both sides.
- ▶ Slide the securing split pin (4) into the holes on both sides as far as it will go.

## Coupling/decoupling a trailer

The eyelet on the ball coupling is intended solely for the attachment of a trailer breakaway cable. Do not attach towing cables, towing bars or similar items to the eyelet. The eyelet is not designed for such loads and may become detached.

Trailers with a 7-pin connector can be connected to the vehicle using:

- an adapter plug
- · or an adapter cable

#### Coupling up a trailer

- ▶ Remove the protective cap from the ball coupling and store it in a safe place.
- ▶ Position the trailer on a level surface behind the vehicle and couple up.



- ▶ Open the socket cover.
- ▶ Insert the connector with lug (1) into groove (3) on the socket.
- ▶ Turn bayonet connection (2) clockwise to the stop.
- ► Let the cover engage.
- ▶ Secure the cable to the trailer using cable ties (only when using an adapter cable).
- ▶ Ensure the cable has freedom of movement when cornering.
- ► Check the lighting system of the trailer. Push the combination switch up and down and check whether the corresponding turn signal indicator on the trailer is flashing.

## Decoupling a trailer



#### **↑** WARNING

If you uncouple a trailer with an engaged overrun brake, you could trap your hand between the vehicle and the trailer drawbar. This poses a risk of injury.

Do not uncouple a trailer with an engaged overrun brake.

- Do not disconnect a trailer with an engaged overrun brake. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged by the rebounding of the overrun brake.
- ► Secure the trailer against rolling away.
- ▶ Disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer.
- ▶ Uncouple the trailer.
- ▶ Place the protective cap on the ball coupling.

## Instrument display overview

### **↑** WARNING

If the instrument cluster has failed or malfunctioned, you may not recognise function restrictions relevant to safety. The operating safety of your vehicle may be impaired. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive on carefully. Have the vehicle checked at a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

If the operating safety of your vehicle is impaired, stop the vehicle as soon as possible, paying attention to road and traffic conditions. Consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Do not drive in the overrevving range. Doing so will damage the engine.

#### **Environmental note**

Avoid excessive engine speeds. This unnecessarily increases the fuel consumption of your vehicle and harms the environment as a result of increased emissions.



- (1) Speedometer (speed display)
- (2) Multifunction display
- (3) Rev counter
- (4) Coolant temperature gauge
- (5) Fuel level and fuel filler flap location indicator

The symbols in the multifunction display (2) display the status of the cruise control (▷ page 123) and the speed limiter

(⊳ page 124).

To protect the engine, the fuel supply is interrupted when the red band is reached in rev counter (3) (overrevving range).

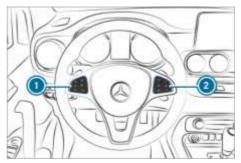
Under normal operating conditions coolant temperature gauge (4) may rise to 120 °C.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you open the bonnet while the engine is overheating or while there is a fire in the engine compartment, you could come into contact with hot gases or other leaking service products. There is a danger of injury. Allow an overheating engine to cool down before opening the bonnet. If there is a fire in the engine compartment, leave the bonnet closed and notify the fire brigade.

### Overview of steering-wheel buttons



(1) Button group:

合 Calls up the main menu

▲ | ▼ | Selects a menu or submenu or scrolls through lists

OK Confirms a selection

ৰ্ণা Switches off LINGUATRONIC or voice control

(2) Button group:

Rejects or ends a call

Makes or accepts a call

+ Increases the volume

Reduces the volume

Switches sound off or on

3m Switches on LINGUATRONIC or voice control

## Operating the on-board computer

## **↑** WARNING

If you operate information and communication equipment integrated in the vehicle when driving, you could be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only operate this equipment when the traffic situation permits. If you cannot be sure of this, stop the vehicle paying attention to road and traffic conditions and operate the equipment with the vehicle stationary.

Observe the legal requirements of the country in which you are currently driving.

1 The on-board computer displays appear on the multifunction display (⊳ page 139).

The on-board computer is operated using the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons, the ★ back button, the hot button and the OK button on the steering wheel.

The following menus are available in the instrument display:

- Trip
- Radio
- Media
- Telephone
- Assistance graphic
- Service
- Settings
- ▶ To call up the main menu: press the 🏠
- ▶ To call up the menu or confirm a selection: press the OK button.
- ▶ To scroll through displays or lists in the menu: press the ▲ or ▼ button.
- ▶ To exit the submenu: press the 🛨 button.

## Displays in the multifunction display



- (1) Drive program
- (2) Transmission position
- 3 Status area
- (4) Display panel
- (5) Clock
- (6) Outside temperature
  - (7) Additional speedometer (secondary speed display)

Further displays in the multifunction display:

Gearshift recommendation, for manual transmission or automatic transmission

A door is not fully closed

**PARKTRONIC** P₩■ (63) Cruise control

Speed limiter LIM

DSR DSR

(A) ECO start/stop function

120 km/h! Maximum permissible speed exceeded (only certain countries)

Differential lock

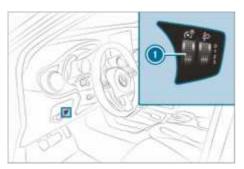
Current driving mode

TCO Digital tachograph If the indicator **TCO** lights up in

the status area (3) of the multifunction display, the driving time is exceeded, for example, or the driver card is missing. If an additional message appears in the display panel ④, the tachograph may be malfunctioning (> page 264).

Possible causes of the display or message can be found on the display of the digital tachograph and in the manufacturer's operating instructions.

# Adjusting the instrument cluster lighting



► Turn brightness control knob ① up or down.

The lighting in the instrument display is set.

#### Menus and submenus

## Calling up functions in the Service menu

On-board computer:

- ▶ **¬** Service
- ► Press the OK button.

Menu functions:

- message memory (▷ page 251)
- AdBlue:
  - display AdBlue<sup>®</sup> filling capacity (> page 116)

- Tyre pressure:
  - checking the tyre pressure electronically
  - restarting the tyre pressure monitor
     (▷ page 231)
- ASSYST PLUS: calling up the service due date (▷ page 207)

# Calling up the Assistance graphic display

On-board computer:

▶ **¬** Assistance graphic

The following displays are available in the menu:

- Traffic Sign Assist (⊳ page 134)
- Lane Keeping Assist (⊳ page 132)

# Calling up the display in the Trip menu

On-board computer:

- ▶ **¬**→ Trip
- ► Press the OK button.

The following displays are available in the menu:

- · standard display
- range and current fuel consumption
   With certain engines a recuperation display is also shown. If there is only a small amount of fuel left in the fuel tank, the display shows a vehicle being refuelled instead of the approximate range.
- trip computer From start and From reset
- · digital speedometer



Example: standard display

- 1) Trip meter
- (2) Total distance recorder



Example: trip computer

- (1) Total distance recorder
- (2) Driving time
- 3 Average speed
- (4) Average fuel consumption

## Resetting the values in the trip menu

On-board computer:

- ▶ **¬→** Trip
- ▶ Press the OK button.

You can reset the values of the following functions:

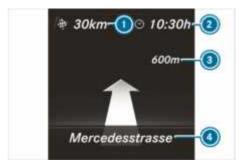
- · trip meter
- trip computer From start and From reset
- Digital speedometer
- ► To select the function to be reset: press the ▼ or ▲ button.
- ► Press the OK button.

- ► Select Yes.
- ► Press the OK button.

## Calling up navigation instructions

On-board computer:

▶ **¬**Navi



Example: no change of direction announced

- 1) Distance to the next destination
- (2) Estimated arrival time
- (3) Distance to the next change of direction
- (4) Current street



Example: change of direction announced

- Road to which the change of direction leads
- 2 Distance to the change of direction
- (3) Change-of-direction symbol
- (4) Recommended lane and new lane during a change of direction (white)
- Possible lane
- (6) Lane not recommended (dark grey)

Possible additional displays in the menu:

- direction of travel: direction of travel display and the road currently being travelled on.
- New route... or Calculating route...: a new route is calculated.
- Road not mapped: the road is not recognised, e.g. new roads.
- No route: no route can be calculated to the selected destination.
- 🗵 : you have reached the destination or an intermediate destination.

## Selecting a radio station

On-board computer:





- (1) Waveband
- ② Station
- (3) Name of artist
- (4) Name of track

If you select a station in the station memory, the preset position is displayed along with the station name.

- ► To select a radio station: press the or button briefly.
- ► To select the waveband or station memory: press the OK button briefly.
- ▶ Press the ▼ or ▲ button.
- ► Press the OK button.

## Operating media playback

On-board computer:

▶ **¬**→Media



- (1) Media source
- 2 Current track and track number
- (3) Name of artist
- 4 Name of album
- (5) Folder name
- ➤ To switch to a track in the active media source: press the ▼ or ▲ button briefly.

### Changing the media source

- ▶ Briefly press the OK button.
- ▶ Press the ▼ or ▲ button.
- ► Press the OK button.

## Dialling a phone number

Requirements

 A mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system.

## **↑** WARNING

If you operate information and communication equipment integrated in the vehicle when driving, you could be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only operate this equipment when the traffic situation permits. If you cannot be sure of this, stop the vehicle paying attention to road and traffic conditions and operate the equipment with the vehicle stationary.

Observe the legal requirements of the country in which you are currently driving.

On-board computer:

► Telephone

The menu Telephone displays the last phone connections (dialled, received and missed calls).

- ► To select a phone number: press the or button.
- ► Press the or OK button. The phone number is selected.

### Overview and operation

### Overview of the multimedia system



- Media display
- ② COMAND Online: single DVD drive, Audio 20: Single-CD drive
- 3 The NAVI, RADIO, MEDIA, TEL, Duttons, call up main functions
- 4 Volume control knob: sets the volume and switches the sound on/off
- (5) The (b) button: switches the multimedia system on/off
- Touchpad
- (7) Controller

# Notes on the media display

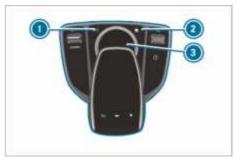
Avoid any direct contact with the display surface. Pressure on the display surface may result in impairments to the display, which could be irreversible.

Observe the notes on care for the interior ( $\triangleright$  page 215).

**Automatic temperature-control switch-off:** if the temperature is too high, the brightness is subsequently reduced. The media display may then switch off completely for a while.

 Wearing polarised sunglasses may impair your ability to read the display.

### Operating the controller



- ① The \_\_\_\_ button: returns to the previous display (press briefly), calls up basic menu (press and hold)
- ② The ★ button: calls up favourites
- ③ Controller

Controller operating options:

- ▶ turn clockwise or anti-clockwise (○).
- ▶ slide left or right ◆○→.
- ▶ slide forwards or backwards †⊙↓.
- ▶ slide diagonally .
- ▶ briefly press or hold ⑤.

### Touchpad

# Switching the touchpad on and off

Multimedia system:

- ► Switch Activate touchpad on ✓ or off □.

#### Operating the touchpad



- ① Touchpad
- (2) The  $\bigstar$  button: calls up favourites
- (3) The button: calls up the audio menu
- 4) The button: calls up favourites
- ► To select the menu item: swipe up, down, to the left or right.
- ▶ Press touchpad (1).
- ▶ To open or close a list: swipe left or right.
- ► To move the digital map: swipe in all directions.

# Handwriting recognition: switching the read-aloud function on and off

Multimedia system:

- ► ► Vehicle ►> System settings ►>
  Touchpad
- ► Switch Read out handwriting recognition on 🗹 or off [].

# Handwriting recognition: selecting an input language

- ▶ Press the touchpad during character entry.
- ► Select N.
- ▶ Select the input language.

#### Calling up main functions



- ▶ (1) the NAVI button, to call up navigation
- ▶ ② the RADIO button, to call up the radio
- ▶ ③ the MEDIA button, to call up a media source
- ► ④ the TEL button, to call up telephone mode
- ▶ (5) the □ button, to call up vehicle and system settings

### Switching the sound on and off

Push the volume control knob next to the controller.

or

- ▶ Press the 🐧 button on the steering wheel.
  - When the sound is switched off, you will see the \text{1} symbol in the status bar.
- i If you change the media source or change the volume, the sound is automatically switched on.
- Even if the sound is switched off, you will still hear traffic and navigation system announcements.

# Switching traffic announcements and navigation messages on and off

- ➤ To switch off traffic announcements: press and hold the volume control next to the controller until the TA display in the status bar of the media display goes out. A confirmation tone sounds.
- ► To switch on traffic announcements once more: press and hold the volume con-

trol until the **TA** display in the status bar of the media display appears. A confirmation tone sounds.

#### Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume control knob next to the controller.

The volume of the current radio or media source is set. The volumes of other audio sources can be set separately.

They can be adjusted for the following situations:

- · during traffic announcements
- during navigation announcements
   The volume of navigation announcements varies depending on the volume of the current media source.
- · during telephone calls

#### **Character entry**

#### Using character entry

The following functions are available:

- selecting a character in the character bar
- writing a character on the touchpad

Character entry can be started with one control element and continued with another.

► On the touchpad and controller: select characters in the character bar.

The following are available depending on the purpose of entry:

- · The full character set
- Characters that are relevant as input progresses

Other characters are greyed out.

► On the touchpad: select a character in the character bar.

or

Write characters on the touch-sensitive surface of the touchpad. The handwriting recognition function offers support with character suggestions and a read-aloud function.

Examples for character entry:

- Searching for tracks or artists via keyword search
- Connecting a mobile phone to the multimedia system by entering the passkey
- · Entering the telephone number
- Entering a web address

# Entering characters using the character bar

- ➤ To enter a character: turn and slide ○↓ or • and press the controller. The character selected is used in the corresponding entry field.
- ➤ To delete a character: switch to the lower line in the character bar by sliding ○↓ the controller.
- ► Select x by turning and pressing the controller.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ➤ To delete an entire entry: slide (○)‡, and turn the controller; then after selecting (x) press and hold down the controller until the entire entry is deleted.
- ► To select an input line: switch to the lower line in the character bar by sliding ○↓ the controller.
- ► Select or by turning and pressing the controller.

or

- ► Slide † the controller repeatedly until the character bar disappears.
- ▶ Turn and press the controller.
- ▶ To move the cursor: select an input line.
- ► Slide ①↓ and turn the controller, then press it after selecting ← or →.
- ➤ To change the language of the character bar: slide ⊙↓, turn the controller, and then press it after selecting ▶▶.

  The available languages are displayed.
- Select a language. The character set for the selected language is set.
- ► To switch to keyword search (navigation): slide ⊚↓, turn the controller, and then press it after selecting .

► To confirm an entry (navigation): slide ○↓, turn the controller, and then press it after selecting ok .

▶ Slide †⊚ the controller repeatedly until the character bar disappears. The town selection list appears. The selec-

#### Deletes a character or an entry

ted entry is highlighted.

- ► To delete characters: select <a>x</a>.
- ► To delete an entry: press and hold <a> x</a> until the entire entry is deleted.

#### Confirming an entry

► Select ok .

The symbols in the character bar mean the following:

• • • Switches between digits and symbols

Switches the character bar to upper-ABC case or lower-case letters

Changes the character bar language **(X**)

Deletes a character or an entry

Switches to keyword search 7

Selects the input line **1**, 4

←, Moves the cursor within the input line →

Confirming an entry ok Cancels entry U

Inserts a new step 4

# Entering characters on the touchpad



- 1) Active input line
- 2 To enter a space
- 3 Illustration of the touch-sensitive surface
- (4) To delete characters

▶ To enter a character: use one finger to write characters on surface (3).

The character is entered in input line (1). If the character that you have entered can be interpreted in different ways, these options are displayed.

- ▶ To select a character suggestion: swipe up or down on the touchpad.
- ▶ Press the touchpad.
- ► Continue character entry.
- ▶ To delete characters: swipe to the left if an input line is selected.
- ▶ To confirm the entry: press the touchpad.

#### Further selection options for character entry



- 1) To exit the menu
- (2) To return to handwriting recognition
- (3) To use the phone book or text templates (COMAND Online ONLY)
- 4 To change the input line or position of the cursor
- (5) To change the input language
- (6) To end the character entry

#### System settings

# Configuring the display settings

Multimedia system:

▶ ¬→ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> Display

#### Display brightness

- ► Select Brightness.
- ► Select brightness value.

#### Display design

- ► Select Day design, Night design or Automatic.
  - The dot indicates the current setting.

#### Switching the display off/on

- ➤ To switch off the display: select Display off.
- ➤ To switch on the display: press the controller.

# Additional COMAND Online display area

Multimedia system:

▶ T→ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> Additional display area

The following settings are available:

- · Time and date
- Entertainment information
- Navigation information
- Data connection information
- Off-road information
- No information

#### Time and date

# Automatically setting the date and time

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **T**→ Vehicle **>>** Time
- ► Switch Automatic time settings on or off.

# Setting the time zone

Requirements

• The Automatic time settings function is switched on.

Multimedia system:

- ► Time >> Time >> Time zone:
  A list of countries is displayed.
- Select the country. Time zones will be displayed based on the country.
- ▶ Select the time zone.

#### Selecting summer time

Multimedia system:

- ➤ Vehicle ➤ Time ➤ Summer Time
  A list appears with the options available to set summer time.
- ► Select Automatic, On or Off.

### Setting the time and date format

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Vehicle **>>** Time **>>** Format
- ▶ Set the date and time format.

### Setting the time manually

Multimedia system:

- ➤ Time >> Set time manually
- ▶ Set the hour.
- Select the minutes.
- ▶ Set the minutes.
- ► The Automatic time settingsfunction is deactivated □.

If Automatic is set for the summer time change, a prompt will appear again asking whether you want this setting to be maintained.

# Text reader settings

Multimedia system:

- ▶ ¬►► Vehicle ►► System settings ►► Text reader speed
- ► A list appears.
- ► Select Fast, Medium or Slow.

#### Bluetooth®

# Bluetooth® settings

Bluetooth® technology is a method for short-range wireless data transmissions up to approximately 10 m. For example, a mobile phone can be connected to the multimedia system via Bluetooth® and use the following functions:

- · Hands-free system
- Internet connection
- · Listening to music via Bluetooth®
- Transferring vCards to the vehicle

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth Special Interest Group (SIG) Inc.

1 Internet connection via Bluetooth® is not available in all countries.

### Switching Bluetooth® on and off

Multimedia system:

- ▶ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> Activate Bluetooth
- ▶ Switch Bluetooth® on 🗹 or off □.

#### Wi-Fi

#### Wi-Fi connection overview

The following Wi-Fi settings are available for vehicles with COMAND Online.

Wi-Fi can be used to establish a connection to a Wi-Fi network and to access the Internet or other network devices.

The following connection options are available:

- Wi-Fi connection
  - The Wi-Fi connection is established to a Wi-Fi-enabled device, e.g. the customer's mobile phone or a tablet PC.
- The multimedia system as a Wi-Fi hotspot
   This can be used to connect a tablet PC or notebook, for example.

Use the following methods to establish a connection:

- WPS PIN
  - Connect to a secure Wi-Fi network using a PIN.
- WPS PBC
  - Connect to a secure Wi-Fi network with the press of a button.
- Security key
   Connect to a secure Wi-Fi network with a security key.

#### Setting Wi-Fi

Multimedia system:

- ► ► Vehicle ►> System settings ►> WiFi
- ► Select Activate on ✓ or off □.

  If WiFi is switched off □, Wi-Fi communication to all devices is interrupted. Functions such as dynamic route guidance with Live Traffic Information will not be available.

### Connecting a device via WPS PIN

#### Requirements

 For this type of connection, the device to be connected must support "Connect via WPS PIN".

#### Multimedia system:

- ▶ T→ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> WiFi
- ► Select Connect via WPS PIN.
- Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi and "Connect via WPS PIN" on the device to be connected. The vehicle's Wi-Fi is displayed with the SSID MB WLAN XXXXX.

The device to be connected generates a PIN.

▶ Enter this PIN in the multimedia system.

# Connecting a device via pushbutton

#### Requirements

 For this type of connection, the device to be connected must support "Connect via pushbutton".

Multimedia system:

- ▶ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> WiFi
- ▶ Select Connect via WPS PBC.
- ➤ Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi and Connect via WPS PBC on the device to be connected. The vehicle's Wi-Fi is displayed with the SSID MB WLAN XXXXX.
- ► Select Continue on the multimedia system.

### Connecting a device via security key

#### Requirements

 For this type of connection, the device to be connected must support "Connect via push button".

#### Multimedia system:

- ▶ T→ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> WiFi
- ► Select Connect using security key.
- ► Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi on the device to be connected. The vehicle's Wi-Fi is displayed with the SSID MB WLAN XXXXX.
- ► Enter the security key that appears on the multimedia system display into the device to be connected.
- ► Confirm the entry.

#### Generating a new security key

#### Requirements

 For this type of connection, the device to be connected must support "Connect via push button".

#### Multimedia system:

- ► Select Generate security key.
- ▶ Select Generate new.
  A new security key is generated.
- ► To save the security key: select Save.

  The Wi-Fi menu appears. The new security key will now be displayed and verified when a connection is established via the security key. The connection must be re-established using the newly generated security key.
- 1 The connections between devices that were established using the previous security key no longer work after the security key is changed. The devices must be connected again (> page 149).

# Changing the name of the SSID

#### Multimedia system:

- ▶ ¬►► Vehicle ►► System settings ►► WiFi
- ➤ Select Change SSID.

  A dialogue appears to enter the SSID.

- ▶ Enter a new SSID.
- ► Select oκ.

The vehicle will be shown with the new SSID both on the device to be connected and in the Connect using security key menu.

1 The connections between devices that were established using the previous SSID no longer work after the SSID is changed. The devices must be connected again (⊳ page 149).

### System language

### Notes on the system language

This function can be used to set the language for the menu displays and the navigation messages. The selected language affects the characters available for entry. Navigation messages are not supported in all languages. If a language is not supported, you hear the navigation messages in English.

#### Setting the system language

Multimedia system:

- ▶ T→ Vehicle ▶> System settings ▶> Language
- ▶ Set the language.
- i If you use Arabic map data, you can have the text information on the navigation map appear in Arabic script. To do so, select Arabic from the language list. The navigation messages are then also in Arabic.

# Data import and data export

# Function of data import and export

The following functions are possible:

- Transferring data from one system or vehicle to another system or vehicle
- Creating and reloading a backup copy of your personal data
- Protecting your personal data from unwanted export with PIN protection

You can either use an SD card or a USB storage device as temporary storage.

#### Importing/exporting data

When writing data onto the USB stick or the memory card, it is important not to remove the stick or the card. Otherwise, data loss may occur.

#### Requirements:

- the vehicle is stationary.
- the ignition is switched on or the vehicle is started.
- the SD card is inserted (> page 190) or the USB device is connected (> page 190).

#### Multimedia system:

- ▶ TIMES Vehicle >> System settings >> Import/export data
- ▶ select Import data or Export data.
- ▶ To import: select the data carrier.

  A prompt appears asking if you really wish to overwrite the current data. If the data comes from another vehicle, this will be detected while reading. Once the data is imported, the multimedia system is restarted.
- 1 Current vehicle settings could be changed after importing.
- ► To export: if the PIN protection is switched on, a PIN query appears.
- ► Enter a four-digit PIN.
- Select the data carrier. Data will be exported. The export of data can take several minutes.

# Switching PIN protection for data export on and off

Multimedia system:

¬→ Vehicle → System settings → Import/export data

- ► To switch on: switch Activate PIN protection on <a>
  ✓</a>.
- ▶ enter a four-digit PIN.
- re-enter the four-digit PIN. If both PINs match, PIN protection is switched on.
- ► To switch off: switch Activate PIN protection off □.
- ▶ enter the four-digit PIN.
- i If you forget your PIN, you can have PIN protection deactivated at a Mercedes-Benz

Service Centre. Alternatively, switch off PIN protection by resetting your personal data.

### Software update

#### Information on software updates

The following sources are available for updating navigation maps:

Update source	Update type
Internet	Navigation maps
External storage medium, e.g. USB stick	Navigation maps

#### Carrying out a software update

#### ► To load a data medium:

- insert the SD memory card
- connect the USB data medium

The multimedia system checks the data medium and shows a corresponding message in the display.

If the map software matches the navigation system and the current system software, the multimedia system checks whether the map data on the data medium is already installed.

#### Map data is not installed yet

In the display, you will see a comparison of the version statuses of the map software data medium and the map software installed on the multimedia system. You can then update the map software.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Navi
- ▶ Select Update or Cancel.

If you select Update, the map data is installed.

If you select Cance1, the map software is not installed.

- Remove the data medium. If an activation code is required for the map software, a prompt appears in the display requesting the code to be entered.
- ► Enter the six-digit activation code.
- ► Select ok .

The map software is installed. You will see a message to this effect.

If you enter an incorrect activation code, the prompt to enter the activation code appears again. If the activation code is entered incorrectly three times, the prompt asking you to enter the activation code appears after a time delay. The time delay increases every time the activation code is entered incorrectly, from five minutes up to a maximum of five hours.

The map data is installed in the background. You can use the navigation system during the installation process and you can check the status of the software update at any time.

Confirm the displayed update progress message.

The last navigation display used appears.

#### To check the software update status

Multimedia system:

- ▶ Navi ▶> Options ▶> Map content
- ► Select Map version.

When the installation process is successfully completed, the Map update has been completed successfully. Restarting navigation system... message will appear. The navigation system is restarted. Any existing route guidance will be recalculated and will resume using the new map data.

- ► Confirm the message.
- ► Remove the data medium. The installation is complete.
- ▶ Installation process with multi-DVD map data: once the content of the first DVD has been installed, a message appears prompting you to insert the second DVD. Follow the instructions on the multimedia system display.
- ► To cancel the installation: remove the data medium.
- 1 You can continue an interrupted installation process at a later date.

#### **Reset function**

Multimedia system:

- ► Vehicle ►> System settings ►>
  Reset
- ► Select Yes.

A prompt appears asking whether you really wish to reset.

To cancel: select No.

► To reset: select Yes.

The multimedia system is reset to the factory settings and restarted.

Personal data is deleted, for example:

- station presets
- connected mobile phones

### Navigation (COMAND Online)

#### Switching navigation on

Multimedia system:

▶ **¬**Navi

If route guidance is activated, the map appears and shows the current vehicle position.

If route guidance is not active, the menu also appears. Destination is highlighted.

### Showing/hiding the navigation menu

Requirements

- The map must display the current vehicle position.
- ► To show the menu: slide ⊚↓ the controller.

or

- ▶ Swipe down on the touchpad.
- ▶ To hide the menu: press the 🛨 button.

#### **Destination entry**

#### Entering a POI or address

Multimedia system:

Navi ▶> Destination ▶> Address entry

Input options, for example, are:

- town or postcode, street, house number
- town or postcode, street
- · town or postcode, centre
- town or postcode, street, junction

- street, town or postcode, house number
- street, town or postcode, junction

The example shows you how to enter a town, street and house number for an address.

- ▶ Select Town.
- ► Enter BERLIN.
- ► Select OK.

  BERLIN is an entry that appears multiple times in Germany, the selected country in this example. This is indicated by the 
  symbol.
- with an X.

  ► Select an entry.
- ▶ Select Street.
- ► Enter the street, e.g. UNTER DEN L.
- ► Select an entry.
- ▶ Select House no...
- ▶ Enter the house number.
- ► Select an entry.

The address entry menu shows the address. The adjacent map section shows the destination.

You can enter additional address data:

- Country
- Postal code
- Centre
- Junction

### Keyword search

Multimedia system:

- Navi ⇒ Destination ⇒ Free destination search
- ► Enter a POI or address.

  Suggestions from the system are provided during entry which can be adopted.

  Input options, for example, are:
  - · Street, town
  - Postcode
  - POI name
  - Town, POI name

#### Examples:

- If searching for Königsstraße in Stuttgart, for example, STUT and KÖN can be entered.
- If searching for a POI in Great Britain, for example, THE SHARD can be entered.

While entering the information, the number of exact matches and of all hits is shown.

---/-- is displayed if fewer than three characters have been entered.

999+ is displayed if there are too many hits.

- ► Select OK.

  The search results are displayed.
- Select Addresses (XX/XX). The search results are displayed.
- Select an entry. The address entry menu shows the address. The adjacent map section shows the destination.

### Selecting a POI

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> From POIs
- ► Select a category.

or

► Select a sub-category.

The list is sorted in ascending order of distance

The POIs show the following information:

- Name of the POI
- Linear distance to the POI
- The linear direction to the POI around the current vehicle position (arrow) when searching
- ▶ Select a POI.

# Calling up the online search

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> Free destination search ►> Online search
- ► After establishing an Internet connection, a list appears. It shows online destinations according to the previous entries.
- ► The online destinations are provided by an Internet provider.
- ► Select a destination.

### Selecting search options

Multimedia system:

- Navi ►> Destination ►> Free destination search ►> Search options
- ► Switch Error-tolerant search or POI search to on ✓ or off □.

The error-tolerant search is useful if parts of the address are incomplete or the spelling is unclear.

### Selecting a previous destination

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> From previous destinations
- ► Select a destination.

  The destination address appears.

# Selecting a contact from the address book

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> From contacts
- ➤ Select a contact.

  The contact details are shown.
- ▶ Select an address.

# Selecting a destination from the memory card

Requirements

• The SD card is inserted (▷ page 190).

Multimedia system:

- Navi ▶> Options ▶> From memory card
- Select a category or Personal routes. The available personal POIs or route entries appear.
- Select a personal POI or personal route. The address of the personal POI appears or the personal route is displayed in the map.

If a large number of entries are stored, a register for quick selection appears. Personal POIs and routes can be saved and sorted with different character sets (e.g. Latin, Cyrillic, Arabic).

- ➤ To select a register: slide ○→ the controller.
- ▶ Select a character.
- ► To select a character set for sorting: select .

The available character sets are displayed. The • dot indicates the current setting.

#### **Entering geo-coordinates**

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> Using geo-coordinates
- Enter geo-coordinates as latitude and longitude coordinates in degrees, minutes and seconds.

The map displays the position.

► Confirm the entry.

### Selecting a destination on the map

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> Using map
- Move the map.
- ► Change the map scale (> page 161). The scale is displayed at the bottom. Turning the controller clockwise zooms out on the map; turning the controller anti-clockwise zooms in.
- Select a destination.

# Selecting a destination from Mercedes-Benz apps

Requirements

 A mobile phone with a data package must be connected to the multimedia system (> page 166).

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Destination
- ► Select From Mercedes-Benz Apps.

#### Entering a stopover

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> Intermediate destinations
- ► Select a category or Other.
  After selecting one of the categories, POIs are displayed depending on availability:
  - · along the route
  - in the vicinity
- ► After selecting Other use the destination entry options.

#### Calculating a route with stopovers

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Destination ►> Intermediate destinations
- Select Start route guidance. The route is calculated with the set intermediate destinations.

#### **Editing stopovers**

Multimedia system:

Navi ➤ Destination ➤ Intermediate destinations

#### To change the order of intermediate destinations:

- ► Select Move.
- ► Move the intermediate destination or destination by turning the controller to the desired position.

#### To delete an intermediate destination:

► Select Delete.

#### Route

#### Calculating the route

Requirements

- The destination has been entered. The destination address is shown.
- ► Select Start or Continue.

  Select Start: the route is calculated.

  Select Continue: if Calculate alternative routes is activated, alternative routes are calculated. You can display the alternative routes.

tive routes and select them for route guidance ( $\triangleright$  page 156).

If route guidance has already been activated, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to end the current route guidance.

► Select Yes or Set as intermediate destination.

Yes cancels the current route guidance and starts route calculation to the new destination.

Set as intermediate destination adds the new destination in addition to the existing destination and opens the intermediate destinations list.

#### Selecting a route type

Multimedia system:

- ► Select a route type.

If there is a route: the route is calculated with the new route type.

If there is no route: the next route is calculated with the new route type.

The following route types can be selected:

- Eco route: the most economic route possible is calculated. The driving time can be longer than with the fast route.
- Fast route: the route with the shortest possible driving time is calculated.
- Short route: the route with the shortest possible distance is calculated.
- Dynamic route: the route takes traffic reports into account. Traffic reports from Live Traffic Information or FM RDS-TMC are taken into account.

### Selecting a route option

Multimedia system:

Navi ▶> Options ▶> Route settings ▶> Avoid options

#### To avoid areas:

► Select Avoid area.

To avoid motorways, ferries, motorail trains, tunnels, unpaved roads:

► Select avoid option on 🗹 or off <a>□</a>.

# To use routes requiring a special toll sticker:

▶ Select Use vignette roads.

The route calculation includes routes which require you to pay a time-based fee (vignette).

#### To take toll road:

► Select Use toll roads.

The route calculation includes routes which require you to pay a usage-based fee (toll).

The route options are not available in all countries.

The selected route options cannot always be taken into account. So a route may contain a ferry, for example, even though the Avoid ferries option is switched on. A message then appears and an announcement can be heard.

### Selecting messages

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Options **>>** Settings
- $\blacktriangleright$  Switch the message on  $\triangleleft$  or off  $\square$ .
  - Announce street names

The multimedia system announces the names of the roads that the change of direction leads to.

This function is not available in all countries and languages.

Audio fadeout.

The volume of an active media source is automatically reduced during a navigation announcement.

Reserve fuel level

Function switched on: if the reserve fuel level is reached, a prompt asks if you wish to start the filling station search.

# Displaying destination information

Requirements

A destination is entered. The route can contain up to four intermediate destinations.

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ► Route ► Destination information
- ➤ The destination and existing intermediate destinations are displayed with distances, travel time and arrival time.

#### Selecting an alternative route

Multimedia system:

► Navi ►> Route ►> Alternative route

The routes are displayed according to the setting in the route settings.

The Eco route (economical route) is displayed with a green line.

- ► To display additional routes: select Next or Previous.
- ► To start a new route guidance: select Start.

#### Route guidance

### Notes on route guidance

After a route is calculated, route guidance begins.

Road and traffic rules and regulations always have priority over multimedia system driving recommendations.

Driving recommendations are:

- · navigational announcements
- route guidance displays
- lane recommendations

If you do not follow the navigation announcements, or if you leave the calculated route, a new route is calculated automatically.

Driving recommendations may differ from the actual traffic situation:

- if the road layout has changed
- if the direction of a one-way street has been changed

For this reason, you must always observe road and traffic controls and regulations during your journey.

The route may differ from the ideal route in the following situations:

- roadworks
- · incomplete digital map data

#### Change of direction

Changes of direction consist of three phases:

- Preparation phase
  - The multimedia system prepares you for the upcoming driving manoeuvre, e.g. with the announcement, "Prepare to turn right".

The map appears in full-screen mode.

- · Announcement phase
  - The multimedia system announces the imminent change of direction, e.g. with the announcement, "Turn right in 200 m".

The display now shows a split-screen view. The map is shown on the left, and a detailed image of the junction or a 3D image of the imminent change of direction appears on the right.

· Change-of-direction phase

The multimedia system announces the immediate change of direction, e.g. with the announcement, "Turn right now".

The display now shows a split-screen view.

The change of direction is performed when the light-coloured bar on the right drops down to 0 m and the current vehicle position symbol has reached the white change-of-direction point.

Once the change of direction is completed, the map appears in full-screen mode.

1 Changes in direction are shown in the instrument display.

#### Lane recommendations

The display is shown on multi-lane roads. If the digital map contains the relevant data, the multimedia system can display lane recommendations for the next two changes of direction.



- Lanes that are not recommended (dark grey)
- Possible lane (light grey)
- (3) Recommended lanes (white)

The following lane recommendations are available:

- Lane not recommended ①

  It is not possible to complete the next change of direction if this lane is taken.
- Possible lane (light grey) ②
   In this lane it is only possible to complete the next change of direction.
- Recommended lanes (white) ③
   In this lane it is possible to complete the next change of direction and the one after that.

#### **Destination reached**

Once the destination is reached, you will see the chequered flag. Route guidance is finished.

# Switching navigation messages on and off

Requirements

- There must be a route.
- Route guidance is activated.
- ➤ To switch off: press the 🐧 button on the multifunction steering wheel during a navigation message.

The Spoken driving recommendations have been deactivated. message appears.

- ► To switch on: slide ()↓ the controller.
- ▶ Select 🕦 🔊 .

Navigation announcements are switched on automatically in these situations:

- The route is recalculated.
- The multimedia system is switched off and on again.
- The vehicle is restarted.

# Adjusting the volume of navigation messages

Requirements

- There must be a route.
- · Route guidance is activated.
- ▶ Press the + or buttons on the multifunction steering wheel during a navigation announcement.

or

- ► Turn the control knob to the right of the touchpad.
- 1 When you start the engine, the volume will be at its lowest setting.

### Repeating navigation messages

Requirements

- There must be a route.
- Route guidance is activated.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi
- ► Select 🕪 🔊 .

The navigation announcement is repeated.

# Cancelling route guidance

Requirements

- There must be a route.
- Route guidance is activated.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Destination
- ► Select Cancel current route guidance.

# Resuming route guidance

Requirements:

- there must be a route.
- route guidance was cancelled or interrupted.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Destination
- ► Select Continue route guidance.

# Route guidance to an off-road destination

Off-road destination: a destination that is located within the digital map. However, the map does not contain a road which leads to the destination.

Off-road destinations can be entered on the map. Route guidance uses navigation announcements and route guidance displays on roads known to the multimedia system for as long as possible.

Shortly before reaching the last known map position, an announcement can be heard, "Please follow the direction arrow". In the display, a direction arrow and the linear distance to the destination can be seen.

# Route guidance from an off-road position to a destination

Off-road position: the current vehicle position is on the digital map but not on available roads.

These displays appear at the start of route guidance:

- The Road not mapped message appears.
- A direction arrow which shows the compass heading to the destination

As soon as the vehicle is back on a road known to the multimedia system, route guidance continues in the usual way.

# Off-road during route guidance

Due to road works, for example, there may be differences between the data on the digital map and the actual course of the road. In such cases, the multimedia system will temporarily be unable to locate the current vehicle position on the digital map. The vehicle is off-road. The following displays appear when off-road:

- The Road not mapped message appears.
- A direction arrow shows the compass heading to the destination.

As soon as the vehicle is back on a road known to the multimedia system, route guidance continues in the usual way.

#### Destination

#### Saving the vehicle's current position

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Position
- ► Select Save.

The current vehicle position is stored in the previous destinations memory.

#### Saving the map position

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Navi
- ► Show the crosshair by pressing ○↓ the controller.
- ► Move the map to the desired position (> page 161).
- Show the menu by sliding ○↓ the controller.
- ► Select Position.
- ► Select Save.

The map position is stored in the previous destinations memory.

# Editing the last destinations

Multimedia system:

- ► Select a destination.

  The destination address appears.

### Saving a destination in the address book

- ► Select Save.
- ► To save as a new contact: select As new contact.
- Select Not classified, Home or Work. An input menu shows the destination address.
- ▶ Enter a surname and a first name.
- ► Select OK.

The Saving successful message appears. The destination address is saved in the address book as a navigable contact.

- ➤ To add to a contact: select Add to contact.
  - The address book appears.
- ► Search for the address book entry (contact) (> page 173).
- ▶ Press the controller.

The Saving successful message appears. The destination address is allocated to a contact in the address book.

Telephone numbers are not transferred to the address book telephone number fields. After selecting the destination address from the address book for navigation, the associated telephone number will be displayed. If the contact already has two destination addresses, a prompt will appear asking if a

- ► Select Yes or No.
  - If you select Yes, a list showing both destination addresses appears.

destination address should be overwritten.

► Select a destination address.

The destination address is overwritten.

#### Saving a destination to an SD card

- ▶ Insert an SD memory card (▷ page 190).
- ▶ Display a POI, for example.
- Select Save.
- ▶ Select To the memory card.
- Select Not classified or, if available, a category that you have created yourself. An entry menu appears.
- ▶ Enter a surname and a first name.
- ▶ Select OK.

The Saving successful message appears. The destination is saved to the SD card.

# Route guidance with current traffic reports

#### Overview of traffic information

Traffic announcements can be received with the following services:

- Live Traffic Information
- FM RDS-TMC

The simultaneous use of both services is not possible.

Live Traffic Information or FM RDS-TMC are displayed with a symbol.

- Hazard alerts can be received via the Carto-X service.
- There may also be differences between the traffic reports received and the actual road and traffic conditions.

Useful information about Live Traffic Information:

- Current traffic announcements are received via an Internet connection or via data roaming (for selected European countries).
- The traffic situation is updated in brief, regular time intervals.
- The subscription service is free of charge for three years from the date of manufacture in selected European countries.

The subscription status can be displayed ( $\triangleright$  page 160).

Vehicle positions are regularly transmitted to Daimler AG. The data is continuously anonymised by Daimler AG and forwarded to the traffic data suppliers. With the help of this data, traffic announcements are transmitted to the vehicle which are relevant for the vehicle position. The vehicle simultaneously acts as a sensor for the flow of traffic and helps improve the quality of traffic announcements.

If you do not want to send any vehicle positions, you can have this service deactivated at a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

Useful information about FM RDS-TMC:

- A FM RDS-TMC radio station broadcasts traffic announcements along with the radio programme.
- FM RDS-TMC is not available in all countries.

# Displaying subscription information

Requirements

 The vehicle must be equipped with Live Traffic Information.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬** Navi **>>** Traffic
- Select Subscription information. These messages display the subscription status. Either a valid subscription exists and the expiry date is displayed, or no subscription exists.
- ► Select OK.

To renew the subscription:

- ► Call up the online shop (App Store).
- ► Enter your data.

#### Displaying the traffic map

The multimedia system can show certain traffic incidents on the map. The displays can be shown in the map scales from 20 m to 20 km.

The display shows the entire affected route section with the corresponding symbols, regardless of how long the incident actually is. The traffic symbols are placed on the side of the carriageway affected by the incident.



- 1 Traffic jam on the route
- ② Slow-moving traffic on the route
- Road blocked
- (4) Road blocked
- (5) Slow-moving traffic (yellow squares along the affected route)
- Traffic jam (red squares along the affected route)

#### Displaying traffic incidents

Requirements

- For Live Traffic Information: the vehicle must be equipped with a communication module with an activated, integrated SIM card.
- The communication module automatically establishes an Internet connection when the vehicle is started. The traffic data are available shortly after.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Navi
- ► Select Traffic.

If network coverage is not available for Live Traffic Information or FM RDS-TMC, or there are no traffic reports, you will see a message to this effect.

### Reading out traffic reports

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬** Navi **>>** Traffic
- ► Select Messages on the route. The multimedia system reads out the messages in sequential order.

If there are no reports for the route: Messages on the route is inoperative.

► To cancel the read-aloud function: select Cancel read-aloud function.

The current traffic report is read out to the end and then the function is deactivated.

 The multimedia system interrupts the read-aloud function automatically as it recalculates the route following a new traffic report.

#### To read out messages automatically:

► Select Read traffic announcements automatically.

The function is switched on  $\mathbf{\nabla}$  or off  $\square$ .

### Map and compass

### Setting the map scale

Requirements

• The map is in full-screen mode, and the menu is hidden.

The lower left-hand section of the map shows the currently set map scale and compass needle.

Right-hand-drive vehicles: the currently set map scale and compass needle are displayed in the lower right-hand section of the map.



- ► Turn the controller.
- The scale bar appears on the bottom of the display.
- ► Turn the controller until the needle points to the desired map scale.

While the scale is being set, square ① in the scale bar shows the last map scale set. When the scale has been set, the new map scale is displayed.

#### Moving the map

Requirements

- The map is in full-screen mode, and the menu is hidden.
- ▶ Press the controller. The crosshair appears.
- ► Slide ←⊙→, †⊙↓ or ♣⊙⊄ the controller.

  The map moves in the corresponding direction under the crosshair.

### Selecting map orientation

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi **>>** Options
- ► Select Map orientation.

The • dot indicates the current setting.

► Select a setting.

### **Selecting POI symbols**

Multimedia system:

▶ Navi ▶> Options ▶> Map content

POIs include, for example, filling stations and hotels. They can be displayed as symbols in the map display. Not all POIs are available everywhere.

► Select POI symbols on map.

The • dot indicates the current setting.

Standard symbols shows symbols of predefined categories in the map.

Personal symbols allows for personal selection of symbols from available categories.

- ► Select a setting.
- ► Select categories.

  POI symbols of the selected

### Selecting text information

Multimedia system:

- ➤ Select Text information on map. The • dot indicates the current setting.
- Select a setting.
   Current street shows the current street at the bottom of the display.

Geo-coordinates show the following information:

- · Longitude and latitude
- Elevation

The elevation shown may deviate from the actual elevation.

The number of satellites received
If the map is moved, this information is
not displayed.

### Displaying the next crossroads

Multimedia system:

- Navi ▶> Options ▶> Map content
- ► Switch Next intersecting street on 
  or off 
  .

The function is switched on  $\Box$ : if route guidance is not activated, the name of the next intersecting street is displayed at the top of the screen.

# Displaying motorway information on the map

Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►>> Options ►>> Map content
- ► Switch Motorway information on ✓ or off □.

If the function is switched on  $\[ \ \ \]$ , information can be displayed while you are driving on the motorway.

The following can be displayed when driving on the motorway:

- the nearest filling stations and rest stops
- rest areas and motorway exits and their immediate distances from the vehicle's current position.

#### Displaying traffic signs on the map

Multimedia system:

- Navi → Options → Map content.
- ► Switch Traffic Sign Assist on or off □.

If the function is switched on **☑**, the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Assist is displayed.

The following traffic signs are displayed:

- · speed limitations
- · overtaking restrictions
- traffic signs with a restriction indicated by an additional sign (e.g. in wet conditions)

#### Showing the map version

Multimedia system:

- ▶ Navi ▶> Options ▶> Map content
- ► Select Map version.

  The map data version number is shown.
- i Information about new versions of the digital map can be obtained from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

### Avoiding an area

Areas can be defined which the driver would like to avoid along a route.

# Avoiding a new area

Multimedia system:

- Navi → Options → Route settings → Avoid options → Avoid area
- ▶ Select Avoid new area.
- ► Select Using map or Address entry: the map with the crosshair appears.

Address entry: the address can be entered.

If an address was entered, the map with the crosshair is also displayed.

- ➤ To select an area: when the map with the crosshair appears, press the controller. A red square appears on the map, symbolising the area to be blocked.
- ► Change the size of the area by turning the controller. The map scale is shown at the

- bottom of the display. The needle rests on the map scale currently selected.
- ► Once the desired size is set, press the controller. The area is entered into the list.

#### Changing an area

#### Multimedia system:

- ► Navi ►> Options ►> Route settings ►> Avoid options ►> Avoid area
- ► Select Avoid new area.
- ► Select the area to be avoided and switch blocking on ✓ or off □.
- ▶ Display or change the area.

#### Display or change the area.

- ► Slide ⊙ → the controller.
- Select Display/change.
   The map with the crosshair appears.
   The area currently blocked is displayed as a red square.
- ► Move the area to be blocked by sliding •○→, †○↓, ‡○↓ the controller.
- ► Change the size of the area to be blocked by pressing the controller.
- ► Turn the controller.
  The size of the blocked area changes.
- ► Apply the changes by pressing the controller.

A message appears stating that the area has been set.

### Deleting an area or all areas

Multimedia system:

Navi ⇒ Options ⇒ Route settings ⇒ Avoid options ⇒ Avoid area

#### To delete an area:

- ▶ Select the desired area from the list.
- ► Slide ⊙ → the controller.
- ► Select Clear.

A prompt appears asking whether the area should be deleted.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.
- ► Confirm the prompt with Yes. The area is deleted.

#### To delete all areas:

- ▶ Select an area from the list.
- ▶ Slide (○) → the controller.

- Select Delete all. A prompt appears asking whether you wish to delete all areas.
- ► Confirm the prompt with Yes. All areas are deleted.

#### Updating map data free of charge

#### Availability of free updates

In some countries, it is possible to update the map data for the multimedia system free of charge for a period of three years. Information on the availability of this service for your vehicle can be obtained from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

#### Entitlement to the free update

For the first three years after your vehicle is registered, you are entitled to all available updates to the map data for the multimedia system. After this period, you can purchase further updates from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre. This entitlement does not apply in all countries.

The free updates are for the vehicle and, as such, not a personal entitlement. If there is a change of ownership within the three years after first registration, the new owner is entitled to the map data updates.

# Updating at a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre

If an update of the map data is available, it will be installed in the vehicle free of charge during the anal service due date in a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

The update is performed only by a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre for European map data. The map data is not provided on a data carrier.

#### Map data

Your vehicle is supplied with map data at the factory. Depending on the country, map software for your region is either pre-installed or the map data is supplied on a data medium. No activation code is required for map data that is provided with your vehicle.

If the map data on your vehicle has been installed at the factory and you wish to reinstall it, this also does not necessitate entry of the activation code.

An activation code is required for purchased map data.

The activation code:

- · can be used for one vehicle
- is not transferable
- · has six digits

In the event of the following problems, please contact a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre:

- The multimedia system does not accept the activation code.
- You have lost the activation code.

### Displaying the compass

Multimedia system:



▶ Press the controller.

The compass display shows the following information:

- the current direction of travel with bearing (360 degree format) and compass direction
- longitude and latitude coordinates in degrees, minutes and seconds
- elevation (rounded off) above sea level
- number of GPS satellites from which a signal can be received

# **Showing Qibla**

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Navi
- ► Select Oibla.

The arrow on the compass shows the direction of prayer to Mecca in relation to the current vehicle direction. The function is not available in all countries.

The number of satellites received is shown.

# Calling up the Digital Owner's Manual (navigation)

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬** Navi
- ► Select Information on navigation. The Digital Operating Instructions are opened at the section on navigation.
- ▶ Press the controller.

#### **Audio 20 navigation**

### Garmin® MAP PILOT navigation module

#### Important safety notes

#### ♠ WARNING

If you operate information and communication equipment integrated in the vehicle when driving, you could be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only operate this equipment when the traffic situation permits. If you cannot be sure of this, stop the vehicle paying attention to road and traffic conditions and operate the equipment with the vehicle stationary.

You must observe the legal requirements for the country in which you are currently driving when operating the system.

Always observe the traffic regulations when driving. Road and traffic rules and regulations always have priority over the navigation messages of the Garmin® MAP PILOT.



#### **↑** WARNING

SD cards are small parts. They can be swallowed and cause choking. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury. Keep the SD card out of the reach of children. If a SD card is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.

#### General notes

The following settings are available for vehicles with Audio 20.

The SD card box contains a quick guide to Garmin® MAP PILOT. The Garmin® MAP PILOT operating instructions are stored on the SD card as a PDF file.

Garmin® MAP PILOT can be operated using the controller or the touchpad.

#### SD card and updates

- ▶ To insert the SD card: insert the SD card into the multimedia connector unit until it engages. The side with the contacts must be facing in the direction of travel.
- Ensure that the write protection on the SD card is deactivated. The switch on the side is facing in the direction of the contacts and must not be in the LOCK position.
- ► Follow the steps as instructed (observe the manufacturer's operating instructions).

You can obtain digital map and software updates from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

For some countries, digital map and software updates are available in the form of a download or an SD card. For access, visit the http://shop.mercedes-benz.com website and follow the instructions in the section "Garmin® MAP PII OT"

Further information (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

#### Switching on navigation mode

► Press button NAVI.

The navigation main menu appears. Further information (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

#### **Telephone**

### **Telephony**

#### Telephone menu overview



- (1) Mobile phone network provider
- (2) Field strength of mobile phone network
- (3) Receiver icon or
- (4) Telephone menu character bar

- 5 Bluetooth® device name of the currently connected mobile phone
- (6) Character entry via touchpad (COMAND Online only)
- (7) To display the phone book

Symbols (1) to (3) and (5) are not shown until a mobile phone has been connected to the multimedia system.

The symbols depend on your mobile phone and your mobile phone network provider. Further information on connecting a mobile phone (⊳ page 166).

Symbol (2) shows the current field strength of the mobile phone network. If all the bars are filled, you have optimum reception.

If the bars are not filled, you have very poor reception or no reception at all.

1 The receiver icon shows whether a call is active/being connected **c** or not **a**.

If the mobile phone connected supports the MAP Bluetooth® profile (Message Access Profile), the menu item is available. Further information on text messages and e-mail (⊳ page 177).

A Bluetooth® interface is available for telephony. The mobile phone is connected directly to the multimedia system.

For telephony you can use the optionally available telephone module with Bluetooth® (SAP profile).

# Notes on telephony

#### **↑** WARNING

If you operate communication equipment integrated in the vehicle when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only operate this equipment when the traffic situation permits. If you cannot be sure of this, stop the vehicle paying attention to road and traffic conditions and operate the equipment with the vehicle stationary.

### **↑** WARNING

If you operate two-way radios incorrectly in the vehicle, their electromagnetic radiation can interfere with the vehicle electronics, for example if:

- the two-way radio is not connected to an exterior aerial
- the exterior aerial is not correctly mounted or is not low-reflection

This could jeopardise the operating safety of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Have the low-reflection exterior aerial fitted at a qualified specialist workshop. When operating two-way radios in the vehicle, always connect them to the low-reflection exterior aerial.

You must observe the legal requirements for the country in which you are currently driving when operating mobile communications equipment in the vehicle.

Telephony is possible via:

- the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> interface
- the telephone module using Bluetooth® (SAP profile)

# Bluetooth® profile overview

Bluetooth® profile of the mobile phone	Function
PBAP ( <b>P</b> hone <b>B</b> ook <b>A</b> ccess <b>P</b> rofile)	Contacts are auto- matically displayed in the multimedia system
MAP (Message Access Profile)	Messaging functions are useable

You can obtain further information from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre or at http://www.mercedes-benz.com/connect.

#### HD Voice®

- The multimedia system supports calls in HD Voice<sup>®</sup> for improved speech quality.
- This is conditional upon HD Voice<sup>®</sup> being supported by the participants' mobile phones and two-way radio providers.

Depending on the quality of the connection, the voice quality may fluctuate.

Call disconnection may occur when the vehicle is in motion in the following situations:

- an area may have insufficient network coverage.
- you move from one GSM or UMTS transmitter/receiver area into another and no channels are free.
- the SIM card used is not compatible with the network available.
- you are using a mobile phone with "Twincard" and the second SIM card is already logged in to the network.

# Connecting a mobile phone (authorising)

#### Requirements

- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is activated on the mobile phone (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is activated on the multimedia system (> page 149).

Multimedia system:

► COMAND Online: Telephone

► Audio 20: Te1/

#### Searching for a mobile phone

- ▶ Select Connect device.
- ▶ Select Search for phones.
- ► Select Start search.

The available mobile phones are displayed. If a new mobile phone is found, it appears in the device list with the symbol.

# Connecting a mobile phone (authorisation via Secure Simple Pairing)

- Select the mobile phone. A code is displayed in the multimedia system and on the mobile phone.
- ► The codes are identical: confirm this with the mobile phone code.

# Mobile phone connection (authorisation by entering a passkey)

- Select the Bluetooth® name of the mobile phone.
- ► Choose a one to sixteen-digit number sequence as a passkey.
- ► Multimedia system: enter the passkey and select OK.
- ► Mobile phone: enter the passkey again and confirm.
- 1 Up to 15 mobile phones can be authorised on the multimedia system.

All phones are reconnected automatically.

### Disconnecting a mobile phone (deauthorisation)

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone
- ► Audio 20: Te1/@
- ► Select Connect device.
- ► Select the mobile phone in the device list.
- ▶ Select 📳 .
- ► Select De-authorise.
- ► Select Yes.

# Changing mobile phones

#### Requirements

• The mobile phones are connected (authorised) (⊳ page 166).

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone
- ► Audio 20: Te1/@
- ► Select Connect device.
- ▶ Select the mobile phone in the device list.
- Only one mobile phone can be connected at any one time. The connected mobile phone is shown at the top of the list.

# Setting the reception and transmission volume

#### Requirements:

mobile phone is connected (authorised)
 (▷ page 166).

#### Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone
- ► Audio 20: —— Te1/@
- ► Select Connect device.
- ► Highlight the mobile phone in the device list.
- ▶ Select 📳.
- ► Select Reception volume or Transmission volume.
- ► Adjust the volume.

More on the recommended reception and transmission volume: http://www.mercedesbenz.com/connect

# Starting/ending mobile phone voice recognition

#### Requirements

 The mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system (authorised) (▷ page 166).

#### To start mobile phone voice recognition

► Press and hold the ③ button on the multifunction steering wheel for more than one second.

You can now use the mobile phone voice recognition.

#### To end mobile phone voice recognition

▶ Press the of to button on the multifunction steering wheel.

#### Calls

#### Making a call

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone
- ► Audio 20: —— Te1/@

#### Making a call

- Select all numbers in the phone number one after the other by turning and pressing the controller.
- ► Select in the telephone menu. The call is made.

#### Accepting an incoming call

► Select Accept.

or

Press the button on the steering wheel.
The call is accepted.

#### Ending a call

► Select Reject.

or

► Press the button on the steering wheel.

### Activating functions during a call

The following functions are available during a call:

- add a call (> page 168)
- end a call
- switch the microphone off/on
- send DTMF tones (not possible with all mobile phones) (▷ page 168)

#### Adding a call

If the mobile phone network provider and the mobile phone support the function, you can make another call during an existing call. The previously active call is held.



- Adding a call
- ► Select €2.
- ► Make a call.

You can make a call via the following methods:

- using the telephone menu (▷ page 167)
- using the call lists (> page 176)
- using the phone book (▷ page 171)

#### Sending DTMF tones

This function is not supported by all mobile phones.

Answering machines or other devices can be controlled by DTMF tones, e.g. for remote query functions.

- Select the appropriate phone number, e.g. to listen to the messages on your voice mail.
- ➤ To transmit individual characters: once a connection to the voice mail has been established, select the desired characters in the telephone menu.

Every character selected will be transmitted immediately.

# Conducting a call with several participants

#### Requirements:

- A phone call is currently being conducted
- Another call connection has been established

#### Switching between calls

► Select or or 2.

#### Activating or ending a call on hold

► Select Continue or Hang up.

#### Conducting conference calls

Select Conference in the telephone menu. The new participant is included in the conference call.

#### Ending an active call

- ▶ Select in the telephone menu.
- 1 On some mobile phones, the call on hold is activated as soon as the active call is ended.

# Incoming call during an active call (call waiting)

#### Requirements

 A phone call is currently being conducted (> page 166).

If there is an incoming call while a call is being conducted, a notification is shown. A tone also sounds.

▶ Select Accept.

The incoming call is active. The previous call is put on hold.

- ► Select Reject.
- 1 The function and behaviour depend on your mobile phone network provider and mobile phone (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

#### Phone book

### Information on the COMAND Online phone book

The phone book displays the contacts from the address book that have a phone number. The entries MB emergency call and MB Contact are also shown in position one and two. The emergency call is sent to the private Mercedes-Benz emergency call number available throughout Europe (> page 181). Use MB Contact to call the Mercedes-Benz Service Hotline (⊳ page 179).

In the phone book, you can:

- create new contacts (▷ page 171)
- add information to contacts (> page 172)
- call up contacts (> page 170)
- store contacts (> page 171)
- delete contacts (▷ page 172)

If a mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system (⊳ page 166) and automatic import of the contacts (> page 173) is activated, the mobile phone contacts are shown automatically.

Further information on importing contacts (⊳ page 173).

When you import, save, edit or add contacts, they will be permanently saved in the multimedia system. The contacts will remain available. even when you connect a different mobile phone to the multimedia system. You can view these contacts even without a mobile phone.

### Information on the Audio 20 phone book

The phone book displays all the contacts. It is possible to store up to 2.000 contacts: In the phone book, you can:

- call up contacts (> page 170)
- store contacts (▷ page 171)
- delete contacts (▷ page 172)

If a mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system (⊳ page 166) and automatic import of the contacts (> page 169) is activated, the mobile phone contacts are shown automatically.

Further information on importing contacts (⊳ page 170).

When you import or save contacts, they will be permanently saved in the multimedia system. The contacts will remain available, even when you connect a different mobile phone to the multimedia system. You can view these contacts even without a mobile phone.

#### Overview of symbols

The symbols in the telephone book have the following meanings:



Contact that has been entered, edited or saved in the multimedia system Contact stored in the multimedia system

| **≟**୬ |

Contact with voice tag

These contacts have also been assigned a voice tag. More information (see the separate Operating Instructions).

å∄

Contact that was called up from a mobile phone

•0

Contact imported from the memory card or USB device

Contact imported from a USB device

Contact imported via the Bluetooth® interface

### Downloading Audio 20 mobile phone contacts

Depending on the mobile phone used, you can set whether the contacts should be imported automatically after the mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system.

Multimedia system:

- ► Tel/@ ►>> Options
- ▶ Select Call up contacts from phone automatically. Activate or deactivate the automatic download function.

If the function is deactivated, the contacts can be called up manually:

► Select Call up contacts. The contacts are called up.

### Calling up a contact

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone
- ► Audio 20: Te1/@
- ► Select Name.

The following options are available to search for contacts:

- · search by initials
- · search by name
- · search by phone number
- ▶ Enter the characters into the search field.
- ► Select OK.
  The contacts in the telephone book appear.
- ▶ Select a contact.

COMAND Online: the \_a symbol indicates that a contact contains more than one phone number.

Select a contact with the symbol. The telephone numbers appear. The symbol changes to √.

A contact can contain the following details:

- telephone numbers
- · navigable addresses
- geo-coordinates

# Changing the contact name format (Audio 20)

Multimedia system:

- ► Tel/ → Options
- ► Select Name representation.

The following options are available:

- Surname, first name
- Surname First name
- First name Surname
- Select an option.

### Importing contacts (Audio 20)

#### Information and requirements

You can import contacts (vCards) into the phone book from the memory card, a USB device or via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>.

i Between 1,000 and 2,000 contacts can be imported into the phone book. A message notifies you when the maximum number is reached. In order to be able to then import new contacts, you must delete existing contacts (▷ page 172).

Resource	Requirements
Memory card	The SD card is inserted.
USB device	The USB device is inserted into the USB port.
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> connection	If the sending of vCards via Bluetooth® is supported, vCards can, for example, be received by mobile phones. Bluetooth® must be activated in the multimedia system and on the respective device (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

# Importing from the memory card or USB device

Contacts imported from the memory card or from a USB device have the symbol. The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to import vCards:

- vCards (vcf files) may be located in the main directory or in folders. The multimedia system allows for a targeted selection of the corresponding directories.
- vCards must have the ".vcf" file extension.
- 1 vcf files may also contain multiple vCards. The multimedia system supports vCards in versions 2.1 and 3.0.

#### Multimedia system:

- ► Tel/ → Options
- ► select Import contacts. A menu appears.
- ► Select From memory card or USB 1 or USB 2 in the menu.

### Receiving vCards via Bluetooth®

Multimedia system:

- ► Tel/ → Options
- ▶ select Import contacts.
- ► select From Bluetooth device.

  If the multimedia system is connected to a mobile phone, the connection is terminated. vCards can now be received by a device (PC, mobile phone) via Bluetooth®.

#### **External device:**

► start the data transfer (see the operating instructions for the device).

The number of vCards received is displayed in the multimedia system.

#### Multimedia system:

▶ end reception by pressing the controller or the 🛨 button.

If a mobile phone was connected, the connection to the mobile phone is established again.

vCards received via Bluetooth® are identified by the  $\blacksquare^{BT}$  symbol in the phone book.

 If you switch to another main function, e.g. navigation, while receiving vCards, the reception of vCards will be cancelled.

# Deleting imported contacts (Audio 20)

Multimedia system:

- ► Tel/@ ►>> Options
- ► Select Delete contacts.
- ► Select one of the following options:
  - Internal contacts
  - Imported from storage devices
  - Imported via Bluetooth devices
  - Downloaded from phone
- ► Select Yes.

#### Saving a mobile phone contact

Saved contacts are indicated in the phone book by different symbols ( $\triangleright$  page 169).

- ► Call up the 📲 mobile phone contact (> page 170).
- ▶ Select 国.
- ► Select Save.

The contact saved in the multimedia system is marked in the phone book by the  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\blacksquare}$  symbol.

### **1** COMAND Online

Saved contacts are also displayed in the address book.

Saving or editing the contact details in the multimedia system does not change the contacts on the mobile phone. If automatic calling-up of phone contacts is activated, the multimedia system displays the copy with the changed data.

To add additional data, such as additional phone numbers or e-mail addresses, select this contact. In this way, you avoid creating additional copies of the mobile phone entry.

Audio 20

Saving the contact details in the multimedia system does not change the contacts on the mobile phone. If automatic calling-up of phone contacts is activated, the multimedia system displays the copy with the changed data.

### Calling a contact

- ► Call a contact (▷ page 170).
- ▶ Select a contact and place the call.

# Creating a new contact (COMAND Online)

- ► Slide the controller † repeatedly in the phone book until the selection list appears.
- ▶ Select 📳 .
- ► Select New.
- ► Select a phone number category, e.g. Home.
- Select a telephone category, e.g. Mobile. If you have marked a phone number as preferred, it is shown at the top of the list and is highlighted.

- Select Continue. The input menu with input lines appears.
- ► Enter characters.
- ➤ To finish and save an entry: select OK.

  The contact is created in the phone book and in the address book.

#### Adding a contact (COMAND Online)

You can add a telephone number to an existing contact.

- ► Highlight a contact in the phone book.
- ▶ Select 词.
- ► Select Add telephone no..
- ► Select a phone number category, e.g. Home.
- ► Select a telephone category, e.g. Mobile.

  If you have marked a phone number as preferred, it is shown at the top of the list and is highlighted.
- ► Select Continue.
  The phone number is stored.

A maximum of five entries can be saved for one category.

If five numbers are already stored for the entry you are searching for, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to overwrite one of the existing phone numbers.

- ➤ To overwrite an entry: select Yes.

  A list with the available five phone numbers appears.
- Select the phone number to be overwritten from the list.The entry field for the new phone number
- ► Enter characters.

appears.

► To cancel overwriting an entry: select No.
The process is cancelled.

# Deleting a contact

Audio 20: you can delete contacts that are saved in the multimedia system or have been imported.

#### COMAND Online:

- You can delete contacts that have been added, supplemented, saved or imported to the multimedia system.
- If there is only one phone number saved under the contact, the contact is deleted from the phone book and the address book.
- If there are additional entries under the contact, such as a navigable destination, only
  the phone number is deleted. The contact is
  retained in the address book with the
  remaining entries.
- ▶ Select a contact in the phone book.
- ▶ Select ☐ .
- Select Delete entry. A prompt appears asking whether the contact should be deleted.
- ► Select Yes.

### Address book (COMAND Online)

#### Information on the address book

The address book contains all of the contacts from existing data sources, such as a mobile phone or memory card.

You can use the contacts to make telephone calls, navigate and to write messages.

It is possible to store up to 5,000 contacts:

- 2,000 entries are for permanently stored contacts
- 3,000 entries are for contacts imported from a mobile phone

You can perform the following tasks from the contacts menu:

- making a call (> page 174)
- · navigating
- · writing a message:
  - text messages (▷ page 175)
  - e-mail (> page 175)

If a mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system (▷ page 166) and automatic import of the contacts (▷ page 173) is activated, the mobile phone contacts are shown automatically. If you disconnect the mobile phone from the multimedia system, the contacts are no longer displayed in the address book.

#### Downloading mobile phone contacts

Depending on the mobile phone used, you can set whether the contacts should be imported automatically after the mobile phone is connected to the multimedia system.

Multimedia system:

- ► Connect the mobile phone (> page 166).
- ► Telephone ►► Address book ►► Options
- ► Switch Call up contacts from phone automatically on 🗹 or off 🖂.

### Calling up a contact

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►► Address book
- ► Select Search.

The following options are available to search for contacts:

- · search by initials
- · search by name
- · search by phone number
- Enter a character into the search field.
  A selection of contacts appears. The more characters you enter into the search field, the more the selection options are limited.
- ► Select oκ.
- ▶ Select a contact.

A contact may have the following details:

- company
- telephone numbers
- two e-mail addresses
- · web address
- · two addresses
- navigable addresses
- · geo-coordinates

# Changing the contact name format

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ▶> Address book ▶> Options
- ► Select Name representation.

The following options are available:

- Surname, first name
- Surname First name
- First name Surname
- ▶ Select an option.

#### Importing a contact

#### Information and requirements

Contacts can be imported in the form of vCards (vcf files). A vCard is an electronic business card. A memory card, a USB device or a Bluetooth® connection can be used for importing.

(1) Up to 2,000 entries can be imported into the address book. A message notifies you when the maximum number is reached. In order to be able to then import new contacts, you must delete existing contacts (▷ page 175).

Source	Requirements
Memory card	The SD card is inserted.
USB device	The USB device is inserted into the USB port.
Bluetooth® connection	If the sending of vCards via Bluetooth® is supported, vCards can, for example, be received by mobile phones or netbooks.
	Bluetooth® must be activated in the multimedia system and on the respective device (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

i If automatic calling up of the contacts is deactivated (> page 173), the Download from phone option is available.

# Importing from the memory card or USB device

Contacts imported from the memory card or from a USB device have the symbol. The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to import vCards:

 vCards (vcf files) may be located in the main directory or in folders. The multimedia system allows for a targeted selection of the corresponding directories.

- vCards must have the ".vcf" file extension.
- 1 The multimedia system supports vCards in versions 2.1 and 3.0.

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ▶> Options
- ► Select Import contacts. A menu appears.
- ► Select From memory card or From USB device in the menu.

#### Receiving vCards via Bluetooth®

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►> Options
- ► Select Import contacts.
- ► Select From Bluetooth device.

  If the multimedia system is connected to a mobile phone, the connection is terminated. vCards can now be received by a device (PC, mobile phone) via Bluetooth®.

#### External device:

➤ Start the data transfer (see the operating instructions for the device).

The number of vCards received is displayed in the multimedia system.

#### Multimedia system:

Stop reception by pressing the controller. If a mobile phone was connected, the connection to the mobile phone is established again.

Received vCards are identified by the symbol in the address book.

 If you switch to another main function, e.g. navigation, while receiving vCards, the reception of vCards will be terminated.

# **Deleting imported contacts**

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►> Options
- ▶ Select Delete contacts.
- ► Select one of the following options:
  - Internal contacts
  - Imported from storage devices

- Imported via Bluetooth devices
- Downloaded from phone
- ► Select Yes.

### Saving mobile phone contacts

Saved contacts are indicated in the phone book by different symbols ( $\triangleright$  page 169).

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ► Address book
- ➤ Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.
- ▶ Select 📳.
- ► Select Save.
  The contact is stored.
- 1 If the saved address book entry contains a phone number, the entry is also displayed in the phone book.

Saving or editing the contact details in the multimedia system does not change the contacts on the mobile phone. If automatic downloading of phone contacts is activated, the multimedia system displays the copy with the changed data. To add additional data, such as additional phone numbers, select this contact. In this way, you avoid creating additional copies of the mobile phone entry.

### Calling a contact

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►► Address book
- Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.
- ► Select a phone number.
  The number is dialled.

# Creating a new contact

You can enter address data directly into the address book. If you store telephone numbers in the phone book of the multimedia system, these are also saved in the address book. If you store a navigation destination, the multimedia system creates an address book entry that includes the complete navigable address data.

Multimedia system:

► Telephone ►> Address book

- ► Select New.
  Input lines for the surname and the first name appear.
- ▶ Enter characters using the controller.
- Select Oκ. The surname and first name are stored. The details for the contact are displayed.
- Add the desired entry, e.g. Add E-Mail

Depending on the type of entry, the corresponding input menu appears.

- ► Enter characters.
- ► Select OK.
  The entry is stored.

### Adding information to a contact

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ▶> Address book
- ► Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.
- ► Add the desired entry.

  Depending on the type of entry, the corresponding input menu appears.
- ► Enter characters.
- ► Select **OK**. The entry is stored.

A maximum of five telephone numbers can be saved for one contact.

# Deleting a contact

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ➤ Address book
- ► Select Search.
- Enter the characters into the search field. A selection of contacts appears. The more characters you enter into the search field, the more the selection options are limited.
- ▶ Select a contact.
- ▶ Select 📳.
- ► Select Delete entry.
- ► Select Yes.

#### Sending text messages

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ► Address book
- ► Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.
- ► Highlight a phone number.
- ► Select 📳.
- ➤ Select Send text message. Entry fields for a text message appear (> page 178).

Observe the requirements for the message function ( $\triangleright$  page 177).

#### Sending e-mails

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ► Address book
- ► Select an entry.

The contact details appear.

► Select an e-mail address. Entry fields for an e-mail appear (> page 178).

Observe the requirements for the message function (▷ page 177).

### **Editing a contact**

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►► Address book
- ► Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.
- ► Select the desired entry.
- ▶ Select 📳.
- ► Select Edit.

The entry field for the selected entry appears.

# Starting route guidance to an address or geo-coordinates

If an address with a postcode is saved, the address can be used for route guidance. If the postcode cannot be assigned to an exact address, you can adjust the destination subsequently using the controller.

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►► Address book
- ► Select a contact.
  The contact details appear.

► Select an address.

or

- Select an entry using geo-coordinates. The menu for the navigation systems appears.
- Select Start route guidance. The route to the destination address is calculated and route guidance starts.

#### **Call list**

#### Call list overview

If your mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® profile PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile), the mobile phone call lists are displayed in the multimedia system. If necessary, the connection for the Bluetooth® PBAP profile must be confirmed when connecting the mobile phone.

If your mobile phone does not support the Bluetooth® PBAP profile, the multimedia system generates its own call lists. This list is not synchronised with the call lists on your mobile phone.

If an incoming call comes from a contact who is not saved in the multimedia system, you can use the call list to save the telephone number.

# Making a call from the call list

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone ►> Call lists
- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Call lists
- ▶ Select Incoming calls or Calls dialled.
- ► Select an entry.
- ▶ Make the call.

# Call list options (COMAND Online)

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►> Call lists
- ► Select Incoming calls or Calls dialled.
- ► Highlight an entry.
- ► Select 📳.

### Saving a new entry in the address book

- ▶ Select Save.
- ► Select New entry.

- ► Select a phone number category, e.g. Home.
- ▶ Select a telephone category, e.g. Mobile. The • dot indicates the selected category. If you have marked a number as Preferred, it is shown at the top of the list and is highlighted.
- Select Continue. The entry field for the name of the new contact appears. The entry field for the telephone number is filled in automatically.
- ► Enter characters.
- ► Select OK.

  The entry is stored. The new contact has been created.

# Adding information to an address book entry

- ▶ Select Save.
- ▶ Select Add to contact.
- ► Select a phone number category, e.g. Home.
- ► Select a telephone category, e.g. Mobile.
- ► Select Continue.
  The address book appears.
- ➤ Search for the desired contact (▷ page 173).
- Press the controller when you have finished searching.

The telephone number has been saved.

A maximum of five telephone numbers can be saved for one contact.

If five numbers are already stored for the entry you are searching for, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to overwrite one of the existing phone numbers.

- ► To overwrite an entry: select Yes.

  A list with the available five phone numbers appears.
- Select the phone number to be overwritten from the list.
   The entry is overwritten with the new tele-
- ➤ To cancel overwriting an entry: select No.
  The process is cancelled.

# **Deleting call list (COMAND Online)**

phone number.

Call lists that are generated and managed by the multimedia system can be deleted in the multimedia system.

You cannot delete call lists from the multimedia system that are displayed on a mobile

phone that supports the Bluetooth® profile PBAP.

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►> Call lists ►>
  Delete call lists
- ► A prompt appears asking whether you wish to delete all call lists.
- ▶ To delete call lists: select Yes.
- ► To cancel deletion of call lists: select No. The process is cancelled.
- If you delete call lists from the mobile phone (see the manufacturer's operating instructions), the multimedia system updates the call list display the next time it connects.

#### Messages

### Notes on the messages functions

If the connected mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® MAP profile, the messaging functions can be used on the multimedia system.

More information on settings and functions supported by Bluetooth®-capable mobile phones can be obtained from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre or at: http://www.mercedes-benz.com/connect.

Some mobile phones require further settings after connecting to the multimedia system (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

New messages are identified by the Model symbol in the multimedia system display and an audible signal. Once you have read all the messages, the symbol is no longer displayed.

#### COMAND Online:

To read and write e-mails in the multimedia system, the e-mail account first needs to be configured (⊳ page 177).

The multimedia system displays the 100 newest text messages and e-mails.

The symbol is displayed when the mobile phone's message memory is full. The symbol is no longer displayed if you delete messages on the mobile phone.

#### Audio 20:

The multimedia system displays the 100 newest text messages.

### Setting up the displayed text messages

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone ►>

  Settings ►> Text message ►>
- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► ► Settings

A menu with the following options is shown:

- All messages
- New messages

You can also display the latest 100 text messages using the Download option in the message menu.

- Off (The text messages are not displayed automatically.)
- ▶ Select an option.

# Setting up the displayed e-mails (COMAND Online)

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ▶> ⋈ ▶> Settings
- ► Highlight the e-mail account.
- ▶ Select 🗐.

A menu with the following options is shown:

- All messages
- New messages

You can display the last 100 messages using the Download option in the message menu.

- Off (The e-mails are not displayed automatically.)
- Select an option.

# Setting up an e-mail account (COMAND Online)

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ▶> ▷ ▶ Settings
- ▶ Select the e-mail account.

The e-mail account is now configured. The e-mails can now be received and sent in the multimedia system.

### Reading messages

COMAND Online: the message menu contains all unread text messages and e-mails. If the corresponding folder is called up, the messages displayed are sorted by text messages and e-mails.

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: The Telephone ➤ In the message menu is displayed with the unread messages.

#### Reading a message

- ► Select a message.
  - The text of the message is displayed.
- ► To close the text of the message: press the 🖃 button.

# COMAND Online: using the read-aloud function

- ► Press the controller while the message is being displayed.
- Select Read aloud. The multimedia system reads the message aloud.
- ► Cancel the read-aloud function by pressing the ସ button.

or

Press the controller, select Cancel readaloud function and press the controller again.

COMAND Online: you can set the language (▷ page 150) and speed (▷ page 148) of the read-aloud function.

# Writing and sending a text message

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: Telephone ►>> New
- ► Audio 20: Te1/@ ►> Mew
- ► Select Text message.

The input menu for a text message appears. The To: entry field is selected.

► To enter a recipient: enter characters.

or

- ➤ To enter a phone number from the phone book: select \_\_\_\_\_. The contacts from the phone book that have
  - a phone number are displayed.
- ► Search for and select an entry (> page 170). The phone number is copied to the recipient line.
- ► To enter text: select ↓ in the character bar.
- ► Enter characters.

The multimedia system contains templates that you can use to compile your messages.

▶ To send the text message: select 0K.

### Replying to a text message

- ▶ Display the messages (▷ page 178).
- Press the controller.

sage.

- ➤ Select Reply.

  The input menu for a text message appears.

  The addressee's details are automatically filled in using the details in the original mes-
- ► To send the text message: select 0K.

### Calling a text message sender

- ▶ Display the messages (▷ page 178).
- ► Call up the menu by pressing the controller.
- ► Select Call sender.
  The call is made.

# Writing and sending an e-mail (COMAND Online)

Multimedia system:

- ► Telephone ►> ⋈ ►> New
- ► Select E-mail.

The input menu for an e-mail appears. The To: entry field is selected.

► To enter a recipient: enter characters.

or

- ► Search for and select an entry (▷ page 173). The e-mail address is copied to the addressee line.

- ► To enter a subject: select ↓ in the character bar.
- ▶ Enter characters.

The multimedia system contains templates that you can use to compile your messages (> page 179).

▶ To send the e-mail: select OK.

## Replying to an e-mail (COMAND Online)

- ▶ Display the messages (▷ page 178).
- ▶ Call up the menu by pressing the controller.
- ► Select Reply.

The e-mail input menu appears. The addressee's details are automatically filled in using the details in the original message.

When replying to an e-mail, you can also select Reply all instead of Reply. In this case, the reply is sent not just to the sender but to all those who received the original message.

## Using text templates (COMAND Online)



- (1) Display text templates
- ➤ Select the input line for a text message (> page 178) or e-mail (> page 178).
- ► Select text templates ① in the character bar.
  - The text templates appear.
- ▶ Select a text template and insert it.

## Mercedes me connect (COMAND Online)

#### Notes on Mercedes me connect

Mercedes me connect offers (amongst others) the following services:

- breakdown management
- requesting an appointment or similar enquiries
- accident management
- Mercedes-Benz emergency call system

The Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre and Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre are available to you around the clock.

The emergency call buttons can be found in the vehicle overhead control panel (> page 218).

You can also establish contact via the multimedia system (▷ page 181).

Please note that Mercedes me connect is a Mercedes-Benz customer service. In emergencies, always call the national emergency services first, using the standard national emergency call numbers. In emergencies, you can also use the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system (> page 181).

More information on Mercedes me connect, the range of services offered and on using the function is available from your Mercedes-Benz Service Centre or on the Internet at: http://manuals.daimler.com/baix/cars/connectme/en\_GB/index.htmlhttp://

manuals.daimler.com/baix/cars/connectme/de\_DE/index.html

## Calling the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre using the multimedia system

In order to use the services of Mercedes me connect in the vehicle, the following pre-conditions must be fulfilled:

- you have access to a GSM network.
- GSM network coverage is provided in the respective region by the service provider.
- the ignition must be switched on for vehicle data to be transferred automatically.

Multimedia system:

## ► Telephone ►> Name

► call MB Contact.

After confirmation, the multimedia system sends the required vehicle data.

Data transfer is shown in the display. Then, you can select the desired service and be connected to a Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre contact.

## Information on breakdown assistance call button

A breakdown assistance call has been made to the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre via the multimedia system (> page 181):

 a qualified Mercedes-Benz technician will perform repairs on-site and/or tow the vehicle to the nearest Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

These services may require payment.

Data will be transferred during the connection with the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre (> page 180).

# Information about Mercedes me connect accident management

Mercedes me connect accident management is an extension of the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system.

If an emergency call to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre has been triggered following an accident:

- a voice connection is made to a contact person at the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre
- if necessary, the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre contact forwards the call to Mercedes me connect accident management
- if necessary, the vehicle will be towed to a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre

## Service message via Mercedes me connect

If you have activated the maintenance management service, relevant vehicle data is automatically sent to the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre. You will then receive individual recom-

mendations regarding the maintenance of your vehicle.

Regardless of whether you agreed to take the maintenance management service, the multimedia system reminds you after a certain time period that a service is due. A prompt appears asking if you would like to make an appointment.

## ► To arrange a service appointment: select Call.

After you have confirmed, the vehicle data is sent and a Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre employee personally deals with your appointment. The information is then sent to your desired service outlet.

They will then contact with you within 24 hours.

 If, after the service message appears, you select Call later, the window is hidden and then reappears after a certain period of time.

#### Consenting to the transfer of data with Mercedes me connect

Requirements

 There is a currently active breakdown call (> page 181).

If you call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre via the multimedia system, you will see the Do you consent to the transfer of vehicle data and vehicle position data to the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre in order to better deal with your query? message.

► Select Yes.

The relevant vehicle data is automatically transferred.

More information on Mercedes me: http://www.mercedes.me

## Data transfer during a service call

In certain countries, it is necessary to confirm data transmission.

The following data is transmitted:

#### Overview of transferred data

Service call	Transmitted data
MB Info call Breakdown assis- tance call	<ul> <li>current vehicle location</li> <li>vehicle identification number</li> <li>the service code</li> <li>selected data about the status of the vehicle</li> </ul>

#### Mercedes me connect Audio 20

#### Notes on Mercedes me connect

The Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre is available to you around the clock for breakdown assistance, for requesting an appointment or similar enquiries.

You can call the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre via the multimedia system (⊳ page 181).

Please note that Mercedes me connect is a Mercedes-Benz customer service. In emergencies, always call the national emergency services first, using the standard national emergency call numbers. In emergencies, you can also use the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system (> page 181).

More information on Mercedes me connect, the range of services offered and on using the function is available from your Mercedes-Benz Service Centre or on the Internet at: http://manuals.daimler.com/baix/cars/connectme/en\_GB/index.html.http://manuals.daimler.com/baix/cars/connectme/de\_DE/index.html

## Calling the Mercedes-Benz Customer Centre using the multimedia system

In order to use the services of Mercedes me connect in the vehicle, the following pre-conditions must be fulfilled:

- you have access to a GSM network.
- GSM network coverage is provided in the respective region by the service provider.
- the ignition must be switched on for vehicle data to be transferred automatically.

Multimedia system:

► Tel/ ► Name
► call MB Contact.

## Mercedes-Benz emergency call system

## Notes on the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system

The Mercedes-Benz emergency call system only functions in areas where network coverage is available from the relevant contract partner. Insufficient network coverage from the relevant contract partner may result in an emergency call not being transmitted. The ignition must be switched on before an emergency call can be made.

## Mercedes-Benz emergency call system overview

The Mercedes-Benz emergency call system can help to decisively reduce the time between an accident and the arrival of emergency services at the site of the accident. It helps locate an accident site in places that are not immediately visible.

The emergency call can be made automatically (▷ page 182) or manually (▷ page 182). Only make an emergency call if you or others are in need of rescue. Do not make an emergency call in the event of a breakdown or something similar.

## Displays in the multimedia system display

SOS READY: emergency call available.

SOS NOT READY: the ignition is not switched on or the emergency call system is malfunctioning.

During an active emergency call,  $\boxed{\S^{SOS}}$  appears in the display.

You can find more information on the regional availability of the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system at http://www.mercedes-benz.com/connect\_ecall.

i If the emergency call feature is not available, a corresponding message appears in

the multifunction display of the instrument cluster.

### **Automatic emergency call**

#### Requirements

- The ignition is switched on.
- The starter battery is sufficiently charged. If restraint systems such as airbags or belt tensioners have been activated after an accident, the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system may automatically trigger an emergency call

If an emergency call has been made:

- a voice connection is made to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
- a text message with accident data is sent to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
   The Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre can transmit the vehicle position data to one of the public emergency call centres.
- in certain situations data is also transmitted in the speech channel to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
- this allows measures for rescue, recovery or towing to a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre to be initiated quickly.

The SOS button in the overhead control panel flashes until the emergency call has been completed.

It is not possible to immediately end an automatic emergency call.

If the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system cannot connect to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre, the emergency call is automatically sent to the public emergency services.

If no connection can be made to the public emergency services either, a relevant message appears in the display.

► Enter the emergency call number 112 into the mobile phone.

If an emergency call has been made:

- stay in the vehicle, if traffic conditions permit, until the voice connection is established to the operator at the emergency call centre.
- the operator uses the accident record to assess if it is necessary to call the emer-

- gency services and/or police to the site of the accident.
- if no vehicle occupant answers, an ambulance is immediately sent to the vehicle.

## Manual emergency call

Press and hold the SOS button for at least one second (▷ page 218).

If an emergency call has been made:

- a voice connection is made to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
- stay in the vehicle, if traffic conditions permit, until the voice connection is established to the operator at the emergency call centre.
- the operator uses the accident record to assess if it is necessary to call the emergency services and/or police to the site of the accident.
- a text message with accident data is sent to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
   The Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre can transmit the vehicle's position data to one of the public emergency call centres.
- in certain situations data is also transmitted in the speech channel to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.

This allows measures for rescue, recovery or towing to a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre to be initiated quickly.

If the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system cannot connect to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre, the emergency call is automatically sent to the public emergency services call centre.

If no connection can be made to the public emergency services either, a relevant message appears in the display.

► Enter the emergency call number 112 into the mobile phone.

#### Ending an unintentional emergency call:

▶ press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Data transfer to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system

The following data is transmitted to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre:

- the vehicle's GPS position data
- the GPS position data of the route (a few hundred metres before the incident)
- · direction of travel
- · vehicle identification number
- the drive type of the vehicle
- whether Mercedes me connect is installed
- · emergency call triggered manually or automatically
- the time of the accident
- the language setting in the multimedia sys-

For accident clarification purposes, the following measures can be taken up to an hour after the emergency call has been triggered:

- the current position of the vehicle can be called up.
- a voice connection can be established to the vehicle occupants.

#### Online and Internet functions

#### Internet connection

#### Internet connection restrictions



#### **↑** WARNING

If you operate information and communication equipment integrated in the vehicle when driving, you could be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only operate this equipment when the traffic situation permits. If you cannot be sure of this, stop the vehicle paying attention to road and traffic conditions and operate the equipment with the vehicle stationary.

When operating the multimedia system, you must observe the legal requirements of the country you are currently in.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are the following options for establishing an Internet connection:

- via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> with a data-enabled mobile phone (⊳ page 166)
- COMAND Online: via USB (▷ page 192)

Use of the Internet functions is restricted while the vehicle is in motion.

## Setting up the Internet connection via Bluetooth® and USB

### Requirements for connecting via Bluetooth®

- Connect a mobile phone to the multimedia system via Bluetooth® (⊳ page 166).
- If you use the telephone module for Internet functions, you require a SIM card in the telephone module or a Bluetooth® SAP-capable mobile phone.

#### COMAND Online: requirements for connecting via USB

- Connect a mobile phone to the multimedia system via USB (⊳ page 192).
- If you use the telephone module for Internet functions, you require a SIM card in the telephone module or a Bluetooth® SAP-capable mobile phone.

To connect via Bluetooth®, the mobile phone must support one of the following Bluetooth® profiles:

- DUN (Dial-up Networking)
- PAN (Personal Area Network)

To connect via USB in vehicles with COMAND Online, the mobile phone must support one of the following USB classes:

- RNDIS (Remote Network Driver Interface) Specification)
- CDC/NCM (Network Control Model)
- CDC/ECM (Ethernet Control Model)
- CDC/ACM (Access Control Model)

The Internet connection can be restricted or may not function in the following cases:

- the mobile phone is switched off.
- there is insufficient two-way radio network coverage.
- use of the mobile phone data is deactivated.
- the Bluetooth® function is switched off on the multimedia system and the desired tele-

phone is supposed to be connected via Bluetooth®.

- the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> function is switched off on the mobile phone and the phone is supposed to be connected via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>.
- the mobile phone is not connected via USB and the phone is supposed to be connected via USB (COMAND Online).
- either the mobile phone network or the mobile phone do not allow simultaneous use of a phone and an Internet connection.
- the mobile phone has not been enabled for Internet access via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>.

If you are using Internet access for the first time, you must enable the connected mobile phone for Internet access (> page 184). If the connected mobile phone supports the Bluetooth® profile PAN or the USB classes RNDIS (COMAND Online), CDC/NCM (COMAND Online) or CDC/ECM (COMAND Online), you do not need to make additional settings. The Internet connection is set up.

If the connected mobile phone does not support the named Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> profile or the named USB classes, predefined (▷ page 184) or manual access data (▷ page 185) must be set.

While initialising the mobile phone for the Internet connection, access data which is already on the mobile phone may be overwritten.

You should therefore check the settings on the mobile phone (see the manufacturer's operating instructions).

Further information can be found at http://www.mercedes-benz.com/connect or from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

## Enabling the mobile phone for Internet access

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Internet ► Settings
- Select Manage Internet settings. A message appears informing you that the settings for the Internet functions depend on your mobile phone network provider and your mobile phone.

If a mobile phone has already been enabled, the device list appears.

- ► Select Start search.

  Mobile phones are displayed that:
  - · are connected to the system.
  - fulfil the conditions for the Internet functions.
  - have not yet been set up for the Internet function.
- ► Select the desired mobile phone.

## Editing the access data

The mobile phone must be connected with the system for the access data to be changed.

When the Internet connection is active, you cannot edit or delete the access data of the currently set mobile phone network provider.

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Settings ► Manage Internet settings
- ► Highlight the desired mobile phone.
- ▶ Select 🗐.
- ► Select Change configuration.
- ► Select Predefined settings or Manual settings.

The provider settings are displayed.

In order to edit the access data of the mobile phone network provider you have two options:

- Option 1: select the predefined access data of the mobile phone network provider (▷ page 184).
- Option 2: manually set the access data of the mobile phone network provider (▷ page 185).

## Selecting the predefined access data of the mobile phone network provider

- ► Select Predefined settings. A list of countries appears.
- Select the country of your mobile phone network provider, e.g. Germany.
   The list of available providers appears.
- ► Select your provider, e.g. 02.

If the mobile phone network provider provides multiple access data options, the relevant access data still has to be selected. This

depends on the data package used, for example.

In order to check whether the predefined dialling-in data corresponds to the dialling-in data provided by your mobile phone provider, proceed as follows (> page 184) and select Manual settings. The access data is displayed for you.

The access data for the mobile phone network provider is selected once for the mobile phone connected and is loaded again each time the mobile phone is connected. Establish a connection (> page 186).

You must set the access data of the mobile phone network provider who provides the SIM card and the associated data package (access settings) for the connected mobile phone. The access data remains the same if you are in a different country (roaming). The access data of another network is **not** selected.

## Manually setting the access data of the mobile phone network provider

- Select Manual settings. An overview of the provider settings appears.
- ► Set access data (> page 185).
- ► Select Confirm settings.

The access data for the mobile phone network provider is selected once for the mobile phone connected and is loaded again each time the mobile phone is connected. Establish a connection ( $\triangleright$  page 186).

You must set the access data of the mobile phone network provider who provides the SIM card and the associated data package (access settings) for the connected mobile phone. The access data remains the same if you are in a different country (roaming). The access data of another network is **not** selected.

## Setting the access data

Set the access data in accordance with your data package. You can contact your mobile phone network provider to obtain the precise access data.

#### Explanation of the access data

Explanation of the access data		
Meaning		
Access number for establishing the connection. The access number depends on the mobile phone used. For GSM/UMTS mobile phones, *99***1# is used as a standard.		
APN network access point (Access Point Name) You can obtain this information from your mobile phone network provider. Entry is not necessary for all mobile phone network providers and mobile phones.		
Internet protocol used. You can obtain this information from your mobile phone network provider.		
The user identification can be obtained from your mobile phone network provider. Entry is not necessary for all mobile phone network providers.		
The password can be obtained from your mobile phone network provider. Entry is not necessary for all mobile phone network providers.		

Entry field	Meaning
Auto DNS:	Automatic allocation of DNS servers is activated. If the function is deactiva- ted, the DNS server addresses must be entered manually. DNS (Domain Name Ser- vice)
DNS1: DNS2:	Fields for entering the DNS server addresses manually. The address can be obtained from your mobile phone network provider.

## Cancelling Internet access enablement for a mobile phone

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Settings ► Manage Internet settings
- ► Highlight a mobile phone.
- ▶ Select 📳.
- ► Select Delete configuration.
- ► Select Yes.

## **Connecting to the Internet**

Read the conditions for establishing a connection (> page 183).

A connection can be established by:

- entering a web address (> page 187)
- calling up a Mercedes-Benz App
   (▷ page 186)
- calling up a favourite (▷ page 188)
- ► To cancel the connection: select Cancel in the connections window.

#### **Connection status**

#### Connection status overview



① Display of existing connection and signal strength of the communication module or the connected Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> device

### Displaying the connection status

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Internet ► Settings
- ► Select Connection status.
- When connecting via Wi-Fi or a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> device, the approximate data volume transferred is displayed. Precise data can be obtained from your mobile phone network provider.

## Calling up Mercedes-Benz apps

Requirements

- Register to use the Mercedes-Benz Apps.
- $\bullet$  Confirm the general terms and conditions.

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Te1/ ► ► Mercedes-Benz Apps
- ► Select an app.
- 1 The available features are country-dependent. Licence fees may be applicable.

#### Web browser

## Calling up the web browser

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: → 🌑 ►> www
- ► Audio 20: Te1/ ►> www
- ▶ Enter a web address.
- ► To finish entry and call up a website: select OK.
- Websites cannot be shown while the vehicle is in motion.

#### Web browser overview



- (1) Close the browser
- (2) Back/forwards
- (3) Update/cancel
- (4) URL entry
- (5) Favourites
- (6) Close the window (COMAND Online)
- (7) Disconnect
- (8) Options

# Calling up COMAND Online web browser options

In order to be able to use this function, the cursor must be on a link.

#### Opening in a new window

- 1 In order to be able to use this function, the cursor must be on a link.
- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- ► Select .
- ► Select Open in new window.

  The website is opened in a new window.

#### Adding to bookmarks

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- ▶ Select 🔳.
- ► Select Add to bookmarks.

  The website is added to bookmarks.

#### Current URL

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- ► Select .
- ► Select Current URL.
  The web address (URL) appears.

#### Zoom

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- Select .
  The dot indicates the current setting.
- The dot indicates the current sett
- ► Select Zoom.
- ► To navigate on the web page: slide the controller ←(○) →, ↑(○) ↓ or ∑(○) €.
- ► To zoom in on the web page: turn the controller.

### Jumping from link to link

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- Select .
  The dot indicates the current setting.
- ▶ Select Jump from link to link.
- ➤ To jump from link to link: turn the controller.
- ➤ To select the desired link: press the controller.

The link is called up.

#### **Directional scrolling**

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button.
- ► Select .

The • dot indicates the current setting.

► Select Directional scrolling.

If a website has been called up and the controller is turned, the cursor moves up or down depending on the direction of rotation.

## Calling up Audio 20 web browser options

#### Adding to bookmarks

- ▶ Press button 🛨.
- ▶ Select 🗐.
- ► Select Add to bookmarks.

  The website is added to bookmarks.

#### **Current URL**

- ▶ Press button 🛨.
- ▶ Select 📳 .
- ► Select Current URL.
  The web address (URL) appears.

#### Zoom

- ▶ Press button 🛨 .
- ► Select 📳.

The • dot indicates the current setting.

- ► Select Zoom.
- ► To navigate on the web page: slide the controller ← →, † ↓ or こ○ 【.
- ► To zoom in on the web page: turn the controller.

### Jumping from link to link

- ▶ Press button 🛨 .
- ▶ Select 📳.

The • dot indicates the current setting.

- ▶ Select Jump from link to link.
- ► To jump from link to link: turn the controller.
- ► To select the desired link: press the controller.

## The link is called up. Directional scrolling

- ▶ Press button 🛨 .
- ► Select 📳.

The • dot indicates the current setting.

Select Directional scrolling. If a website has been called up and the controller is turned, the cursor moves up or down depending on the direction of rotation.

## Calling up web browser settings

- ▶ Press button 🛨 .
- ► Audio 20: select 📳. A menu appears.
- ► Select Settings.

The following functions are listed:

- Download images automatically
- Block popups
- Enable Javascript
- Enable cookies

- Enable Internet audio (COMAND Online)
- Hide the scroll bar (COMAND Online)
- Show link target
- Character size
- Character code

## **Deleting the Internet history**

Multimedia system:

- ► Audio 20: Tel/ ► Settings
- ► Select Delete private data.

  A menu appears. The dot indicates the current setting.

The following options are listed:

- A11
- Cache
- Cookies
- Websites visited
- ▶ Select an option.

or

► Switch Delete all data on exiting on 
✓ or off □.

## Setting Internet favourites

Multimedia system:

- ► COMAND Online: ¬→ ●
- ► Audio 20: —— Te1/@

#### Setting a bookmark

- ▶ Select www.
- ► Enter the web address (URL) and name using the character bar and press oκ.
- ► To set a bookmark: press the 🛨 button.
- ► COMAND Online: select .
- ▶ Audio 20: select 📳.
- ► Select Add to bookmarks (> page 187).

### Selecting a bookmark

- ► Select My Internet bookmarks.
- ▶ Select a bookmark.

## **Editing bookmarks**

- ► Select My Internet bookmarks.
- ► Select the bookmark.
- ▶ COMAND Online: select Edit.

- ▶ Audio 20: select 📳.
- ► Audio 20: select Edit. An input menu appears.
- ► Enter a web address (URL) and a name using the character bar.

#### Deleting a bookmark

- ► Select My Internet bookmarks.
- ▶ Select a bookmark.
- ► Select Delete.
- ► Select Yes.

### Closing the browser

▶ In the browser menu, select 🛨 (⊳ page 187).

or

- ▶ Press the 🛨 button for longer than two A prompt appears, asking whether you want to close the Internet browser.
- ► Select Yes.

#### Media

#### Information on media mode



#### **↑** WARNING

If you handle a disc while driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation. This could also cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Only handle a disc when the vehicle is stationary.

#### Permissible file systems:

- ISO 9660/Joliet standard for CD data carriers
- COMAND Online: UDF for video DVD data
- FAT16, FAT32, exFAT and NTFS for SD card and USB storage media

#### Permissible data carriers:

- CD audio, CD-R and CD-RW
- COMAND Online: DVD-R, DVD-V and DVD-RW
- SD card
- USB storage media

1 Up to 50,000 supported files can be managed by the multimedia system.

#### Supported formats:

- MP3
- WMA
- CDA
- AAC formats
- Playback cannot be always be guaranteed due to the wide variety of music files available, as regards encoders, sampling frequencies and data rates.
- 1 It cannot be guaranteed that all USB devices can be played back due to the wide variety of USB devices available.
- Copy-protected music files or DRM encrypted files cannot be played back.
- MP3 players must support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

#### Audio mode

## Inserting or removing a CD/DVD **COMAND Online**

- ▶ To insert: press the 🛕 button. If there is a data carrier already inserted, it will be eiected.
- ▶ Insert the data carrier into the disc slot with the printed side facing upwards. If the CD or DVD mode is started in the media menu, the corresponding menu will be shown. If the CD or DVD is started using another application (e.g. navigation), the display will not change.
- 1 The drive may not be able to play data carriers with copy protection.
- ▶ To remove: press the △ button.

## Inserting and removing a CD (Audio 20)

- ▶ To insert: press the 🛕 button. If there is a data carrier already inserted, it will be ejected.
- ▶ Insert the data carrier into the disc slot with the printed side facing upwards. If media playback is switched on, it is interrupted and the CD basic menu appears. If

- another function is in use (e.g. navigation) the display is not switched.
- 1 The drive may not be able to play data carriers with copy protection.
- ▶ To remove: press the  $\triangle$  button.

### **Gracenote Media Database**



Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and lettering are brands or registered brands of Gracenote, Inc. in the USA and/or other countries.

There is a version of Gracenote music recognition technology, Emeryville, California, USA on the multimedia system hard disk. You will recognise this by the logo in the bottom right-hand corner of certain displays. If the audio CD does not contain any CD text information, the multimedia system can use the Gracenote Media Database to identify unknown audio tracks when in CD mode.

The Update metadata via Internet option allows any missing metadata for an audio CD (e.g. cover, track, album, artist) to be uploaded retrospectively to the internal Gracenote database.

An Internet connection is required for this  $(\triangleright page 186)$ .

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬** Media **>>** Options
- ► Select Update metadata via Internet. A connection with the Gracenote server is established. The missing data is loaded, saved and displayed in the media display. If there is no data found or there is no Internet connection, a corresponding error message appears.

## Inserting and removing an SD card



SD cards are small parts. They can be swallowed and cause choking. This poses an increased risk of injury or even fatal injury.

Keep the SD card out of the reach of children. If a SD card is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.

If the SD card is no longer in use, you should take it out and remove it from the vehicle. High temperatures can damage the card.

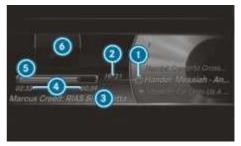
#### Inserting

► Insert the SD card into the SD card slot until it engages. The side with the contacts must face towards the driver. Music files that are supported are played back.

#### Removing

- ▶ Press the SD card.
- ▶ Remove the SD card.

#### Audio mode overview



- 1) Track display on the data carrier
- Track number and number of songs in the track list
- (3) Artist and album name
- (4) Numerical time display
- (5) Graphic time display
- (6) Cover display (if available)

### Connecting a USB device

There are two USB ports located in the stowage compartment under the control panel.

- Connect a USB device to the USB port. When the corresponding media menu is switched on, supported music files will be played back.
- MP3 players must support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

## Selecting a track

#### Skipping a track

► In the media menu, turn or briefly slide the controller ○→ or ←○.

#### Using the current track list

- ► In the menu, press the controller. The category list appears.
- ► Select the current track list.
- ► Select the required track.

## Selecting playback options

Multimedia system:

▶ **¬** Media **>>** Options

### COMAND Online: play back similar tracks

Select Play similar tracks. A track list with similar tracks is being created and played back.

#### Play mode

- ► Select Play mode.
- ► Select Normal track sequence.

  The current tracklist is played in the order it appears on the data medium.
- Select Random track list. The current track list is played in random order.
- Select Random medium.
  All tracks on the data medium are played in random order.

## Pause and playback function

- ► To pause playback: in audio/video mode, slide () the controller.
- ► Select II in the media menu bar. Playback is interrupted here. The display changes to ►.
- ➤ To continue playback: in audio or video mode, slide ○↓ the controller.

  The media menu bar appears.
- ➤ Select ► in the media menu bar.
  Playback is continued from the point of interruption. The display changes to Ⅱ .

#### Media search

Multimedia system:

▶ **¬→** Media **>>** Search

Depending on the connected media sources and files, the following categories are listed:

- Current track list
- Folder
- Select by cover
- Keyword search
- Playlists
- Artists
- Albums
- Tracks
- Genres (Audio 20)
- Genres (COMAND Online)
- Year
- Composers
- Videos (COMAND Online)
- Photos
- Podcasts
- Audiobooks

#### Media interface

#### Information on Media Interface

Media Interface is a universal interface for connecting mobile audio and video devices. The multimedia system has two USB ports.

The USB ports are located in the stowage compartment under the armrest (> page 81).

## Supported devices

You can connect the following data carriers via the Media Interface:

- iPod<sup>®</sup>
- iPhone<sup>®</sup>
- iPad<sup>®</sup>
- MP3 player
- USB devices

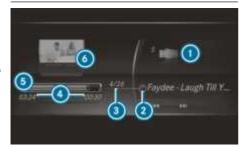
For details and a list of supported devices, visit the at website http://www.mercedesbenz.com/connect. Then, follow the instructions in the "Media Interface" section.

## Switching to Media Interface

- ► Connect a data medium to USB port 1 or USB port 2.
- Select the basic menu for Media Interface 1 or Media Interface 2.
  If playable media files are found, these will be played by the multimedia system.
  If you remove a device, the No device

If you remove a device, the No device connected message appears.

#### Media Interface overview



- ① Display for the active data medium
- 2 Track display on the data carrier
- Track number and number of songs in the track list
- 4 Numerical time display
- ⑤ Graphic time display
- 6 Cover display (if available)

#### Bluetooth® audio

#### Information on Bluetooth® audio

Before using your Bluetooth® audio device with the multimedia system for the first time, you will need to authorise it (> page 192).

# Searching for and authorising Bluetooth® audio equipment

#### Requirements

 Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is activated on the multimedia system (> page 149). Check the following Bluetooth® audio device (see the manufacturer's operating instructions):

- The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> audio device must support the A2DP and AVRCP Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> audio profiles.
- The Bluetooth® device name is predetermined but can usually be changed. To make a clear selection of the Bluetooth® device possible, Mercedes-Benz recommends that you customise the device name (see the Bluetooth® audio device's operating instructions).
- The Bluetooth® audio device must be "visible" for other devices.

#### Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Media **>>** Bluetooth audio
- ► COMAND Online: select Connect device.
- ► Audio 20: select Options.
- ► Audio 20: select Bluetooth audio devi-
- ► Select Search for audio devices. A message appears.
- ► Select Start search.

  The multimedia system searches for Bluetooth® audio devices within range and adds them to the Bluetooth® device list.
- ► Select the Bluetooth® audio device.

#### **Option 1: Secure Simple Pairing**

A code is displayed in the multimedia system and on the mobile phone (> page 166).

► If the codes are identical, confirm this on the Bluetooth® audio device.

## Option 2: enter the passkey

The input menu for the passkey is displayed (⊳ page 166).

## Activating Bluetooth® audio

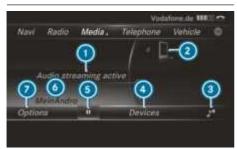
Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Media
- ► Select Bluetooth audio in the menu. If the Bluetooth® audio device has already been authorised, the multimedia system activates the Bluetooth® audio device. The main menu (> page 193) then appears. Playback starts.

When the No Bluetooth audio device connected message appears, you will need

to first authorise the Bluetooth® audio device (▷ page 192).

### Bluetooth® audio overview



- Audio transmission status (depending on the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> audio device, also track name and artist)
- (2) Data carrier position in the media list
- ③ Sound settings
- (4) Device list
- ⑤ To pause or start playback
- Name of the connected Bluetooth® audio device (example)
- (7) Menu options

# De-authorising (de-registering) Bluetooth® audio equipment

- ► Select the Bluetooth® audio device in the Bluetooth® device list.
- ► Select 📳.
- ► Select De-authorise.
- Select Yes. The device will be deleted from the Bluetooth® device list.

#### **DVD mode (COMAND Online)**

## **DVD** playback criteria

The multimedia system can play back video DVDs produced according to the following standards:

- Region code 2 (for Europe and Japan) or region code 0 (no region code)
- PAL or NTSC standard

You will generally find the relevant details either on the DVD itself or on the DVD case.

With DVDs that do not meet the standard requirements, you may encounter playback problems.

- Observe the following notes:
  - It is also possible to play video DVDs with a different region code, provided that they are produced in accordance with the PAL or NTSC standard. If you insert a video DVD with a different region code, a message to this effect appears.
  - If a DVD cannot be played back according to national colour transfer methods (PAL or NTSC standards), there may be problems with the image, sound or playback.

## **DVD** control options

There are four control menus available in DVD mode.

Most DVDs have their own control menu. The DVD control menu is operated directly using the controller or DVD functions.

Control menu and function	Operation
DVD control menu Selection of title, scene, language, subtitles	Operation with the controller
Menu Options     Selection of     brightness, contrast, colour, format, video settings	Operation via the menu bar Options
<ul> <li>Video menu</li> <li>Scene selection,</li> <li>fast forward or</li> <li>rewind</li> </ul>	In full screen mode, slide the controller
DVD functions     Selection of title,     scene, language,     subtitles	In full screen mode, press the controller

### Switching on DVD mode

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Media
- ▶ Insert a DVD (▷ page 189).

#### DVD full screen mode

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Media
- ▶ Slide the controller †⊙. The main function bar and menu bar are faded out. A full-screen symbol is displayed.
- ▶ Press the controller. The full screen mode appears.

## Making video settings

Multimedia system:



The following image formats are available on the current DVD:

- Automatic
- 16:9
- 4:3
- Zoom
- ▶ Select an image format.

## Dynamic image enhancement

► Switch Dynamic image enhancement on ✓ or off □.

#### Manual image enhancement

- ► Select Brightness, Contrast or Colour. A sliding menu appears.
- ▶ Set the value.

#### Video menu

#### Video menu overview



- Type of data carrier
- ② Current track
- To show the menu bars for the DVD basic display

- (4) Current scene
- Track time

## Operating the video menu

- ► To show the video menu: in full screen video mode, slide the controller ○↓.
- ► To hide the video menu: slide the controller †○.
- ➤ To select the next or previous scene: turn the controller clockwise/anti-clockwise.
- ➤ To fast forward or rewind: slide the controller () → or ←() and hold it until the desired position has been reached.
- ➤ To show the menu bars for the DVD basic display: press the controller.

  The video menu is hidden and the DVD basic display appears.

#### **DVD functions**

#### Overview of DVD functions



- 1 Activates DVD control menu
- ② Hides DVD functions
- (3) Shows the DVD basic display
- (4) Confirms entry in control menu
- (5) Navigates DVD lists
- (6) lumps to the start of the scene
- (7) Displays camera perspectives
- (8) Shows subtitles
- Selects language
- (10) Stop function
- (11) Pause function

## Showing/hiding DVD functions

- ► To activate: in full screen video mode, press the controller.

  The DVD functions many appears
  - The DVD functions menu appears.
- ▶ To hide: select 🖃 in the DVD functions.
- ► To show the DVD basic display:

Select from the DVD functions.

## Using the DVD functions

- ► In full screen mode, press the controller. The DVD functions menu appears.
  - It is possible to navigate in the DVD control menu when the arrows in the upper menu bar are activated.
- ➤ Select an ←↑ ↓ → arrow to navigate in the menu.

The active arrow is highlighted.

- Select a menu item. The next menu item in the direction of the arrow is highlighted.
- ► Turn the controller until **OK** is highlighted.
- ▶ Press the controller. The selected DVD scene is played.
- ► To hide DVD functions: select =.

#### Picture viewer

#### General notes

If there are pictures on the data medium, you can view them on the multimedia system.

The following data medium and image formats are supported:

- Data medium: Media Register (COMAND Online), DVD (COMAND Online), CD, USB devices, SD cards
- Image formats: JPEG, JPG, BMP, PNG

The maximum image resolution is 20 megapixels.

COMAND Online: it is not possible to view a picture while the vehicle is in motion.

Audio 20: it is not possible to view a picture which the vehicle is in motion.

## Displaying pictures

- ► In media mode, slide the controller ⊙↓.
- ► Select Search.
  The category list appears.
- Select Photos. A directory list appears. The folders and picture files can be shown.
- ► Select a folder or picture.
- COMAND Online: you can search for images on other data media (⊳ page 195).

## Searching for pictures on other data carriers (COMAND Online)

- ► In the directory list, slide the controller •(○).
  - The device list appears.
- Select a data carrier with image files. A directory list appears. The folders and picture files can be shown.
- ► Select a folder or picture.

## Starting and stopping a slide show

- ➤ To start a slide show: while viewing a picture, press the controller.

  The image menu appears.
- ► Select Start slideshow.
- ► To end the slide show: press the controller.

The image menu appears.

▶ Select End slide show.

## Changing the picture view

- ► Press the controller.
  The image menu appears.
- ► Select Turn clockwise.
  The picture rotates 90 degrees.
- ► Select Turn anticlockwise. The picture rotates 90 degrees.
- ► Select Zoom in.

  The size of the picture increases.

  After you have zoomed into the picture, you can move the section of the picture.
- ► Move the section of the picture by sliding †() and sliding •() the controller.
- ► Revert to the original size by pressing the controller.

or

▶ Press button 🛨 .

## Closing the picture viewer

- ► While viewing a picture, press the controller. The menu appears.
- ► Select Close picture viewer.

  The multimedia system returns to the last accessed media function.

#### Radio

### Switching the radio on

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬**→ Radio
- ► Alternatively: press the RADIO button. The Radio menu appears. You will hear the last station set on the frequency range selected last.

#### Radio overview



- 1) Display for the selected radio station
- ② Main display field with available stations and relevant information

## Setting the waveband

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Radio
- ▶ Press the controller.

A menu with a choice of FM radio or FM/DAB radio, AM radio, Radio station presets and Information on radio is displayed.

▶ Select a waveband.

## Selecting a radio station

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Radio
- ▶ In radio mode, turn the controller.
- ► Select a station.

If the station provides relevant information, the title of the current programme appears below the station name. You can see a time line with a progress bar beside the station name.

### Calling up the radio station list

Multimedia system:

- ► **Radio** ► Options
- ► Select Current station list with EPG.

### Searching for radio stations

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Radio **>>** Options
- ► Select Direct entry.

  An additional menu appears.
- ► FM radio mode: select the FM/DAB frequency or FM frequency option.
- ► Enter a frequency.
- SW/MW radio mode: select the AM frequency option.
- ► Enter a frequency.
- ► Station presets: select the Radio station presets option.
- ► Enter the station preset of the desired station.

### Storing a radio station

Multimedia system:

- ▶ ¬→ Radio ▶> Preset
- ► Select Save current station.
- ► Select the position of the desired memory entry.
- ► Select the Edit station preset option.
- ► Select the position of the memory entry.

  This can also be a preset that is currently occupied which is overwritten by the current station.
- ► Slide the controller ⊙ →.
  An additional menu appears.
- Select Save current station. The currently set station is stored in the selected position. A tone confirms that the memory entry has been saved.

## Editing the radio station presets

Multimedia system:

- ► ¬→ Radio ►> Preset ►> Edit station preset
- ► Select an entry.
- ► Slide the controller (○) →.

### Deleting a station

- ➤ Select Delete highlighted station/ channel.
- ► Select Yes.

#### Moving a station

- Select Move highlighted station/channel.
- ► Move the highlighted station to the new position.

## Frequency fix function

Multimedia system:

Radio ▶> Options ▶> Station tracking

Select Fix frequency. The multimedia system maintains the set frequency, even when reception is poor.

### Tagging music tracks

If broadcasters render the corresponding information, using this function you can transmit the information on the music track currently being played back to an Apple<sup>®</sup> device. You can then purchase the audio files in the iTunes Store<sup>®</sup>.

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Radio **>>** Options
- ► Select Tag this track.
  The track information is stored.

## Setting traffic announcements

Multimedia system:

- ▶ **¬→** Radio **>>** Options **>>**
- ▶ Switch TA on or off when the traffic announcements are switched on, the TA symbol appears in the status bar.

## Switching radio text on and off

Multimedia system:

- ► **¬** Radio
- ► Select Info.

If the station supports this function, additional information will be displayed.

If available, the following information is displayed:

- the station abbreviation
- the track currently playing
- · the artist of the track currently playing
- information about the current programme
- the hotline number for the station or latest headlines

#### Sound

#### Sound settings

### Calling up the sound menu

You can select various sound settings for the different audio and video sources. The respective sound menu can be called up from the menu of the desired mode.

- In media mode, slide the controller ⊙↓. The menu bar appears.
- ➤ Select in the menu bar. A menu with the last called up setting appears.

Sound menu overview

Function	Options
Equaliser	Settings: treble, mid- range and bass
Balance and fader	Moves the sound focus: right or left and front or rear

## Setting treble, mid-range and bass

- ► Call up the sound menu (> page 197).
- ► Select Equaliser.
- ➤ Slide the controller ○↓.

  The rotary menus for treble, mid-range and bass are activated.
- ► Adjust a setting.

## Adjusting the balance/fader

- ► Call up the sound menu (> page 197).
- ► Select Balance/Fader.
- ▶ Slide the controller ⊙↓.

- ► Press the controller.

  The rotary menus for balance and fader are activated.
- ► Adjust the balance and fader settings.

#### **Overview**

Vehicles with COMAND Online: the LINGUA-TRONIC voice control system allows you to operate the following systems, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

- Telephone
- Navigation
- · Address book
- Audio equipment (radio, CD/DVD player, memory card, hard drive, Media Interface, USB, Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> audio)
- TV and video

Vehicles with Audio 20 and Garmin® MAP PILOT: you can only operate the Garmin® MAP PILOT navigation system.

1 You can find further information in the manufacturer's Supplement.

## Operation with steering-wheel buttons

LINGUATRONIC is operational approximately thirty seconds after the ignition is switched on.

<u>}</u> ,	Starts the dialogue with LIN-GUATRONIC
OFF &	Ends the dialogue with LIN- GUATRONIC
	Reduces the volume during voice output
+	Increases the volume during voice output
<b>A</b>	Mute function

## Voice prompting

mand.

- ► To start a dialogue: press the 3 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

  After a tone has sounded, you may say a voice command.
- ➤ To correct an entry: say the voice command Correction.

  You will be prompted to say a new com-

- ► To select an entry from the selection list: say the line number or what it contains.
- ► To browse the selection list: say the Continue or Back voice commands.

You can interrupt LINGUATRONIC at any time by saying the voice command Pause. You can cancel LINGUATRONIC by saying the voice command Cancel or by pressing the office button on the multifunction steering wheel. To continue or restart the dialogue, press the outton on the multifunction steering wheel.

Say the voice commands without pausing between individual words. If you enter a non-existent voice command, LINGUATRONIC responds with:

- please repeat.or
- please repeat your entry.

LINGUATRONIC confirms when you enter important voice commands and informs you when you make an ambiguous entry.

### **Command types**

A distinction is made between the following types of voice command in LINGUATRONIC:

- global voice commands can be called up at any time, e.g. the Help telephone or Help navigation voice command.
- local voice commands are only available for the active application, e.g. Next station, when the radio is on or Next track, when the CD/DVD is active.
- voice commands that can be used in a dialogue, e.g. Yes or OK.

You can operate more than one application at a time. When the navigation and radio applications are active, for example, you can use both applications simultaneously.

## **Entering digits and letters**

### To enter digits:

- Digits from zero to nine are permissible.
- Say phone numbers as blocks of digits with three to five digits per block.

#### To spell out:

- The letters of the alphabet and the digits zero to nine are permissible.
- Say the letters in a block of five to seven letters.
- Say each letter clearly.

## Changing the language setting

You can change the LINGUATRONIC language by changing the system language.

The following languages are available for LIN-GUATRONIC:

- Czech
- Danish
- German
- English
- Spanish
- French
- Italian
- Dutch
- Polish
- Portuguese
- Swedish
- Turkish

If you choose a system language other than the ones listed above, English is used for LIN-GUATRONIC.

- ▶ Press button .
  The vehicle menu appears.
- ▶ Select System settings by sliding ○↓, turning and pressing the controller. A menu appears.
- SelectLanguage by turning and pressing the controller.
- ► Select the desired language.

## **Help functions**

## **Audible help functions**

- For information on ideal operation: say the Help voice control voice command.

- For continued dialogue: say the Help voice command during a voice dialogue.
- For a specific system: say the help voice command for the desired system, e.g. Help telephone.

#### Help window

You can use the help window to display a selection of valid voice commands on the display. The voice commands are hidden as soon as you start to speak.

- ► To switch the help window on or off: press the button. The vehicle menu appears.
- ► Select System settings by sliding ○↓, turning and pressing the controller. A menu appears.
- SelectLinguatronic by turning and pressing the controller.
- ► Select Help window.
- ▶ Switch the help window on 🗹 or off 🗌.

## Improving voice recognition

## If LINGUATRONIC does not understand you:

- only operate LINGUATRONIC from the driver's seat.
- state the voice commands coherently and clearly without exaggerating.
- prevent loud noises, e.g. the fan, from interfering while you make an entry.
- say the voice tag with the same intonation both times when creating voice tags.

#### An address book entry is not recognised:

- ensure that the address book entries make sense, e.g. that first name and surname are listed in the correct field.
- do not use any abbreviations, unnecessary spaces or special characters.
- create a speaker-dependent voice tag, if necessary.
- say the Read out contacts voice command.
- press the ) button on the multifunction steering wheel when the name you want is read out.

### If a station list entry is not recognised:

- save a speaker-dependent voice tag for the station.
- Say the Read out station list voice command.
- press the 3 button on the multifunction steering wheel when the station you want is read out.

#### Individualisation

#### Overview

Using individualisation, you can fine tune LIN-GUATRONIC to your own voice and thus improve voice recognition.

Individualisation can only be started when the vehicle is stationary. After starting the session, the system guides you through the training with spoken instructions.

i) If individualisation is activated, it may affect the voice-recognition quality of other users. If individualisation impairs the voice-recognition quality of other users, switch it off.

Individualisation comprises two parts. You train the system to recognise digits in the first part and specific commands in the second part.

The system can be reset to the factory settings at any time.

1 Individualisation does not need to be completed in full. Even training in the digits will result in a significant improvement in the recognition rate. The training can be stopped after the first part.

## Starting new individualisation

- ► Press button .
  The vehicle menu appears.
- ▶ Select System settings by sliding ○↓, turning and pressing the controller. A menu appears.
- ► Select Linguatronic by turning and pressing the controller.
- Select Start new individualisation. You will see and hear a prompt asking whether you would like further information.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
  - If you select No the first part of individualisation begins.
  - If you select Yes you will see and hear more information.

At the end of the first part, a prompt will appear asking whether you wish to begin the second part.

- ► Select Yes or No.
  - If you select No individualisation will be cancelled. The data from the first part is stored automatically.
  - If you select Yes the second part will begin.

Individualisation is completed at the end of the second part.

You can cancel individualisation using Cancel or delete using Delete individualisation and switch on or off using Individualisation on.

#### **Commands**

## Telephone commands

Voice command	Function
Help telephone	Reads out essential telephone voice commands
Dial number	Dialling a phone number
Save number	Saves a phone number in the address book with a speaker-dependent voice tag
Call <name></name>	Places a call by selecting a name from the address book

Voice command	Function
Read out phone book	Reads out all the address book entries with phone numbers
Redial number	Dials last dialled phone number
Outgoing calls	Displays last dialled phone numbers
Incoming calls	Displays last incoming calls
Messages	Switches to message view in the phone (text message/e-mail)
Reply	Replies to messages (text message/e-mail) displayed
New message	Composes a new message (text message/e-mail)
Send message	Sends a message (text message/e-mail)
Forward message	Forwards a message (text message/e-mail)

### **Navigation commands**

### Notes on navigation

The navigation system cannot take the prevailing traffic situation into account or recognise any dangers or obstacles. You must therefore be constantly aware of the prevailing road and traffic conditions so that you can recognise any dangers and react to them.

Navigation messages should guide you during the journey without distracting you from traffic conditions or driving. Always use this function as a guide instead of the map view. Looking at the symbols or the map view can distract you from traffic conditions or driving.

Route guidance only provides recommendations. You must always comply with the national road traffic regulations and adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions.

#### General voice commands

Voice command	Function
Help	Reads out essential navigation voice commands
Route information	Reads out information on distance and travel time
Switch off guidance instructions / Switch on guidance instructions	Switches route guidance voice output off or on
Мар	Activates or switches to map display
Zoom in / Zoom out	Zooms in on or zooms out of map display
Switch on POI symbols	Displays POI symbols on the map
Read out traffic mes- sages	Reads out RDS-TMC traffic reports

## **Entering an address**

Voice command	Function
Enter country	Changes country setting
Enter town in <country></country>	Enters town in a country
Enter destination	Enters town, street and house number of a destination, depending on country
Enter town	Enters towns from the selected country
Enter district	Enters district of the selected town
Correction	Repeats last entry
Enter postcode	Enters postcode
Enter street	Enters street name of a previously selected town
Enter junction	Enters names of intersecting streets
Enter house number	Enters house number of a previously selected street
Points of interest	Selects points of interest
Last destinations	Selects destination from the list of previous destinations
Save destination	Saves current destination to address book
Set intermediate des- tination	Sets up to four intermediate destinations when route guidance is active
Save intermediate des- tination	Saves a set intermediate destination when route guidance is active
Delete intermediate destination	Deletes saved intermediate destinations when route guidance is active
Delete all intermedi- ate destinations	Deletes all saved intermediate destinations when route guidance is active
Show intermediate des- tination list	Displays an overview of the intermediate destinations set and the final destination
Search for address	Selects an address saved in the address book and starts route guidance
Navigate to <name></name>	Selects a name saved in the address book and starts route guidance
Read out destination memory	Reads out address book entries with a saved destination address
Start route guidance	Starts route guidance after entering a valid destination
Cancel route guidance	Cancels route guidance
Alternative route	Switches route guidance to another route

Address book commands	
Voice command	Function
Help address book	Reads out essential address book voice commands
Search for address	Searches for an address in the address book
Search for contact	Searches for names in the address book
Delete contact	Deletes the voice tag of an address book entry
Read out contacts	Has all name entries and voice tags in the address book read out
Delete address book	Deletes individual voice tags or all the voice tags in the address book
Open <name></name>	Opens any address book entry

Radio commands	
Voice command	Function
Help radio	Reads out essential radio voice commands
FM/AM	Selects a receiver range
Next station/Previ- ous station	Switches to the next receivable station
Frequency/Point/Mega- hertz	Selects radio frequencies within the FM range directly
Save stations	Assigns a voice tag to the station currently selected
Preset <1-99>	Calls up a previously saved station using its preset number
Select station	Calls up receivable or saved station
Station <station name=""></station>	Calls up receivable or saved station
Read out station list	Has the names of all receivable stations read out
Delete station	Deletes a single voice tag from your station list
Delete station list	Deletes all voice tags or a single voice tag from your station list
Traffic information on/Traffic information off	Switches traffic announcements on or off

## Media mode commands

## CD/DVD and MP3 mode

Voice command	Function
Help Audio CD/Help DVD/Help MP3	Reads out essential media voice commands
CD player	Starts CD
DVD	Starts DVD
MP3	Starts MP3 player
Track 1- 999	Selects track number from the active media source
Next track	Selects the next track
Previous track	Repeats the started track or repeats the previous track if the current track has only been played momentarily
Next chapter	Selects the next chapter if the inserted DVD is divided into chapters
Previous chapter	Repeats started chapter or repeats the previous chapter if the current chapter has only been played momentarily

## **External devices**

Voice command	Function
Help Media Interface	Reads out essential Media Interface voice commands
Help USB	Reads out the USB voice commands
Media Interface	Calls up a device connected to the Media Interface
USB	Changes to USB storage medium
Bluetooth audio	Switches to an external Bluetooth® audio device
iPod	Switches to iPod® if it is connected to Media Interface
Memory card	Switches to SD card

## Music search commands

Voice command	Function
Help search for music	Reads out essential music search voice commands
Search for music	Starts a music search
Search for album	Searches for an album
Search for artist	Searches for an artist
Search for composer	Searches for a composer

Voice command	Function
Search for year	Searches for a track from a specific year
Search for genre	Searches for a track from a specific music genre
Search for track	Searches for a specific track
Search for playlist	Searches for a specific playlist
Free music search	Combines the categories of artist, album, track or composer
Music information on/ Music information off	Displays or hides saved track information
Random playback on/ Random playback off	Activates or deactivates random playback

## ASSYST PLUS service interval display

# Function of the service interval display

The service interval display informs you in the instrument display of the distance remaining until the next service due date.

You can hide the service message with the button on the steering wheel.

You can obtain information concerning the servicing of your vehicle from a qualified specialist workshop, e.g. a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

### Displaying the service due date

On-board computer:

- ► Service ► ASSYST PLUS
  The next service due date is displayed.
- ► To leave the display: press the \_\_\_\_ button on the steering wheel.

Make sure you observe the following further related topic:

 Operating the on-board computer (> page 139)

## Special service requirements

The prescribed service interval is based on normal vehicle use. Maintenance work will need to be performed more often than prescribed if the vehicle is operated under arduous conditions or increased loads.

For example, maintenance work has to be performed more often than prescribed in the following cases:

- regular city driving with frequent intermediate stops
- driving predominantly short distances
- frequent operation in mountainous terrain or on poor road surfaces
- leaving the engine idling for long periods on a frequent basis
- in particularly dusty conditions, or if airrecirculation mode is frequently used

In these or similar operating conditions, have the interior filter, engine air cleaner, engine oil and oil filter, for example, changed more frequently. If the vehicle is subjected to higher loads, the tyres must be checked more frequently. You can obtain further information at a qualified specialist workshop.

## **Battery disconnection periods**

The ASSYST PLUS service interval display can only calculate the service due date when the battery is connected.

▶ Note down the service due date displayed on the instrument display before disconnecting the battery (▷ page 207).

## **Engine compartment**

## Opening and closing the bonnet

## **MARNING**

An unlocked bonnet may open up when the vehicle is in motion and block your view. There is a risk of an accident.

Never unlock the bonnet when driving. Before every trip, ensure that the bonnet is locked.

## **↑** WARNING

When being opened and closed, the bonnet may suddenly fall into the closed position. There is a risk of injury to persons in the range of movement of the bonnet.

Open and close the bonnet only when nobody is in the range of movement.

## **⚠ WARNING**

If you open the bonnet while the engine is overheating or while there is a fire in the engine compartment, you could come into contact with hot gases or other leaking service products. There is a danger of injury.

Allow an overheating engine to cool down before opening the bonnet. If there is a fire in the engine compartment, leave the bonnet closed and notify the fire brigade.

## **↑** WARNING

There are moving components in the engine compartment. Certain components may continue to move or suddenly move again even after the ignition has been switched off, e.g. the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury.

If you have to carry out work in the engine compartment:

- switch off the ignition
- never touch the dangerous areas surrounding moving components, e.g. the rotation area of the fan
- remove jewellery and watches
- keep items of clothing and hair, for example, away from moving parts.

## **↑** WARNING

The ignition system and the fuel injection system operate with a high voltage. If you touch the live components, you could receive an electric shock. There is a danger of injury.

Never touch components of the ignition system or the fuel injection system when the ignition is switched on.

## **↑** WARNING

Certain components in the engine compartment could be very hot, e.g. the engine, the radiator and parts of the exhaust system. There is a risk of injury when accessing the engine compartment.

As far as possible, allow the engine to cool down and only touch the components described in the following.

If you have to carry out work in the engine compartment, only touch the components described in the following:

- bonnet
- oil dipstick
- engine oil filler neck cap
- · washer fluid reservoir cap
- · coolant expansion tank cap

## ★ WARNING

When the bonnet is open, and the windscreen wipers are set in motion, you can be injured by the wiper linkage. There is a risk of injury.

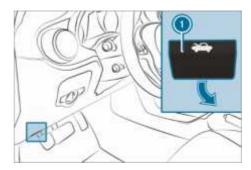
Always switch off the windscreen wipers and the ignition before opening the bonnet.

## **MARNING**

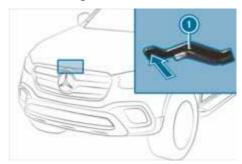
Cloths or other flammable materials left in the engine compartment can ignite if they come into contact with the exhaust system or parts of the engine that heat up. There is a risk of fire. After carrying out maintenance work, make sure that no extraneous flammable material is left in the engine compartment or on the exhaust system.

Make sure that the windscreen wipers are not folded away from the windscreen. Otherwise, you could damage the windscreen wipers or the bonnet.

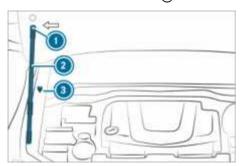
#### Opening the bonnet



▶ Pull handle 1 to unlock the bonnet.



▶ Press the bonnet catch lever (1) to the left.



- ▶ Pull support strut ② out of the retainer ③ and guide it up.
- ► Lower the bonnet such that the support strut (2) glides into recess (1) and the bonnet engages.

## Closing the bonnet

- ► Hold support strut ② and lift the bonnet slightly.
- ► Guide support strut ② towards retainer ③ and apply slight pressure to make it engage.
- ▶ Lower the bonnet and allow it to fall with momentum from a height of approximately
- ▶ If the bonnet can be lifted slightly more, open the bonnet once again and allow it to drop more forcefully so that it engages correctly.

## **Engine oil**

## Checking the engine oil level using the oil dipstick



#### **↑** WARNING

Certain components in the engine compartment could be very hot, e.g. the engine, the radiator and parts of the exhaust system. There is a risk of injury when accessing the engine compartment.

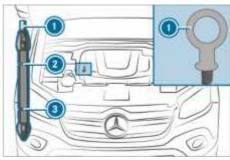
As far as possible, allow the engine to cool down and only touch the components described in the following.

Engine oil gets dirty in the course of operation and its quality and volume are gradually diminished. Regularly check the oil level, and top up or have it replaced as needed.

Depending on the engine, the oil dipstick may be located at different places in the engine compartment.

Waiting time before checking the oil level:

- engine at normal operating temperature: five minutes
- engine not at normal operating temperature (the engine was only started briefly, for example): 30 minutes



Oil dipstick (example)

- ▶ Park the vehicle on an even surface.
- ▶ Pull out and wipe off oil dipstick ①.
- ▶ Slide oil dipstick (1) slowly into the guide tube as far as it will go and pull it out again after three seconds.

The measurement results mean the follow-

- oil level is between (2) and (3): oil level
- oil level is at (3) or below: oil level too
- ▶ If the oil level is too low, add approx. 1 litre engine oil (⊳ page 209).

## Topping up the engine oil



#### **↑** WARNING

If engine oil comes into contact with hot components in the engine compartment, it may ignite. There is a risk of fire and injury.

Make sure that engine oil does not spill out over the filler neck. Allow the engine to cool down and thoroughly clean the components that have come into contact with engine oil before you start the engine.

#### **↑** WARNING

Service product can be poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Observe the instructions on the respective original container when using, storing and disposing off service products. Always store service products in the sealed original container. Always keep service products out of the reach of children.

## **Environmental note**

When topping up the oil, take care not to spill any. If oil enters the soil or waterways, it is harmful to the environment.

- Do not add too much oil. Topping up with too much engine oil can result in damage to the engine or to the catalytic converter. Have excess engine oil siphoned off.
- Do not use any additives with the engine oil. This could damage the engine.



Topping up the engine oil (example)

- ► Turn cap (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.
- 1 Vehicle with engine OM642: When topping up the engine oil, the engine cover must be removed and a funnel must be inserted. To prevent damage to the engine cover, it is recommended to consult a specialist workshop.
- ► Top up the engine oil.
- ▶ Replace cap (1) and turn it clockwise until it engages.
- ► Check the oil level again (> page 209).

For further information on engine oil, see (⊳ page 246).

## Checking the coolant level



#### ♠ WARNING

The cooling system is pressurised, particularly when the motor is warm. If you open the cap, you could be scalded if hot coolant sprays out. There is a risk of injury.

Let the engine cool down before you open the cap. Wear protective gloves and protective eyewear when opening. Open the cap slowly to release pressure.



#### **↑** WARNING

If antifreeze comes into contact with hot components in the engine compartment, it may ignite. There is a risk of fire and injury. Let the engine cool down before you top up the antifreeze. Make sure that antifreeze is not spilled next to the filler neck. Thoroughly clean the antifreeze from components before starting the engine.

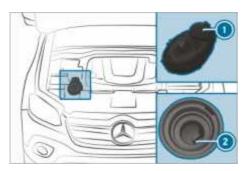
### **↑** WARNING

Service product can be poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Observe the instructions on the respective original container when using, storing and disposing off service products. Always store service products in the sealed original container. Always keep service products out of the reach of children.

- I Check the engine cooling and heating system regularly for leaks.
  - If a large quantity of coolant is lost, have the cause traced and rectified at a qualified specialist workshop.
- I Take care not to spill any coolant on painted surfaces. You could otherwise damage the paintwork.

Coolant contains glycol and is therefore poisonous. Also observe the safety notes under "Service products" (▷ page 242).



- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ► Check the coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster (⊳ page 138). The coolant temperature must be below 50 °C
- ► Turn cap (1) slowly anti-clockwise and allow excess pressure to escape.
- ► Turn cap (1) further anti-clockwise and remove it.

The coolant level is correct if the coolant is at the follow markings:

- up to marker bar 2 when the engine is cold
- up to 1.5 cm above the marker bar (2) when the engine is warm
- ▶ if necessary, refill with coolant approved for Mercedes-Benz.
- ▶ replace cap (1) and tighten in a clockwise direction.

For further information on coolant, see (⊳ page 247).

## Checking the brake fluid level



### **↑** WARNING

Service product can be poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Observe the instructions on the respective original container when using, storing and disposing off service products. Always store service products in the sealed original container. Always keep service products out of the reach of children.

#### **↑** WARNING

The brake fluid continuously absorbs moisture from the air. This results in the boiling

point of the brake fluid lowering. If the boiling point of the brake fluid is too low, vapour pockets may form when the brakes are subjected to a heavy load. This would impair braking efficiency. There is a risk of an acci-

Have the brake fluid renewed at the prescribed intervals.

If the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir has fallen to the minimum mark or less, check the brake system immediately for leaks. Also check the thickness of the brake pads/linings. Visit a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

Do not top up the brake fluid. This does not solve the problem.

Brake fluid corrodes paint, plastic and rubber. If brake fluid comes into contact with paint, plastic or rubber, rinse with water immediately.

Brake fluid is hazardous to health. Also observe the safety notes under "Service products" (⊳ page 242).

Have the brake fluid renewed every two years at a qualified specialist workshop.



The clutch actuation system and the brake system are operated hydraulically using brake fluid.

Check the brake fluid level regularly, e.g. weekly or when refuelling.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on an even surface.
- ► Check the brake fluid level.

  The brake fluid level is adequate if the level is between the MIN mark and MAX mark on brake fluid reservoir ①.
- ► Have the brake fluid refilled at a qualified specialist workshop if the brake fluid level is below the MIN mark.

Further information on brake fluid (▷ page 247).

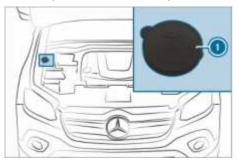
## Refilling the windscreen washer system

## **MARNING**

If windscreen washer concentrate comes into contact with hot components of the engine or the exhaust system, it can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injury.

Make sure the windscreen washer concentrate does not come into contact with the filler neck.

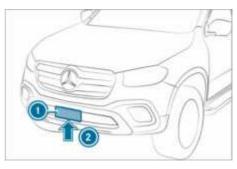
Use only washer fluids that are suitable for lamp lenses, e.g. MB SummerFit or MB WinterFit. Unsuitable washer fluids can damage the lamp lenses of the headlamps.



- ► Remove cap ① by the tab.
- ► Top up the washer fluid.
- ▶ Replace cap ① and press down firmly.

Further information on washer fluid ( $\triangleright$  page 247).

## Notes on attaching the licence plate



## Mounting the licence plate at the front

- ► Fasten the licence plate in the centre on the licence plate bracket (1).
  - Make sure that the licence plate does not protrude over the lower edge ② of the licence plate bracket.
- 1 Do not use an additional licence plate holder to fasten the licence plate.
- To prevent Active Brake Assist malfunctions, fasten the licence plate so it doesn't protrude over the lower edge of the licence plate bracket.

Observe the notes on Active Brake Assist (⊳ page 119).

#### Mounting the licence plate at the rear

- ► Fasten the licence plate in the centre on the licence plate bracket.
  - Make sure that the licence plate does not obscure the cover on the opening for the spare wheel lifter.
  - 1 Do not use an additional licence plate holder to fasten the licence plate.

## Scraping noise when the brake pads are worn

You will hear a scraping noise when the brake pad is worn. It will only be possible to hear the scraping noise when you depress the brake pedal.

You will hear the scraping noise constantly if the brake pad wears down further, even if you do not depress the brake pedal. Have the brakes checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

will help avoid smearing and reduce wiper noise.

### Cleaning and care

### Notes on washing the vehicle in a car wash



### / WARNING

Braking efficiency is reduced after the vehicle has been washed. There is a risk of an accident.

After washing the vehicle, brake carefully while paying attention to the traffic conditions in order to restore full braking efficiency.

Make sure that the automatic car wash is suitable for the size of the vehicle.

Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors and remove any additional aerials. Otherwise, the exterior mirror, aerial or the vehicle itself could be damaged.

Make sure that the exterior mirrors are fully folded out again and that any aerials are refitted when you leave the automatic car wash.

If the windscreen wipers leave smears on the windscreen after the vehicle has been washed in an automatic car wash, this may be due to wax or other residue. Clean the windscreen with washer fluid after an automatic car wash.

To avoid damage to your vehicle, observe the following before using a car wash:

- the 360° camera or the reversing camera is deactivated.
- the side windows and the rear sliding window are completely closed.
- the blower for ventilation and heating is switched off.
- the windscreen wiper switch is in position
- for car washes with a towing system: neutral **N** is engaged.
- Removing the wax from the windscreen and the wiper blades after washing the car,

## Notes on use of a high-pressure cleaner



#### 

The water jet of circular-jet nozzles (dirt grinders) can cause damage not visible from the outside to tyres or chassis components. Components damaged in this way can unexpectedly fail. There is a risk of an accident.

Do not use high-pressure cleaners with circular-jet nozzles to clean the vehicle. Have damaged tyres or chassis components replaced immediately.

Never use a high-pressure cleaner in the vehicle interior. The pressurised water created by the high-pressure cleaner and the associated spray could cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

To avoid damage to your vehicle, observe the following when using a high-pressure cleaner:

- Maintain a minimum distance of 30 cm to the vehicle and observe the information in the equipment manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Do not direct the nozzle of the high-pressure cleaner directly at sensitive parts such as tyres, gaps, electrical components, batteries, light bulbs and ventilation slots.

## Washing the vehicle by hand

Observe the legal requirements, for example in many countries hand washing is only allowed at specially designated washing places.

- ▶ Use a mild cleaning agent, e.g. car shampoo.
- ▶ Wash the vehicle with lukewarm water and a soft car sponge. When doing so, do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight.
- ► Carefully spray the vehicle with water and dry off with a leather cloth. Be careful not to point the water jet directly towards the air inlet.

## Notes on care of paint and matt finish

## Do not affix:

- stickers
- films
- · magnetic plates or similar items

to painted surfaces. You could otherwise damage the paintwork.

Scratches, corrosive deposits, areas affected by corrosion and damage caused by improper care cannot always be completely repaired. In such cases, visit a qualified specialist workshop.

#### **Paint**

- ▶ Remove dirt immediately, where possible, whilst avoiding rubbing too hard.
- ► Soak insect remains with insect remover and then wash off.
- ► Soak bird droppings with water and then wash off.
- ▶ Remove coolant, brake fluid, tree resin, oils, fuels, AdBlue® and greases by rubbing gently with a cloth soaked in petroleum ether or lighter fluid.
- ▶ Use tar remover to remove tar stains.
- ▶ Use silicone remover to remove wax.

#### Matt finish

▶ Wash the vehicle by hand if possible using a soft sponge, car shampoo and a lot of

Do not use car washes too often but if you do, do not use wash programmes with a final hot wax treatment.

- ► Only use care products approved for Mercedes-Benz.
- ▶ Do not polish the vehicle and light-alloy wheels.
- ▶ Do not use paint cleaners, buffing or polishing products, gloss preservers, e.g. wax.
- ► Have paint repairs carried out in a qualified specialist workshop only.

## Notes on the care of vehicle parts



#### ♠ WARNING

If the windscreen wipers are set in motion when cleaning the windscreen or wiper blades, you could become trapped. There is a danger of injury.

Always switch off the windscreen wipers and the ignition before cleaning the windscreen or wiper blades.

#### **↑** WARNING

The exhaust tail pipe and tail pipe trim can become very hot. If you come into contact with these parts of the vehicle, you could burn yourself. There is a risk of burns.

Always be particularly careful and supervise children closely around the exhaust pipe and the exhaust pipe trims. Allow these components to cool down before touching them.

I Only use cleaning agents or cleaning cloths that are suitable for plastic lenses. Corrosive, irritating or other unsuitable cleaning agents or cleaning cloths can scratch or damage the plastic lenses of the exterior lighting.

#### Wheels and rim

- ▶ Use water and acid-free wheel cleaner.
- ▶ Do not use acidic wheel cleaners to remove brake dust. Otherwise, wheel bolts and brake components may be damaged.
- ► To avoid corrosion of brake discs or brake pads, drive for a few minutes after cleaning before parking the vehicle. The brake discs and brake pads warm up and dry out.

#### Windows

- Clean windows inside and outside with a damp cloth and with a cleaning agent recommended for Mercedes-Benz.
- ▶ Do not use dry cloths or abrasive or solventbased cleaning agents to clean the inside of windows.

#### Wiper blades

- ► Carefully clean the folded-away wiper blades with a damp cloth.
- ▶ Do not clean the wiper blades too often.

#### **Exterior lighting**

- ► Clean the lenses with a wet sponge and mild cleaning agent, e.g. car shampoo.
- ▶ Only use cleaning agents or cloths suitable for plastic lenses.

#### Sensors

- ► Clean the sensors in the front and rear bumper and in the radiator trim with a soft cloth and car shampoo.
- ▶ When using a high-pressure cleaner, keep a minimum distance of 30 cm.

#### Reversing camera and 360° camera

- ▶ Use clean water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens.
- ▶ Do not use a high-pressure cleaner.

#### Exhaust pipes

- ► Clean with a cleaning agent recommended for Mercedes-Benz, especially in the winter and after washing the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not use acid-based cleaning agents.

#### Trailer tow hitch

- ▶ Remove traces of rust on the ball, e.g. with a wire brush.
- ▶ Remove dirt with a lint-free cloth.
- ► After cleaning, lightly oil or grease the ball coupling.
- ▶ Observe the notes on care in the trailer tow hitch manufacturer's operating instructions.
- ▶ Do not clean the ball coupling with a highpressure cleaner or solvent.

#### Aluminium step

- ► Clean the step regularly with a wet sponge and mild cleaning agent, e.g. car shampoo.
- ▶ Do not use any acidic cleaning agents and rinse the cleaning agent completely off the step within 15 minutes. Otherwise the aluminium may become discoloured.

#### Notes on interior care



#### **↑** WARNING

Care products and cleaning agents containing solvents can cause surfaces in the cockpit to become porous. This could result in plastic parts breaking away when the airbags are deployed. There is a danger of injury.

Do not use care products and cleaning agents containing solvents to clean the cockpit.



#### 

Seat belts may be severely weakened if bleached or coloured. This may lead to the seat belts, for example, tearing or failing in an accident. There is an increased risk of injury, possibly even fatal.

Never bleach or colour seat belts.

#### Seat belts

- ► Clean with lukewarm water and soapy
- ▶ Do not use chemical cleaning agents.
- ▶ Do not dry the seat belts by heating above 80 °C or drying in direct sunlight.

#### **Displays**

- ▶ Switch off displays and let them cool down.
- ► Clean the surface carefully with a microfibre cloth and TFT/LCD display care product.
- ▶ Do not use any other agents.

#### Plastic trim

- ▶ Clean with a damp microfibre cloth.
- ► For heavy soiling: use care product recommended for Mercedes-Benz.
- ▶ Do not affix stickers, films or similar.
- ▶ Do not allow to come into contact with cosmetics, insect repellent and sun creams.

#### Rubber mat in the centre console stowage space

- ▶ Remove the rubber mat from the stowage
- ► Clean the rubber mat with clean, lukewarm water.

#### Trim elements

- ▶ Clean with a microfibre cloth.
- ▶ Do not use solvent-based cleaning agents, polishes or wax.
- ▶ Black piano-lacquer look: clean with a damp cloth and soapy water.
- ► For heavy soiling: use care product recommended for Mercedes-Benz.

#### **Roof lining**

► Clean with a brush or dry shampoo.

#### Carpet

 Use carpet and textile cleaning agent recommended for Mercedes-Benz.

#### Genuine leather seat covers

- Do not clean the leather with too much liquid.
- ▶ Do not use a microfibre cloth.
- ► Clean with a damp cloth and wipe over with a dry cloth.
- Leather care: use leather care agent recommended for Mercedes-Benz.

#### Seat covers made of DINAMICA

- ▶ Do not use a microfibre cloth.
- ► Clean with a damp cloth.

#### Seat covers made of artificial leather

- ▶ Do not use a microfibre cloth.
- Clean with a damp cloth and 1% soap solution.

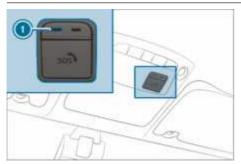
#### Cloth seat covers

► Clean with a damp microfibre cloth and 1% soap solution and allow to dry.

## Emergency

## **Emergency call system**

## Support battery charge status



① Red LED indicator lamp above the SOS button

LED indicator lamp	Meaning
Lights up red for approx. three seconds after the ignition is switched on	The system performs a lamp test after the ignition is switched on. The LED indicator lamp lights up briefly during the lamp test. If the LED indicator lamp does not light up after switching the ignition on, there may be a malfunction. In this case, the emergency call system may be inoperative or may not work properly.  In this case, the emergency call system was be inoperative or may not work properly.  In the emergency call auxiliary battery checked and replaced if necessary at a qualified specialist workshop.
Flashes red	The emergency call system auxiliary battery has to be replaced as it has reached its maximum service life. In this case, the emergency call system may be inoperative or may not work properly.
	i The emergency call system auxiliary battery is designed for a service life of six years. The emergency call system auxiliary battery has to be replaced after six years.
	► Have the emergency call system auxiliary battery replaced at a qualified specialist workshop.
	or
	There is a malfunction in the control unit for the emergency call system auxiliary battery. In this case, the emergency call system may be inoperative or may not work properly.
	► Have the emergency call auxiliary battery checked and replaced if necessary at a qualified specialist workshop.

1 Note that the emergency call system auxiliary battery is designed for an ambient temperature of -20 ℃ to +85 ℃. Temperatures outside this range can shorten the service life of the emergency call system auxiliary battery.

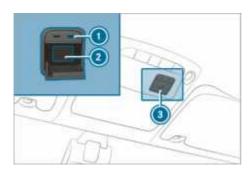
#### Mercedes-Benz emergency call system

#### Requirements:

 the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system only functions in areas where network coverage is available from the relevant service provider. Insufficient network coverage from the relevant service provider may result in an emergency call not being transmitted.

- the ignition must be switched on before an automatic emergency call can be made.
- the starter battery must be sufficiently charged.
- 1 The emergency call function is not available in all regions and countries.

You can obtain further information at a qualified specialist workshop.



- ► To open: press cover ③.
- ▶ To make an emergency call: press and hold SOS button ② for at least one second. The indicator lamp in SOS button ① flashes red until the emergency call has been completed.
- ➤ Wait for a voice connection to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre.
- ► After the emergency call, close cover ③.

  You will see a message in the following cases:
  - a connection to the Mercedes-Benz emergency call centre cannot be established.
  - a call has not been automatically forwarded to the public emergency call centre.

In this case, dial the emergency number **999** or **112** on your mobile phone.

1 If the indicator lamp in SOS button 1 flashes red or lights up without a emergency call having been made, there may be a malfunction.

In this case, have the emergency call system checked at a qualified workshop.

Further information on the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system (▷ page 181).

#### Using test mode

You can use the test mode to check if the emergency call system works.

► Press and hold button on the steering wheel

The emergency call system works if a tone sounds.

If you do not hear a tone, the emergency call system may be inoperative or may not work properly.

▶ If you do not hear a tone: have the emergency call system checked at a qualified workshop.

#### Reflective safety jacket

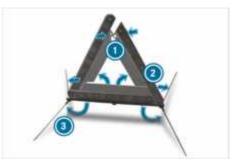
The reflective safety jacket is located in the stowage compartment in the driver's door (> page 80).

Replace the reflective safety jacket in the following cases:

- it is damaged or if the reflex strips are stained
- the maximum permitted number of washes is exceeded
- the reflective safety jacket's fluorescence has faded

#### Warning triangle

▶ Removing the warning triangle: remove the warning triangle from the stowage compartment under the rear bench seat (> page 76).

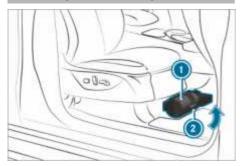


- ➤ Setting up the warning triangle: pull side reflectors ① upwards to form a triangle and lock them at the top using upper pressstud ②.
- ► Fold legs (3) down and out to the side.

#### First-aid kit (soft sided)

The first-aid kit is located in the stowage compartment under the rear bench seat (> page 76).

#### Removing the fire extinguisher



- ▶ Pull tab (2) upwards.
- ▶ Remove fire extinguisher (1) from its holder.

#### Notes on flat tyres



#### 

A flat tyre severely impairs the driving, steering and braking characteristics of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Do not drive with a flat tyre. Immediately replace the flat tyre with your spare wheel, or consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, in the event of a flat tyre you have the following possibilities:

- vehicles with Mercedes-Benz emergency call system: in the event of a flat tyre, you can contact the Customer Centre for the Mercedes-Benz emergency call system(⊳ page 218).
- change the wheel (▷ page 233).
- A spare or emergency spare wheel is only available in certain countries.

#### **Battery**

#### Notes on the 12 V battery



#### **↑** WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly on the battery can lead, for example, to a short circuit and thus damage the vehicle electronics. This can lead to function restrictions applying to

safety-relevant systems, e.g the lighting system, the ABS (anti-lock braking system) or the ESP® (Electronic Stability Program). The operating safety of your vehicle may be restricted.

You could lose control of the vehicle, for example:

- when braking
- in the event of abrupt steering manoeuvres and/or when the vehicle's speed is not adapted to the road conditions

There is a risk of an accident.

In the event of a short circuit or a similar incident, contact a qualified specialist workshop immediately. Do not drive any further. Always have work on the battery carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.

Also observe the following information:

- further information on ABS (▷ page 119)
- further information on ESP® (⊳ page 122)

For safety reasons, Mercedes-Benz recommends that you use only batteries that have been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle. These batteries have an increased leak protection so that vehicle occupants are not burned in the event of a battery being damaged in an accident.



#### ♠ WARNING

Electrostatic build-up can lead to the creation of sparks, which could ignite the highly explosive gases of a battery. There is a risk of an explosion.

Before handling the battery, touch the vehicle body to remove any existing electrostatic build-up.

A slightly explosive gas mixture is produced when the battery is charged or when the vehicle is jump-started.



#### / WARNING

Battery acid is caustic. There is a risk of injury.

Avoid contact with the skin, eyes or clothing. Do not breathe in any battery gases. Do not lean over the battery. Keep the batteries out of the reach of children. Immediately rinse off battery acid thoroughly with plenty of clean water and seek medical attention at once.

#### **Environmental note**



Batteries contain pollutants. It is illegal to dispose of them with the household rubbish. They must be collected separately and disposed of in an environmentally responsible recycling system.



Dispose of batteries in an environmentally responsible manner. Take discharged batteries to a qualified specialist workshop or to a collection point for used batteries.

If the 12 volt battery has to be connected, contact a qualified specialist workshop. Observe the safety notes and protective measures when handling batteries.



Risk of explosion. Explosive oxyhydrogen is produced when batteries are being charged. Only charge batteries in well-ventilated areas.



Fire, naked flames and smoking are prohibited when handling the battery. Avoid creating sparks.



Battery acid is caustic. Avoid contact with the skin, eyes or clothing. Wear acid-resistant protective gloves. If skin or clothes are splashed with acid, neutralise the splashes immediately with soapy water or an acid neutraliser, then clean the affected areas with water. Consult a doctor if necessary.



Wear eye protection. When mixing water and acid, the liquid may splash into your eyes. Rinse acid splashes to the eyes immediately with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Keep children at a safe distance. Children are not able to assess the dangers posed by batteries and



When handling batteries, observe the safety notes, protective measures and procedures contained in the Operating Instructions.

If you do not use the vehicle for a long period:

- connect the battery to a Mercedes-Benz recommended charger. or
- contact a qualified specialist workshop to disconnect the battery.

#### Jump-starting and charging the 12 V battery

- Never connect the jump leads/charging cable to the negative battery contact of your own vehicle, always connect the jump leads/charging cable to the earth point. You could otherwise damage the vehicle's electrical system.
- ► Always use the jump-starting connection point in the engine compartment when charging the battery and jump-starting.

#### **↑** WARNING

During the charging process, a battery produces hydrogen gas. If a short circuit occurs or sparks are created, the hydrogen gas can ignite. There is a risk of an explosion.

- Make sure that the positive terminal of a connected battery does not come into contact with vehicle parts.
- Never place metal objects or tools on a battery.
- It is important that you observe the described order of the battery terminals when connecting and disconnecting a battery.
- When jump-starting, make sure that the battery poles with identical polarity are connected.

- It is particularly important to observe the described order when connecting and disconnecting the jump leads.
- Never connect or disconnect the battery terminals while the engine is running.

#### **↑** WARNING

During charging and jump-starting, explosive gases can escape from the battery. There is a risk of an explosion.

Particularly avoid fire, naked flames, creating sparks and smoking. Ensure there is sufficient ventilation while charging and jumpstarting. Do not lean over a battery.

If, at low temperatures, the indicator/warning lamps do not light up in the instrument cluster, it is very likely that the discharged battery has frozen.

## **⚠ WARNING**

A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures below freezing point. When jump-starting the vehicle or charging the battery, gases can escape from the battery. There is a risk of an explosion.

Allow the frozen battery to thaw out before charging it or jump-starting.

It is recommended that you have the thawed battery checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

- Vehicles with a petrol engine: avoid repeated and lengthy starting attempts. Otherwise, the non-combusted fuel may damage the catalytic converter.
- Only charge the fitted battery with a battery charger that has been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz. This device allows the battery to be charged when it is fitted in the vehicle. The vehicle's electronics system may otherwise be damaged.
- Only charge the battery using the jumpstart connection point.

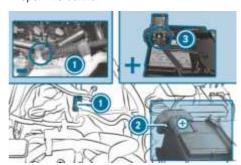
When jump-starting and charging the battery, observe the following points:

 only use jump leads/charging cables that are not damaged and have a sufficient

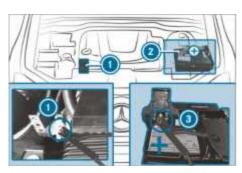
- cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.
- non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not come into contact with other metal parts while the jump leads/charging cables are connected to the battery/jumpstarting connection point.
- the jump leads/charging cables must not come into contact with parts that can move when the engine is running.
- always make sure that neither you nor the battery is electrostatically charged.
- keep away from fire and naked flames.
- · do not lean over a battery.
- When charging: only use a battery charger that has been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz and read the operating instructions for your charger before charging the battery.

When jump-starting, also observe the following points:

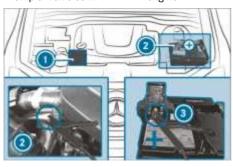
- the vehicles must not touch each other.
- jump-starting may only be performed from batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.
- petrol engine: jump-start the vehicle only when the engine and exhaust system are cold.
- secure the vehicle by applying the parking brake.
- ▶ automatic transmission: shift the transmission to position | P|.
- ▶ manual transmission: engage neutral N.
- make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off.
- ▶ open the bonnet.



Example: vehicles with M200 engine



Example: vehicles with OM642 engine



Example: vehicles with OM699 engine

- ► Fold cover ② of the positive terminal ③ on the jump-starting connection point upwards.
- ► Connect positive terminal (3) on your vehicle to positive terminal of the battery of another vehicle using the jump lead/charging cable. Always begin with positive terminal (3) on your own vehicle first.
- ▶ When jump-starting: start the engine of the donor vehicle and leave it running at idling speed.
- ► Connect the negative terminal of the battery of another vehicle to earth point (1) to your own vehicle using the jump lead/charging cable. Begin with the battery of another vehicle.
- ▶ When jump-starting: start the engine on your own vehicle.
- ▶ When charging: start the charging process.
- ▶ When jump-starting: let the engines run for a few minutes.
- ▶ When jump-starting: before disconnecting the jump leads, switch on an electrical consumer of your own vehicle e.g. the rear window heating or the lights.

When the jump-start/charging process is com-

▶ first, remove the jump leads/charging cables from earth point (1) and negative terminal of the battery of another vehicle, then from positive terminal (3) and positive terminal of the battery of another vehicle. Each time, begin at the contacts on your own vehicle first.

Further information on jump-starting may be obtained at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Towing or tow-starting

#### Towing the vehicle

#### /\ WARNING

Safety-relevant functions are restricted or not available if:

- the engine is not running.
- the brake system or the power steering is malfunctioning
- the voltage supply or the vehicle's electrical system is malfunctioning.

If your vehicle is towed, significantly greater force may be required to steer the vehicle or to brake. There is a risk of an accident.

In such circumstances, use a towing bar. Make sure that the steering is moving freely before towing.

#### ♠ WARNING

If the steering wheel lock is engaged, the vehicle can no longer be steered. There is a risk of an accident.

Always switch on the ignition when towing with a tow rope or a towing bar.

If a vehicle needs to be towed or tow started. its weight should not be greater than the permissible gross weight of the towing vehicle.

#### **↑** WARNING

When towing or tow-starting another vehicle and its weight is greater than the permissible gross weight of your vehicle, the:

- · towing eye may be torn off
- car/trailer combination may swerve or even overturn

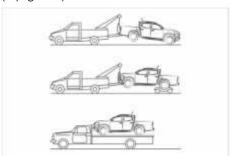
There is a risk of an accident.

When towing or tow-starting another vehicle, its weight should not be greater than the permissible gross weight of your vehicle.

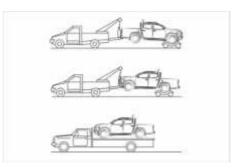
- Secure the tow rope or tow bar to the towing eye or trailer tow hitch only. The vehicle may otherwise be damaged.
- When recovering a vehicle that has become stuck, pull it as smoothly and evenly as possible. If the tractive power is too high, the vehicles could be damaged.
- Pull away smoothly when towing away or tow-starting a vehicle. If the tractive power is too high, the vehicles could be damaged.
- You may tow the vehicle for a maximum of 50 km. A towing speed of 50 km/h must not be exceeded.

For towing distances over 50 km, the entire vehicle must be lifted up and transported.

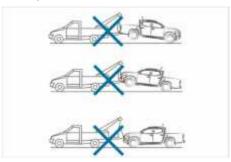
Observe the values for the permissible gross weight on the vehicle identification plate (> page 240).



Permissible towing methods for vehicles without four-wheel drive or with deactivated four-wheel drive



Permissible towing methods for vehicles with permanent four-wheel drive



Impermissible towing methods for vehicle with permanent four-wheel drive

In the event of a break down, Mercedes-Benz recommends that you have the vehicle transported instead of towed.

Vehicles with transmission damage must be transported (⊳ page 225).

Vehicles with manual transmission can be towed with both axles on the ground when four-wheel drive is deactivated and neutral N has been selected.

#### Requirements:

- details on the permissible gross weight of the vehicle can be found on the vehicle identification plate (▷ page 240).
- make sure that the battery is connected and charged.

# • Vehicles with automatic transmission:

in the event of a malfunction of the electrics, the automatic transmission may be locked in position  $\boxed{\mathbf{P}}$ . Supply voltage to the vehicle's electrical system ( $\triangleright$  page 221) or manually release the selector lever lock ( $\triangleright$  page 226) to switch to  $\boxed{\mathbf{N}}$ .

If the automatic transmission will not move to position [N], have the vehicle transported ( $\triangleright$  page 225).

- ► Secure the towing device.
- ▶ Deactivate tow-away protection (> page 71).
- ► Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the automatic transmission to position N.
- ► Vehicles with manual transmission: engage neutral N.
- ▶ When towing with the rear axle raised: move the front wheels to the straight-ahead position.
- ► When towing with an axle raised: switch on the power supply.
- ► Release the parking brake.

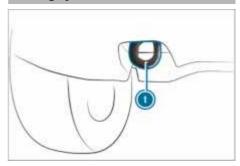
#### Transporting the vehicle

The vehicle should only be transported by a professional recovery company.

- (i) Vehicles with automatic transmission: in the event of a malfunction of the electrics, the automatic transmission may be locked in position P. Supply voltage to the vehicle's electrical system (⊳ page 221) or manually release the selector lever lock (⊳ page 226) to switch to N.
- ► Follow the instructions on towing away (> page 223).
- ► When loading the vehicle, secure the towing device to the towing eye.
- ► Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the automatic transmission to position N.
- ► Vehicles with manual transmission: engage neutral N.
- ▶ Load the vehicle.
- ► Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the automatic transmission to position P.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: engage gear 1 or reverse gear R.
- ► Secure the vehicle against rolling away by applying the parking brake.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle by the wheels only.
- ► Vehicles with four-wheel drive: make sure that the front and rear axles are resting on

the same transport vehicle, e.g. the front and rear axles are on the same freight wagon for transport by rail.

#### Towing eye



The front towing eye ① is located under the bumper on the right side of the vehicle.



The rear towing eye ① is located under the bumper on the left side of the vehicle.

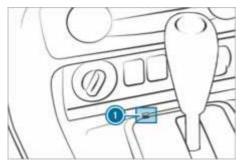
# Tow-starting the vehicle (emergency engine starting)

- Do not tow-start vehicles with automatic transmission. You could otherwise damage the automatic transmission.
- ► Follow the instructions on tow-starting (> page 223).
- ► Allow the engine and exhaust system to cool down if necessary.
- ► Switch on the ignition.
- ► Engage 2 gear.
- ► Release the parking brake.

- ► Keep the clutch pedal fully depressed when tow-starting the vehicle.
- ► Release the clutch pedal slowly.
- ▶ When the engine has started, shift to neutral immediately.
- ▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, paying attention to road and traffic conditions.
- ▶ Remove the towing device.
- ► Have the vehicle checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Unlocking the selector lever manually

The selector lever lock can be manually released in the event of an electrical malfunction.



- ► Switch off the ignition.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Carefully prise off the cover (1).
- ▶ Use a suitable tool, press in the hole while simultaneously pressing the button on the selector lever.
- ► Shift the selector lever to position **N**.

#### **Fuse links**

#### Notes on electric fuses



#### **↑** WARNING

If you manipulate, bridge or replace a faulty fuse with a fuse of a higher amperage, the electric cables could be overloaded. This may result in a fire. There is a risk of an accident and injury.

Always replace faulty fuses with specified new fuses of the correct amperage.

Only use fuses that have been approved for Mercedes-Benz vehicles and which have the correct fuse rating for the system concerned. Otherwise, components or systems could be damaged.

The fuses in your vehicle switch off defective circuits. If a fuse blows, all the components on the circuit and their functions will cease to operate.

Blown fuses must be replaced with fuses of the same rating, which you can recognise by the colour and fuse rating. The fuse ratings are listed on the back of the fuse box lid.

Fuse allocation chart: on the back of the fuse box lid

When closing the cover, make sure that it is lying correctly on the fuse box. Moisture seeping in or dirt could otherwise impair the operation of the fuses.

If a new fuse blows again, have the cause determined and rectified at a qualified specialist workshop.

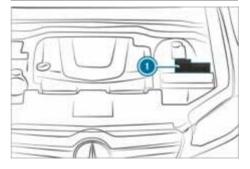
Make sure of the following before replacing a fuse:

- the vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- · all electrical consumers are switched off.
- · the ignition is switched off.

The fuses are located in various fuse boxes:

- fuse box in the engine compartment on the left-hand side of the vehicle (▷ page 226).
- fuse box in the glove compartment on the co-driver's side (⊳ page 227).

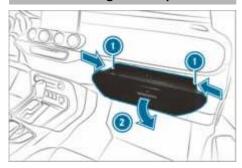
#### Fuse box in the engine compartment



#### Requirements:

- observe the notes on electric fuses (> page 226).
- ► Remove any moisture from the fuse box using a dry cloth ①.
- ► Press onto the locking pin and remove the fuse/line fuse cover.
- ► Replace the blown fuse.
- ► Reattach the fuse/line fuse cover and push to close.

#### Fuse box in the glove compartment



#### Requirements

- Observe the notes on electric fuses (> page 226).
- ▶ Open the glove compartment ②.
- ► Press the sides of the glove compartment flap ① together until the lateral studs slide out of the guide.
- ➤ Fold the glove compartment flap down.

  The fuse box is behind the glove compartment flap.
- ► Replace the blown fuse.
- ► Press the sides of the glove compartment flap together until the studs slide back into the guide.
- ► Close the glove compartment.

#### Noises or unusual handling characteristics

While driving, pay attention to vibrations, noises and unusual handling characteristics, e.g. pulling to one side. This may indicate that the wheels or tyres are damaged. If you suspect that a tyre is defective, reduce your speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible to check the wheels and tyres for damage. Hidden tyre damage could also be causing the unusual handling characteristics. If you find no signs of damage, have the tyres and wheels checked at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Regular wheel and tyre checks



#### ♠ WARNING

Damaged tyres can cause tyre inflation pressure loss. As a result, you could lose control of your vehicle. There is a risk of accident.

Check the tyres regularly for signs of damage and replace any damaged tyres immediately.



#### **↑** WARNING

If there is insufficient tyre tread, the tyre traction will decrease. The tyre tread can no longer dissipate water. This increases the risk of aquaplaning on a wet road surface, especially when the vehicle's speed is not adapted to the road conditions. There is a risk of an accident.

If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, tyres may wear differently at different points of the tyre tread. Regularly check the tyre tread depth and the condition of the tread across the whole width of all tyres, therefore.

Minimum tyre tread depth on:

- Summer tyres: 3 mm
- M+S tyres: 4 mm

For safety reasons, have the tyres replaced before the legally specified minimum tread depth is reached.

Regularly conduct the following checks on all wheels at least once a month or as required, e.g. before a long journey or when driving off-

- check the tyre pressure (> page 229).
- check wheels and tyres for damage.
- · check the valve caps.

Valves must be protected from moisture and dirt with valve caps specifically approved for your vehicle by Mercedes-Benz.

 check the tyre tread depth and the tyre tread over the entire width.

For summer tyres, the minimum tyre tread depth is 3 mm and for M+S tyres (winter tyres) 4 mm.

#### Notes on snow chains



#### **↑** WARNING

If you have fitted snow chains to the front wheels, they may scrape against the vehicle body or chassis components. This could cause damage to the vehicle or the tyres. There is a risk of an accident.

To avoid hazardous situations:

- never fit snow chains on the front wheels
- fit snow chains to the rear wheels in pairs.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you drive too fast with snow chains fitted, they may snap. As a result, you could injure others and damage the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Observe the maximum permissible speed for operation with snow chains.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 km/h. When using snow chains, please observe the legal requirements of the country in which you are driving.

- Before fitting the snow chains, check them for damage. Damaged or worn snow chains may snap and damage the following components:
  - wheel
  - wheel housing
  - wheel suspension

Therefore, only use snow chains that are in perfect condition. Observe the manufacturer's installation instructions.

- Vehicles with steel wheels: if you fit snow chains on steel wheels, you may damage the hub caps. Remove the hub caps from the relevant wheels before fitting the snow chains.
- Snow chains are only permitted for certain wheel/tyre combinations. You can obtain information from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.
- For safety reasons, only use snow chains that have been approved by Mercedes-Benz or those of the same standard in terms of
- The maximum permissible speed with snow chains fitted is limited to 50 km/h.
- 1 You can deactivate ESP® when pulling away (⊳ page 123). This allows the wheels to spin thus generating increased propulsive force.

#### Tyre pressure

## Notes on tyre pressure



#### ♠ WARNING

Underinflated or overinflated tyres pose the following risks:

- the tyres may burst, especially as the load and vehicle speed increase.
- the tyres may wear excessively and/or unevenly, which may greatly impair tyre traction.
- · the driving characteristics, as well as steering and braking, may be greatly impaired.

There is a risk of an accident.

Observe the recommended tyre pressure and check the tyre pressure of all the tyres including the spare wheel:

- · at least every two weeks
- · when the load changes
- before embarking on a longer journey
- · for changed operating conditions, e.g. offroad driving

If necessary, correct the tyre pressure.

Driving with a tyre pressure that is too high or too low can:

- shorten the service life of the tyres.
- increase the likelihood of tyre damage.
- have a negative effect on handling characteristics and thus driving safety, e.g. due to aquaplaning.



#### **↑** WARNING

If you fit unsuitable accessories onto tyre valves, the tyre valves may be overloaded and malfunction, which can cause tyre pressure loss. Due to their design, retrofitted tyre pressure monitors keep the tyre valve open. This can also result in tyre pressure loss. There is a risk of accident.

Only screw standard valve caps or valve caps specifically provided by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle onto the tyre valve.



#### ♠ WARNING

If the tyre pressure drops repeatedly, the wheel, valve or tyre may be damaged. Tyre pressure that is too low may result in a tyre blow-out. There is a risk of accident.

- Check the tyre for foreign objects.
- Check whether the wheel is losing air or the valve is leaking.

If you are unable to rectify the damage, contact a qualified specialist workshop.



#### ♠ Warning

A flat tyre severely impairs the driving, steering and braking characteristics of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

Do not drive with a flat tyre. Immediately replace the flat tyre with your spare wheel, or consult a qualified specialist workshop.

■ The pressure difference between tyres on any one axle must be no greater than 10 kPa (0.1 bar/1.5 psi).

#### ♥ Environmental note

Check the tyre pressure regularly, at least every 14 days.

Information on the recommended pressures for the vehicle's tyres fitted at the factory can be found in the tyre pressure table on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Use a suitable pressure gauge to check the tyre pressure. The outer appearance of a tyre does not permit any reliable conclusion about the tyre pressure.

Vehicles with a tyre pressure monitor: you can also check the tyre pressure using the onboard computer (⊳ page 231).

Only correct tyre pressures when the tyres are cold. Conditions for cold tyres:

- the vehicle has been parked with the tyres out of direct sunlight for at least three hours and
- the vehicle has been driven less than 1.6 km.

An increase of the tyre temperature by 10 °C raises the tyre pressure by approx. 10 kPa (0.1 bar, 1.5 psi). Take this into account when checking the pressure of warm tyres.

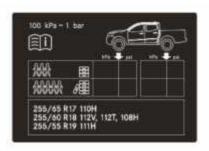
#### Notes on towing a trailer

The applicable tyre pressure for the tyres of the rear axle is always the recommended tyre pressure for increased load stated in the tyre pressure table.

## Tyre pressure table

The tyre pressure table is located in the B-pillar area on the driver's side.

 The data shown in the illustration is sample data.



The tyre pressure table states the recommended tyre pressure for all tyres approved at the factory for this vehicle. The recommended tyre pressures apply for cold tyres under various operating conditions, i.e. loading and/or speed of the vehicle.

If one or more tyre sizes precedes a tyre pressure, the following tyre pressure information is valid only for those tyre dimensions.

If the tyre dimensions are followed by the symbol, the following tyre pressure information shows alternative tyre pressures. These tyre pressures can improve the ride comfort of your vehicle. Fuel consumption may then increase slightly.

The vehicle loads "partially laden" or "fully laden" are defined in the table for different numbers of passengers and amounts of luggage. The actual number of seats may differ from this.

Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

Notes on tyre pressure (▷ page 229)

## Tyre pressure monitor

#### Function of the tyre pressure monitor

The system monitors the tyre pressure of the tyres fitted to the vehicle with the aid of tyre pressure sensors.

New tyre pressure sensors, e.g. in winter tyres, are automatically taught-in when you first drive off.

The tyre pressure is shown in the multifunction display (▷ page 139).

If a substantial loss of pressure occurs or high temperature, a warning is issued:

- by display messages (▷ page 262)
- by a warning lamp (1) in the instrument cluster (▷ page 277)

It is the driver's responsibility to set the tyre pressure to the recommended cold tyre pressure suitable for the operating situation. Adjust the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold using a tyre pressure gauge.

The tyre pressure monitor will not automatically detect the reference values after you have changed the tyre pressure. Update the reference values manually by restarting the tyre pressure monitor (> page 231).

#### **System limitations**

The tyre pressure monitor will not issue a warning:

- if the tyre pressure is set incorrectly
- if there is a sudden loss of pressure, e.g. if the tyre is penetrated by a foreign object
- if there is interference caused by another source of radio waves

Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

Notes on tyre pressure (▷ page 229)

# Checking the tyre pressure using the tyre pressure monitor

Requirements:

the ignition is switched on.

On-board computer:

- ► Service ► Tyre pressure
  One of the following displays appears:
  - the current tyre pressure for each wheel
  - Tyre pressures will be displayed after a few minutes of driving
  - Tyre pressure monitor active: the teach-in procedure of the system is not yet complete. The tyre pressures are already being monitored.
- ► Compare the tyre pressure with the recommended tyre pressure for the current oper-

ating conditions ( $\triangleright$  page 230). Observe the notes on tyre temperature ( $\triangleright$  page 229).

1 The values displayed in the multifunction display may differ from those of the tyre pressure gauge, as they refer to sea level. At high altitudes, the tyre pressure values indicated by a tyre pressure checker are higher than those shown by the multifunction display. In this case, do not reduce the tyre pressures.

Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

Notes on tyre pressure (> page 229)

#### Restarting the tyre pressure monitor

Requirements:

 the recommended tyre pressure on all four wheels is correct for the current operating conditions (> page 229).

Restart the tyre pressure monitor in the following situations:

- the tyre pressure has changed.
- wheels or tyres have been changed or newly fitted.

On-board computer:

- ► Tyre pressure
- ▶ Press button ▼.

The Use current pressures as new reference values message is shown on the multifunction display.

▶ Press the OK button to confirm restart. The current warning messages are deleted and the ① yellow warning lamp goes out. After you have driven for a few minutes, the system checks whether the current tyre pressure levels are within the specified range. The new tyre pressures are then accepted as reference values and monitored.

Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

Notes on tyre pressure (▷ page 229)

## Radio type approval of the tyre pressure monitor

Country	Declaration of conformity
European Union Turkey	Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type PMV-CA74 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.  The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:  http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/
European Union Turkey	Hereby, ALPS ELECTRIC CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type TWD1G791 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/Tuner/TWD1G791.pdf
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d' agrément: MR117799 ANRT 2016 Date d' agrément: 28/04/2016
Mexico	MEX:RCPPAPM16-0467
Oman	OMAN - TRA R/3114/16 D080134o
Russia	ERC CHO
South Africa	TA-2017/662 APPROVED

## Country **Declaration of conformity** Ukraine United Arab Emirates TRA REGISTERED No: ER45219/16 **DEALER No:** DA0063612/11

#### Spare or emergency spare wheel

#### Notes on the spare and emergency spare wheel



#### **↑** WARNING

The wheel/tyre dimensions and the tyre type of the spare wheel/emergency spare wheel and the wheel to be replaced may differ. Fitting a spare wheel/emergency spare wheel may severely impair the driving characteristics. There is a risk of accident.

To prevent hazardous situations:

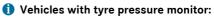
- Adapt your driving style accordingly and drive carefully.
- Never fit more than one spare wheel/ emergency spare wheel if the dimensions are different to those of the wheel being replaced.
- Only use a spare wheel/emergency spare wheel briefly if the dimensions are different to those of the wheel being replaced.
- Do not switch off FSP<sup>®</sup>.
- Have the spare wheel/emergency spare wheel in question replaced at the nearest qualified specialist workshop. Make sure that the wheel/tyre dimensions and tyre type are correct.

Check the tyre pressure of the spare or emergency spare wheel fitted. Take the highest value of the tyre pressure for the reserve or emergency spare wheel indicated on the instruction label on the B-pillar of the vehicle (⊳ page 230). Adjust it as necessary.

Replace spare or emergency spare wheel after six years at the latest, regardless of wear.

During operation, the maximum permissible speed with fitted emergency spare wheel is 80 km/h.

Do not fit snow chains to the emergency spare wheel.



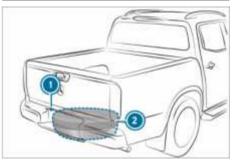
the tyre pressure monitor is not able to function reliably when an emergency spare wheel is fitted. Restart the tyre pressure monitor only after the emergency spare wheel has been replaced with a new wheel.

After an emergency spare wheel has been fitted, the system may still display the tyre pressure of the removed wheel for a few minutes.

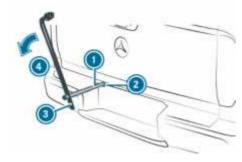
Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

- Notes on tyre pressure (▷ page 229)
- Tyre pressure table (> page 230)

## Fitting and removing spare or emergency spare wheel



Spare wheel ② is located under the vehicle. The opening for the spare wheel lifter ① is above the licence plate frame.

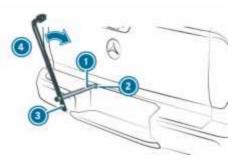


Removing the spare wheel

- ➤ Observe the notes on fitting tyres (> page 234)
- ► Using a suitable tool, carefully remove the cover from the opening for the spare wheel lifter ②.
- ► Assemble the auxiliary tool ①.
- ► Push the T-shaped end of the auxiliary tool ① at an angle through opening ② into the winch guide.
- ► Attach the square socket in the wheel wrench ③ to auxiliary tool ①.
- ➤ Turn wheel wrench ③ in the direction of arrow ④ until you feel resistance or until the friction clutch of the winch overwinds. The spare wheel has been lowered.



- ▶ Pull the tyre ② out from under the vehicle and remove the retainer chain ①.
- ▶ Wind the retainer chain up again or stow the defective wheel away in place of the spare tyre below the vehicle (▷ page 234).



Fitting the spare wheel

- ► Assemble the auxiliary tool.
- ► Push the T-shaped end of the auxiliary tool ① at an angle through opening ② into the winch guide.
- ▶ Place the wheel flat on the ground.
- ▶ Secure the retainer chain to the wheel.
- ▶ Slide the wheel under the vehicle a little.
- ► Attach the square socket in the wheel wrench (3) to auxiliary tool (1).
- ► Turn wheel wrench ③ in the direction of arrow ④ and pull up the wheel horizontally until you feel resistance and the friction clutch of the winch overwinds in jerks. The wheel is firmly secured to the underside of the vehicle.
  - If the wheel is not pulled horizontally, lower the wheel and pull it up again.
- ▶ Reattach the cover to the opening for the spare wheel lifter ②.

## Changing a wheel

# Notes on selecting, fitting and replacing tyres

You can ask for information regarding permitted wheel/tyre combinations at a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

## 

If you fit wheels and tyres with incorrect dimensions, the service brake or wheel suspension components may be damaged. There is a risk of an accident.

Always replace wheels and tyres with ones that comply with the specifications of the original part.

When replacing wheels, pay attention to the:

- designation
- type

When replacing tyres, pay attention to the:

- designation
- manufacturer
- type

#### **↑** WARNING

Exceeding the stated tyre load-bearing capacity and the approved maximum speed could lead to tyre damage or the tyre bursting. There is a risk of accident.

Therefore, only use tyre types and sizes approved for your vehicle model. Observe the tyre load rating and speed rating required for your vehicle.

For safety reasons, Mercedes-Benz recommends that you only use tyres, wheels and accessories which have been approved by Mercedes-Benz specifically for your vehicle.

These tyres have been specially adapted for use with the driving safety systems, such as ABS or ESP®.

Only use tyres, wheels or accessories tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz. Certain characteristics, e.g. handling, vehicle noise emissions or fuel consumption, may otherwise be adversely affected. In addition, when driving with a load, tyre dimension variations could cause the tyres to come into contact with the bodywork and axle components. This could result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle.

Mercedes-Benz accepts no liability for damage resulting from the use of tyres, wheels or accessories other than those tested and approved.

Further information on wheels, tyres and approved combinations can be obtained from a qualified specialist workshop.

Retreaded tyres are neither tested nor recommended by Mercedes-Benz, since previous damage cannot always be detected on retreaded tyres. As a result, Mercedes-Benz cannot guarantee vehicle safety if retreaded tyres are fitted. Do not fit used tyres if you

have no information about their previous usage.

- Large wheels: the lower the section width for a certain wheel size, the lower the ride comfort is on poor road surfaces. Roll comfort and suspension comfort are reduced and the risk of damage to the wheels and tyres as a result of driving over obstacles increases.
- On vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure monitor, electronic components are located in the wheel.

Tyre-fitting tools should not be applied in the area of the valve, as this could damage the electronic components.

Only have tyres changed at a qualified specialist workshop.

Accessories that are not approved for your vehicle by Mercedes-Benz or are not being used correctly can impair operating safety. Before purchasing and using non-approved accessories, visit a qualified specialist workshop and enquire about:

- suitability
- legal stipulations
- factory recommendations

Observe the following when selecting, fitting and replacing tyres:

- country-specific requirements for tyre approval stipulating a specific tyre type for your vehicle.
- Furthermore, the use of a specific tyre type in certain regions and areas of operation can be highly beneficial.
- use only tyres and wheels of the same type. design (summer tyres, winter tyres) and make.
- always fit tyres of the same size on a given axle (left and right).
  - In the event of a flat tyre an exception can be made only for the journey to the specialist qualified workshop.
- fit only tyres of the correct size onto the wheels.
- modifications to the brake system, wheels and the tyres are not permitted.

The use of spacers or brake dust shields is not permitted and will invalidate the general operating permit.

- Vehicles with a tyre pressure monitor: all fitted wheels must be equipped with functioning sensors for the tyre pressure moni-
- at temperatures below 7 °C, use winter tyres or all-weather tyres with the M+S marking on each wheel.

Winter tyres bearing the A snowflake symbol in addition to the M+S marking provide the best possible traction in wintry road conditions.

- only use tyres of the same tread on M+S tyres.
- observe the maximum permissible speed specified for the M+S tyres you have fitted. If this is lower of that than the vehicle an appropriate warning label must be affixed in the driver's field of vision.
- run in new tyres at moderate speeds for the first 100 km.
- replace the tyres after six years at the latest, regardless of wear.

For further information on wheels and tyres, please contact a qualified specialist workshop. Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

- Notes on tyre pressure (> page 229)
- Tyre pressure table (> page 230)
- observe the notes on the spare wheel (⊳ page 233)

Observe the following when using sport tyres:



Due to the special tyre tread in combination with the optimised rubber compound, there is an increased risk of aquaplaning and skidding on a damp or wet road surface. Tyre grip is also noticeably reduced at low outside temperatures and low tyre operating temperatures. There is a risk of an accident.

Turn on ESP® and adapt your driving style accordingly. When the outside temperature falls below 10 °C, use M+S tyres.

#### Notes on interchanging wheels



#### ♠ WARNING

Interchanging the front and rear wheels if the wheels or tyres have different dimensions may severely impair the driving characteristics. The service brake or wheel suspension components may also be damaged. There is a risk of an accident.

Rotate front and rear wheels only if the wheels and tyres are of the same dimensions.

Interchanging front and rear wheels or tyres of differing dimensions can render the general operating permit invalid.

Wear patterns for the front and the rear tyres

- front tyres typically wear more on the tyre shoulders
- rear tyres typically wear more in the centre of the tyre

On vehicles that have the same size wheels, interchange the wheels every 5000 km to 10000 km depending on the degree of wear. Ensure the direction of tyre rotation is maintained.

Always observe the instructions and safety notes on changing a wheel.

## Notes on storing wheels

Observe the following notes on storing wheels:

- wheels that have been removed should be stored in cool, dry and preferably dark surroundings.
- protect the tyres against oil, grease and fuel.

## Overview of tyre-change tool kit

Apart from some country-specific variants, vehicles without a spare wheel are not equipped with tyre-changing tools. For more information on which tools are required and approved to perform a wheel change on your vehicle, consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Necessary tyre-changing tools may include, for example:

- lack
- · Wheel chock
- · Wheel wrench
- 1 The jack has a weight of approximately 3.2 kg.

You will find the maximum load-bearing capacity of the jack stated on the adhesive label attached to the jack.

The jack is maintenance-free. If there is a malfunction, please contact a qualified specialist workshop.

The tyre-change tool kit is located in the stowage compartment under the rear bench seat.

# Preparing the vehicle for a wheel change

#### Requirements:

- the necessary tyre-change tools are available. If your vehicle is not equipped with tyrechange tools, consult a qualified specialist workshop about suitable tools.
- the vehicle is not on a downhill or uphill gradient.
- the vehicle is standing on solid, non-slip and level ground.
- ► Apply the parking brake.
- ► Turn the front wheels to the straight-ahead position.
- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: select gear 1 or reverse gear R.
- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission: shift the transmission to position P.
- ▶ Switch off the engine.
- Make sure that the engine cannot be started.
- Place chocks or other suitable items under the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel you wish to change.
- ▶ If necessary, remove the hub caps.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle (▷ page 237).

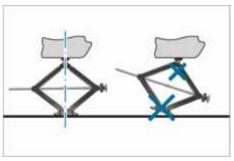
# Raising the vehicle to change a wheel

#### Requirements:

- there are no persons in the vehicle.
- the vehicle is prepared for changing a wheel (▷ page 237).

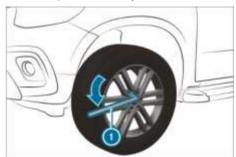
Important notes on using the jack:

- to raise the vehicle, only use the vehiclespecific jack that has been tested and approved by Mercedes-Benz.
- the jack is designed only to raise the vehicle for a short time while a wheel is being changed and is not suitable for carrying out maintenance work under the vehicle.
- the jack must be placed on a firm, flat and non-slip surface. If necessary, use a large, flat, load bearing and non-slip underlay.
- the base of the jack is positioned vertically under the jacking point.

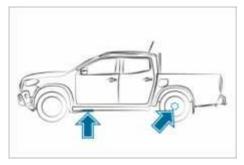


Safety instructions while the vehicle is raised:

- do not put your hands or feet under the vehicle.
- do not lie underneath the vehicle.
- do not start the engine and do not release the parking brake.
- · do not open or close any doors.



▶ Using wheel wrench (1), loosen the wheel nuts on the wheel you wish to change by about one full turn. Do not unscrew the wheel nuts completely.



Jacking point positions



#### **↑** WARNING

If you do not position the jack correctly at the appropriate jacking point of the vehicle, the jack could tip over with the vehicle raised. There is a risk of injury.

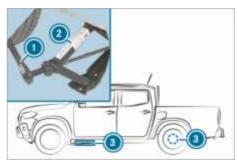
Only position the jack at the appropriate jacking point of the vehicle. The base of the jack must be positioned vertically, directly under the jacking point of the vehicle.

#### **↑** WARNING

On uphill and downhill slopes, the jack could tip over with the vehicle raised. There is a danger of injury.

Do not change wheels on uphill or downhill gradients. Contact a qualified specialist workshop.

Only position the jack on the jacking points intended for this purpose. You could otherwise damage the vehicle.



- ▶ Position jack (2) at jacking point (3).
- ▶ Insert jack crank (1) into the jack (2) and turn until the jack sits completely on the jacking point (3) and the base of the jack lies evening on the ground.
- ▶ Turn jack crank (1) until the tyre is raised a maximum of 3 cm off the ground.
- ▶ Loosen and remove the wheel (⊳ page 238).

#### Removing a wheel

#### Requirements:

- the vehicle is raised (> page 237). Avoid applying any force to the brake disc when changing a wheel as this could impair the level of comfort when braking.
- Do not place wheel bolts in sand or dirt. The threads of the wheel bolts and wheel hubs could otherwise be damaged when the bolts are tightened.
- Unscrew the wheel nuts.
- ▶ Remove the wheel.
- ► Fit the new wheel (> page 238).

## Fitting a new wheel

#### Requirements

The wheel is removed (▷ page 238).



#### **↑** WARNING

Oiled or greased wheel bolts or damaged wheel bolts/hub threads can cause the wheel bolts to come loose. As a result, you could lose a wheel while driving. There is a risk of accident.

Never oil or grease wheel bolts. In the event of damage to the threads, contact a qualified specialist workshop immediately. Have the damaged wheel bolts or hub threads replaced/renewed. Do not continue driving.

▶ Observe the notes on selecting tyres (⊳ page 234).

On tyres with a specified direction of rotation, an arrow on the sidewall of the tyre indicates its correct direction of rotation. Ensure the direction of rotation is maintained when fitting.

▶ Slide the new wheel onto the wheel hub and push it on.

#### **↑** WARNING

If you tighten the wheel bolts or wheel nuts when the vehicle is raised, the jack could tip over. There is a risk of injury.

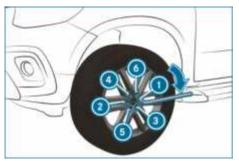
Only tighten the wheel bolts or wheel nuts when the vehicle is on the ground.

- ► For safety reasons, Mercedes-Benz recommends that you only use wheel nuts which have been approved for Mercedes-Benz vehicles and the respective wheel.
- ► Screw in the wheel nuts and tighten them lightly.
- ► Lower the vehicle (> page 239).

#### Lowering the vehicle after changing a wheel

#### Requirements:

- the new wheel is fitted (▷ page 238).
- ► To lower the vehicle: turn the jack crank until the wheels are on the ground.



▶ tighten the wheel nuts evenly in a diagonal pattern in the order indicated (1) to (6). Prescribed tightening torque of steel and light-alloy wheels: 133 Nm.



#### ♠ WARNING

The wheels could come loose if the wheel bolts or wheel nuts are not tightened to the prescribed tightening torque. There is a risk of an accident.

Ensure that the wheel bolts or wheel nuts are tightened to the prescribed tightening torque.

If you are not sure, do not move the vehicle. Contact a qualified specialist workshop and have the tightening torque checked immediately.

- ► Check the tyre pressure of the newly fitted wheel and adjust it if necessary.
- ▶ Vehicles with a tyre pressure monitor: restart the tyre pressure monitor (⊳ page 231).

**Exception:** the new wheel is an emergency spare wheel.

Be sure to observe the following further related subjects:

• notes on tyre pressure (▷ page 229)

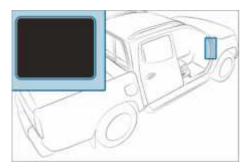
# Technical data

#### Information on technical data

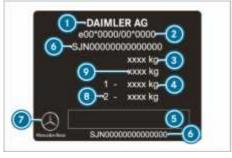
The technical data was determined in accordance with EU Directives. The given data only applies to vehicles with standard equipment. You can obtain further information from a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

**Only for certain countries:** you can find vehicle-specific vehicle data in the COC documents (CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMITY). These documents are supplied when the vehicle is delivered.

# Vehicle identification plate, VIN and engine number



The vehicle identification plate is located in the area of the A-pillar on the right side of the vehicle.

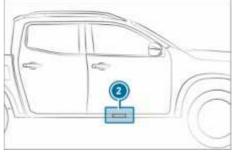


The data shown in the illustration is sample data.

- (1) Vehicle manufacturer
- ② EU general operating permit number (for certain countries only)
- (3) Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)
- Maximum permissible front axle load (kg)
- (5) Barcode

- 6 VIN (vehicle identification number)
- (7) Vehicle manufacturer
- (8) Permissible rear axle load (kg)
- Maximum gross weight of vehicle combination (kg) (for certain countries only)





The VIN can be found on the vehicle identification plate. Additionally, the VIN is attached in the windscreen area ① and stamped in the frame below the door on the right side of the vehicle ②.

The engine number is stamped on the crankcase.

You can obtain further information from any qualified specialist workshop.

#### Vehicle electronics

# Notes on work on the engine electronics

Have the engine electronics and parts belonging to it such as control units, sensors, actuating components or electric cables maintained only at a qualified specialist workshop. Otherwise, vehicle components may wear more quickly and the vehicle's operating permit may be invalidated.

#### Notes on installing two-way radios



#### / WARNING

The electromagnetic radiation from two-way radios can interfere with the vehicle electronics if they are manipulated or retrofitted incorrectly. This could jeopardise the operating safety of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident.

You should have all work on electrical and electronic components carried out at a qualified specialist workshop.

#### 

If you operate two-way radios incorrectly in the vehicle, their electromagnetic radiation can interfere with the vehicle electronics, for example if:

- the two-way radio is not connected to an exterior aerial
- · the exterior aerial is not correctly mounted or is not low-reflection

This could jeopardise the operating safety of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Have the low-reflection exterior aerial fitted at a qualified specialist workshop. When operating two-way radios in the vehicle, always connect them to the low-reflection exterior aerial.

I The operating permit may be invalidated if the instructions for installation and use of two-way radios are not observed.

In particular, the following conditions must be complied with:

- only approved wavebands may be used
- observe the maximum permissible output in these wavebands
- only approved aerial positions may be

On the rear wings, it is recommended that you position the aerial on the side of the vehicle closest to the centre of the road.

When retrofitting RF transmitters, consult the Technical Guidelines, ISO/TS 21609 (Road Vehicles – EMC guidelines for installation of aftermarket radio frequency transmitting

equipment). Observe the legal requirements for attachments.

If your vehicle is equipped with two-way radio equipment, use the power supply and aerial connectors provided in the basic wiring. When fitting, always observe the manufacturer's supplement.

The maximum transmission output (PEAK) at the base of the aerial must not exceed the values in the following table:

Waveband and maximum transmission output:

Frequency range	Maximum trans- mission output (PEAK)
Short wave (f<50MHZ)	100 W
4 m waveband 74 - 88 MHz	30 W
2 m waveband 144 - 174 MHz	50 W
Trunked radio/Tetra 380 - 460 MHz	35 W
70 cm waveband 400 - 460 MHz	35 W
Mobile telephones (2G/3G/4G)	10 W

The following can be used in the vehicle without restrictions:

- · RF transmitters with a maximum transmission output of up to 100 mW
- RF transmitters with transmitter frequencies in the 380 - 410 MHz waveband and a maximum transmission output of up to 2 W (trunked radio/Tetra)
- mobile phones (2G/3G/4G)

There are no restrictions when positioning the aerial on the outside of the vehicle for the following wavebands:

- Trunked radio/Tetra
- 70 cm waveband
- 2G/3G/4G

#### Service products

#### Notes on service products



#### ♠ WARNING

Service product can be poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Observe the instructions on the respective original container when using, storing and disposing off service products. Always store service products in the sealed original container. Always keep service products out of the reach of children.

#### Environmental note

Dispose of service products in an environmentally-responsible manner.

Service products include the following:

- fuels
- exhaust gas aftertreatment additives, e.g. AdBlue<sup>®</sup>
- lubricants
- coolant
- · brake fluid
- · washer fluid
- · climate control system refrigerants

Only use products approved by Mercedes-Benz. Damage which is caused by the use of products which have not been approved is not covered by the Mercedes-Benz warranty or goodwill gestures.

You will recognise the service products approved by Mercedes-Benz by the following inscription on the containers:

- MB approval (e.g. MB approval 228.51)
- MB approval for OM642: 229.52
- MB approval (e.g. MB approval 228.5)

Further information on approved service products:

- in the Mercedes-Benz Specifications for Service Products at http:// bevo.mercedesbenz.com (by entering the designation)
- at a qualified specialist workshop

#### ♠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable. Improper handing of fuel creates a risk of fire and explosion.

Avoid fire, naked flames, smoking and creating sparks under all circumstances. Switch off the engine and, if applicable, the auxiliary heating before refuelling.

#### ♠ WARNING

Fuels are poisonous and hazardous to health. There is a risk of injury.

Be sure to avoid swallowing fuel or letting it come into contact with skin, eyes or cloth-

Do not breathe the fuel vapours in. Keep fuels out of the reach of children.

Keep the doors and windows closed while refuelling.

If you or others come into contact with fuel, observe the following points:

- Immediately rinse fuel off your skin with soap and water.
- If fuel comes into contact with your eyes, rinse your eyes with clean water immediately. Consult a doctor without delay.
- Consult a doctor without delay if you swallow fuel. Do not induce vomiting.
- Immediately change out of clothing that has come into contact with fuel.

#### **Fuel**

#### Notes on fuel grades on vehicles with petrol engines

Observe the notes on service products (⊳ page 242).

- Damage caused by the wrong fuel Even small amounts of the wrong fuel could result in damage to the fuel system, the engine and the emission control system.
  - Only refuel using unleaded, sulphur-free gasoline that conforms to European standard EN 228, or an equivalent specification.

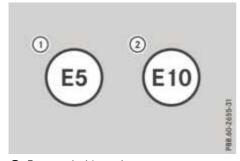
Fuel of this specification may contain up to 10vol.% % ethanol. Your vehicle is compatible with E10 fuel

Never refuel using:

- diesel
- regular petrol with an octane number lower than 91 RON
- petrol with more than 10 vol. % ethanol,
   e.g. E15, E20, E85, E100
- petrol with more than 3 vol. % methanol, e.g. M15, M30
- petrol with additives containing metal If you accidentally refuel with the wrong fuel:
- · do not switch the ignition on
- consult a qualified specialist workshop

According to European standard EN 16942, you can find the following compatibility indications for fuel:

- on the instruction label on the filler flap of your vehicle
- on the fuel pump or fuel pump nozzle suitable for your vehicle throughout Europe



- 1 For petrol with maximum 5% ethanol by volume
- 2 For petrol with maximum 10% ethanol by volume
- Damage to the emissions control system caused by fuel with too high a sulphur content
  - Only use sulphur-free fuel (sulphur content ≤ 10 ppm).



If the available fuel is not sufficiently low in sulphur, this can produce unpleasant odours.

The recommended octane number for your vehicle can be found on the instruction label in the fuel filler flap.

As a temporary measure, but only if the recommended fuel is not available, you may also use regular unleaded petrol with at least 91 RON.

This may reduce the engine output and increase fuel consumption.

Never refuel using fuel with a lower RON. Further information on fuel is available:

- at a filling station
- at a qualified specialist workshop
- If you are using drums or canisters to refuel the vehicle, you should filter the fuel before adding it.

This will prevent malfunctions in the fuel system due to contaminated fuel.

## Notes on additives in petrol

■ Operating the engine with fuel additives added later can lead to engine failure. Do not mix fuel additives with fuel. This does not include additives for the removal and prevention of residue build-up. Petrol must only be mixed with additives recommended by Mercedes-Benz. Observe the instructions for use in the product description. More information about recommended additives can be obtained from any Mercedes-Benz Service Centre.

Observe the notes on service products (> page 242).

Mercedes-Benz recommends that you use brand-name fuels that have additives.

If you use fuels without these additives for a long period of time, deposits can form. This primarily forms on the inlet valve and in the combustion chamber.

In some countries, the available fuel grade may be inadequate. Residue could build up in the fuel injection system as a result. In this case, in consultation with a Mercedes-Benz Service Centre, the fuel should be mixed with the cleaning additive recommended by Mercedes-Benz. You must observe the notes and mixing ratios indicated on the container.

#### Notes on fuel grades on vehicles with diesel engines

Observe the notes on service products (⊳ page 242).

#### ♠ WARNING

If you mix diesel fuel with petrol, the flash point of this fuel mixture is lower than that of pure diesel fuel. When the engine is running, components in the exhaust system may overheat unnoticed. There is a risk of fire.

Never refuel with petrol. Never add petrol to diesel fuel.

I Only refuel using commercially available diesel fuel that conforms to the European standard EN 590 (or equivalent national fuel standards). Fuels such as alternative fuels (fatty acid methyl ester), marine diesel, heating oil etc. are not permitted.

Do not use fuel additives. There is otherwise a risk of impaired engine performance or engine and catalytic converter damage.

- Vehicles with diesel particulate filter: in countries without sulphur-free diesel fuel, refuel using only low-sulphur diesel fuel with a sulphur content less than 50 ppm. Otherwise, the emission control system could be damaged.
- Vehicle without diesel particulate filter: in countries in which only diesel fuel with a higher sulphur content is available, the vehicle's engine oil change is carried out at shorter intervals. Further information on oil change intervals can be obtained at a qualified specialist workshop.

If you are using drums or canisters to refuel the vehicle, you should filter the fuel before adding it.

This will prevent malfunctions in the fuel system due to contaminated fuel.

Do not use fuel additives. Fuel additives can cause malfunctions and engine damage. Do not add any petrol, paraffin or flow improver to the diesel fuel to improve flow characteristics. Such flow improvers reduce the lubricant properties of the diesel fuel. This can result in damage to the diesel injection system, for example.

#### 

If you heat fuel system components, e.g. with a hot-air gun or naked flame, these components could be damaged. This can cause fuel to escape and ignite. Depending on the type of damage, fuel may also not escape until the engine is running. There is a risk of fire and explosion.

Never heat fuel system components. Contact a qualified specialist workshop to rectify the malfunction.

According to European standard EN 16942, you can find the following compatibility indications for diesel fuel:

- on the instruction label on the filler flap of your vehicle
- on the fuel pump or fuel pump nozzle suitable for your vehicle throughout Europe



1) For diesel fuel with maximum 7 % by volume bio-diesel (fatty acid methyl ester)

For more information about refuelling (⊳ page 114).

Notes on low outside temperatures

Refuel your vehicle with as much winter diesel fuel as possible at the beginning of winter. Before switching to winter diesel fuel, the fuel tank should be as empty as possible. When first refuelling with winter diesel fuel, only refuel using a small amount, e.g. to reserve level. When refuelling the next time, the fuel

Further information on fuel is available:

tank can be filled normally again.

- · at a filling station
- at a qualified specialist workshop

#### Notes on fuel consumption

#### ♥ Environmental note

 ${
m CO_2}$  (carbon dioxide) is the gas which scientists believe to be principally responsible for global warming (the greenhouse effect). Your vehicle's  ${
m CO_2}$  emissions are directly related to fuel consumption and therefore depend on:

- efficient use of the fuel by the engine
- · driving style
- other non-technical factors, such as environmental influences, road conditions or traffic flow

You can minimise your vehicle's CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by driving carefully and having it serviced regularly.

Only for certain countries: the respective current consumption and emission values of your vehicle can be found in the COC documents (CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMITY). These documents are supplied when the vehicle is delivered.

Consumption figures were based on the currently valid respective version:

- for vehicles with exhaust gas standard Euro 6 as per directive (EC) no. 715/2007
- for vehicles with exhaust gas standard EURO VI as per directive (EC) no. 595/2009

Fuel consumption depends on:

- · vehicle version
- · driving style

- · operating conditions
- the fuel type and fuel grade used

#### Tank content and fuel reserve

Depending on equipment, the total capacity of the fuel tank may vary.

Vehicles with a petrol engine

Total capacity	of which reserve fuel
80 I	13 I

Vehicles with a Euro 6 diesel engine

Total capacity	of which reserve fuel
73	14 I

Vehicles with a Euro 5 diesel engine

Total capacity	of which reserve fuel
80 I	16 I

#### Notes on AdBlue®

Observe the notes on service products ( $\triangleright$  page 242).

AdBlue<sup>®</sup> is a water-soluble fluid for the exhaust gas aftertreatment of diesel engines.

Only use AdBlue® which meets the ISO 22241 standard.

Do not mix AdBlue® with any additives and do not dilute AdBlue® with water. Exhaust gas aftertreatment may otherwise not function correctly and its components may be damaged.

- Contamination of the AdBlue<sup>®</sup>, e.g. by other service products, cleaning agents or dust, can lead to:
  - increased emission values
  - damage to the catalytic converter
  - · engine damage
  - malfunctions in exhaust gas aftertreatment

If you open the AdBlue® tank, small amounts of ammonia vapour may be released. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Only fill the AdBlue® tank in well-ventilated areas.

#### AdBlue® consumption

Like fuel consumption, AdBlue<sup>®</sup> consumption is highly dependent upon driving style and operating conditions. For this reason, your vehicle's actual consumption figures under normal operating conditions may differ from the consumption figures calculated.

Have the AdBlue<sup>®</sup> supply checked at a qualified specialist workshop before making journeys outside of Europe. Before a longer stay outside of Europe, consult a qualified specialist workshop.

#### Capacities

Total capacity of the AdBlue® tank

Total capacity	
17 I	

#### Notes on engine oil

Observe the notes on service products (> page 242).

Only Mercedes-Benz-approved engine oils may be used in Mercedes-Benz engines. Further information on engine oils and oil filters:

- in the Mercedes-Benz Specifications for Service Products at http://bevo.mercedes-benz.com (by entering the designation)
- at a qualified specialist workshop

Mercedes-Benz recommends having the oil changed at a qualified specialist workshop. For more information, please contact a qualified specialist workshop.

Engine oil replacement amount

Diesel engine OM642	Replace- ment amount
Without oil filter	Approx. 8 litres
With oil filter	Approx. 8.5 litres

Engine oil replacement amount

Diesel engine OM699	Replacement amount
Without oil filter Vehicles with 140 kW	Approx. 6.0 litres
Without oil filter Vehicles with 120 kW	Approx. 6.4 litres
With oil filter Vehicles with 140 kW	Approx. 6.3 litres
With oil filter Vehicles with 120 kW	Approx. 6.7 litres

Petrol engine M200	Replacement amount
Without oil filter	Approx. 4.4 litres
With oil filter	Approx. 4.7 litres

- Do not use any additives with the engine oil. This could damage the engine.
- Select the engine oil according to its SAE classification (viscosity), depending on the season and the average outside temperature. Using an engine oil that does not have adequate temperature characteristics, in particular during colder seasons, can lead to engine damage.

The specified temperatures of the SAE classification always refers to that of fresh oil. The temperature characteristics of the engine oil may deteriorate significantly as a result of ageing during vehicle operation, especially at low outside temperatures.

If the SAE classification of the engine oil is not suitable for the outside temperature, change the engine oil, in particular before the cold season commences. Use only an approved engine oil of the specified SAE classification.

#### Notes on brake fluid

Observe the notes on service products (⊳ page 242).



#### **↑** WARNING

The brake fluid continuously absorbs moisture from the air. This results in the boiling point of the brake fluid lowering. If the boiling point of the brake fluid is too low, vapour pockets may form when the brakes are subjected to a heavy load. This would impair braking efficiency. There is a risk of an accident.

Have the brake fluid renewed at the prescribed intervals.

Brake fluid corrodes paint, plastic and rubber. If brake fluid comes into contact with paint, plastic or rubber, rinse with water immediately.

Have the brake fluid regularly replaced at a qualified specialist workshop.

Further information on brake fluid:

- in the Mercedes-Benz Specifications for Service Products at http:// bevo.mercedesbenz.com
- at a qualified specialist workshop

#### Notes on coolant

Observe the notes on service products (⊳ page 242).



#### **↑** WARNING

If antifreeze comes into contact with hot components in the engine compartment, it may ignite. There is a risk of fire and injury. Let the engine cool down before you top up the antifreeze. Make sure that antifreeze is not spilled next to the filler neck. Thoroughly clean the antifreeze from components before starting the engine.

Only add coolant that has been premixed with the desired antifreeze protection. Otherwise you could damage the engine.

- Always use a suitable coolant mixture, even in countries where high temperatures prevail.
  - Otherwise, the engine cooling system is not sufficiently protected from corrosion and overheating.
- Take care not to spill any coolant on painted surfaces. You could otherwise damage the paintwork.

Have the coolant regularly replaced at a qualified specialist workshop.

For further information on coolant:

- in the Mercedes-Benz Specifications for Service Products at http:// bevo.mercedesbenz.com
- at a qualified specialist workshop The percentage of corrosion inhibitor/antifreeze additive in the engine cooling system:
- at least 50 % (antifreeze protection down to approximately -37 °C)
- maximum 55 % (antifreeze protection down to -45 °C)

#### Notes on washer fluid

Observe the notes on service products (⊳ page 242).



#### **↑** WARNING

Windscreen washer concentrate is highly flammable. If windscreen washer concentrate gets onto hot components of the engine or the exhaust system, it may ignite. There is a risk of fire and injury.

Make sure that windscreen washer concentrate is not spilled in the vicinity of the filler neck.

Use only washer fluids that are suitable for lamp lenses, e.g. MB SummerFit or MB WinterFit. Unsuitable washer fluids can damage the lamp lenses of the headlamps.

Do not use distilled or de-ionised water. Otherwise, the level sensor may give a false reading. Recommended washer fluid:

- above freezing point: e.g. MB SummerFit
- below freezing point: e.g. MB WinterFit

For the correct mixing ratio, refer to the information on the antifreeze reservoir.

Add washer fluid to the windscreen washer fluid all year round.

#### Vehicle data

#### Vehicle dimensions

The heights specified may vary as a result of:

- tyres
- load
- condition of the suspension
- · optional equipment

All models	
Opening range of the tailgate	393 mm
Load width	
Opening width of the tailgate Load width between the	1357 mm
wheel arches Maximum load width on the	1215 mm
loading area	1560 mm
Load height	854 mm
Vehicle length	5340 mm
Vehicle width	
Including exterior mirrors	2113 mm
Excluding exterior mirrors	1920 mm
Vehicle height	
With aerial	1819 mm
Without aerial	1790 mm
Wheelbase	3150 mm

#### Weights and loads

Please note that for the specified vehicle data:

- items of optional equipment increase the unladen weight and reduce the payload.
- vehicle-specific weight information can be found on the vehicle identification plate (▷ page 240).

Maximum roof load

All models	
Maximum roof load	100 kg

Maximum load capacity of tailgate

All models	
Maximum load capacity of tailgate	225 kg

- 1 The maximum load-bearing capacity of the tailgate refers to an opening angle of 90°.
- ① Observe the notes on loading the tailgate (▷ page 78).
- Observe the notes regarding the maximum load capacity of individual lashing points.

If you combine several lashing points to secure a load, you must always observe the maximum loading capacity of the weakest lashing point.

For example, when the brakes are fully applied, forces act which can be many times that of the weight force of the load. To distribute the load evenly, always use several lashing points. Load the lashing points as evenly as possible.

Lashing eyelets

Lashing eyelets	
Max. tensile load	150 daN

Guide rails

Guide rails	
Max. tensile load	150 daN

The maximum tensile load of the lashing points of a guide rail is 150 daN if:

- the load on the load compartment floor is secured to two lashing points on the rail and
- the distance to the nearest load-securing point on the same rail is approximately 1 m

#### Trailer tow hitch

# General notes on the trailer tow hitch

Observe the notes on towing a trailer ( $\triangleright$  page 135).

Retrofitting a trailer tow hitch is only permissible if a trailer load is specified in your vehicle documents.

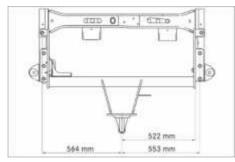
You can obtain further information on the trailer tow hitch at a qualified specialist workshop.

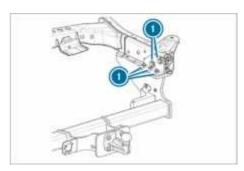
#### **Mounting dimensions**

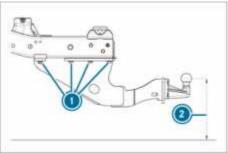
I The distance of the trailer coupling from the road surface when the vehicle is unladen depends on the model and equipment fitted on the vehicle. It is therefore not possible to give a specific figure.

Observe securing points on the chassis frame when retrofitting the trailer coupling.

You can obtain further information on retrofitting from a qualified specialist workshop.







- Securing points
- ② Distance from road surface (350 mm-420 mm, laden)

The distance from the road surface depends on the vehicle model.

Only use a trailer tow hitch which has been tested and specially approved by Mercedes-Benz for your vehicle.

#### Permissible trailer load

The following values vary and are dependent upon:

- type of vehicle
- the permissible gross vehicle weight
- · rear axle ratio
- other possible optional equipment

You must therefore observe the entries in the vehicle documents regarding operation with a trailer. The relevant permissible values (that should not be exceeded) can be found there. This information can also be found on the identification plates of the trailer tow hitch of the trailer and the vehicle. If the values differ, the lowest value applies.

When driving in mountainous areas, note that the engine power output, and with it the gradi-

ent climbing capability of the vehicle, decrease with increasing altitude.

· ·	
Maximum permissible gross weight of vehicle/trailer combination at 12% gradient	6130 kg
Permissible trailer load, braked at 12% gradient	
Vehicles without four-wheel drive	3200 kg
Vehicles with four- wheel drive	3500 kg
Permissible trailer load, unbraked	750 kg

#### Maximum drawbar load

Use a drawbar noseweight that is as close as possible to the maximum permissible noseweight. Do not fall below a noseweight of 50 kg, otherwise the trailer may come loose.

Model	Maximum drawbar load
Vehicles without four-wheel drive	128 kg
Vehicles with four- wheel drive	140 kg

# Permissible rear axle load when towing a trailer

The permissible axle load of the rear axle when towing a trailer can be found in the vehicle-specific information on the vehicle identification plate (▷ page 240).

# Notes on display messages



#### ♠ WARNING

If the instrument cluster has failed or malfunctioned, you may not recognise function restrictions relevant to safety. The operating safety of your vehicle may be impaired. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive on carefully. Have the vehicle checked at a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

Display messages and warnings from certain systems are displayed in the multifunction display. You should therefore make sure your vehicle is operating safely at all times. If the operating safety of your vehicle is impaired, stop the vehicle as soon as possible, paying attention to road and traffic conditions. Then contact a qualified specialist workshop.

Display messages with graphic symbols are simplified in the Operating Instructions and may differ from the symbols in the multifunction display. The multifunction display shows high-priority display messages in red. A warning tone sounds with certain display messages.

Please respond in accordance with the display messages and follow the additional notes in these Operating Instructions.

You can hide low-priority display messages by pressing the OK or button. The display messages are then stored in the message memory. Rectify the cause of a display message as soon as possible.

High-priority display messages cannot be hidden. These display messages will continue to be shown in the multifunction display until their cause has been rectified.

# Calling up stored display messages

On-board computer:

- ► Service ►> Messages If there are no display messages, No messages appears in the multifunction display.
- ▶ Press ▼ or ▲ to scroll through the display messages.
- ▶ To exit the message memory: press the **≐** button.

### Safety systems

#### Display messages



inoperative See Owner's Manual

### Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions

ABS, BAS, hill start assist, and ESP® as well as its driving safety systems are unavailable due to a malfunction.

#### **↑** WARNING

The brake system continues to function normally, but without the functions listed above. The wheels could therefore lock if you brake hard, for example.

This greatly impairs steerability and braking. The braking distance can increase in emergency braking situations.

If ESP® is not operational, ESP® will not stabilise the vehicle.

There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

- ▶ Drive on with care.
- ► Consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

Front-passenger airbag disabled See Owner's Manual The front-passenger front airbag is disabled during the journey even though an adult or a person with a corresponding build is occupying the co-driver's seat.

If additional forces are applied to the seat or the co-driver is not sitting on the seat cushion properly, the weight the system detects may be too low.

#### ♠ WARNING

The front-passenger front airbag does not deploy during an accident.

There is an increased risk of injury.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ The co-driver must get out of the vehicle.
- ▶ Make sure that no objects are trapped by the co-driver's seat. The system might otherwise detect too low a weight and interpret the vehicle occupant's weight on the co-driver's seat as lower than it actually is.
- ▶ Make sure that the co-driver's seat is unoccupied, close the codriver's door and switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Observe the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp in the centre console and the display messages and check the follow-

Seat unoccupied and ignition switched on:

• the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp must light up continuously

# Display messages Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions If the indicator lamp is on, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system has disabled the front-passenger front airbag. the display must not show the messages Front-passenger airbag enabled See Owner's Manual or Front-passenger airbag disabled See Owner's Manual ▶ Wait for at least one minute until the necessary system checks have been completed. ▶ Ensure that the display does not show either of the display messages about the front-passenger front airbag. If these conditions are met, the co-driver's seat can be occupied again. Depending on the build of the person on the co-driver's seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be off or may light up continuously. Observe the notes regarding weight classification for the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system. If these conditions are not met, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system is malfunctioning.

airbag" (⊳ page 43).

► Consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

You can find further information on the correct status of the frontpassenger front airbag under "Status of the front-passenger front

Front-passenger airbag enabled See Owner's Manual

#### Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions

The front-passenger front airbag is enabled during the journey in the following cases:

- the co-driver's seat is occupied by a child in a child restraint system, or a person of small stature. or
- the co-driver's seat is not occupied.

The system may detect objects or forces that are adding to the weight applied to the seat.

#### **↑** WARNING

The front-passenger front airbag may deploy unintentionally. There is an increased risk of injury.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the co-driver's door.
- ▶ Remove the child and the child restraint system from the co-driv-
- ▶ Make sure that no objects are applying additional weight to the co-driver's seat, or that there are no objects trapped by the codriver's seat.

The system may otherwise detect the additional weight and interpret the vehicle occupant's weight on the co-driver's seat as greater than it actually is.

- ▶ Make sure that the co-driver's seat is unoccupied, close the codriver's door and switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Observe the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp in the centre console and the display and check the following:
- the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp must light up continuously when the seat is unoccupied and when the ignition is switched on.

If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system has disabled the front-passenger front airbag.

- if the seat is unoccupied and the ignition is switched on, the display must not show the messages Front-passenger airbag enabled See Owner's Manual or Front-passenger airbag disabled See Owner's Manual.
- ▶ Wait for at least one minute until the necessary system checks have been completed.
- ▶ Ensure that the display does not show either of the display messages about the front-passenger front airbag.

If these conditions are met, the co-driver's seat can be occupied again. Depending on the build of the person on the co-driver's seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be off or may light up continuously. Observe the notes regarding weight classifica-

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
	tion for the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system.
	If these conditions are not met, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system is malfunctioning.
	► Fit the child restraint system on a suitable rear seat.
	or
	► Seat a person of small stature on a suitable rear seat.
	► Consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.
	You can find further information on front-passenger front airbag deactivation under "Status of the front-passenger front airbag" (> page 43).
Charle broke fluid	There is insufficient brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir.

# Check brake fluid 1eve1

Braking performance can be impaired.

There is a risk of an accident.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions. Do not drive on.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- ▶ Do not top up the brake fluid. Topping up does not rectify the fault.
- ► Consult a qualified specialist workshop.



Release parking brake

The red indicator lamp (P) in the instrument cluster lights up and a warning tone also sounds.

You are driving with the parking brake applied or are making an emergency stop using the parking brake.

# **Driving systems**

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
120 km/h! 100 km/h! Maximum speed exceeded	Only for certain countries: the maximum speed has been exceeded.  • Drive more slowly.
Off	DSR was deactivated.  If it was not deactivated by the driver, e.g. due to a malfunction in ESP®, a warning tone also sounds.
inoperative	DSR is switched on but not active, since you are driving faster than $35\ km/h$ or the transmission is in level N.
PRE-SAFE Functions limited See Own- er's Manual	Active Brake Assist or Lane Keeping Assist is not available due to a malfunction.  ▶ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
PRE-SAFE Functions currently limited See Owner's Manual	Active Brake Assist or Lane Keeping Assist is temporarily inoperative. Possible causes:  • the sensors in the front bumper are dirty.  • the function is impaired due to heavy rain or snow.  • the radar sensor system is temporarily inoperative, e.g. due to electromagnetic radiation emitted by nearby TV or radio stations or other sources of electromagnetic radiation.  • the system is outside the operating temperature range.  • The on-board voltage is too low.  • A regulatory system intervention is carried out by ABS or ESP.  • The camera's field of vision is impaired, e.g. due to condensation. The Active Brake Assist is operational again and the Lane Keeping Assist can be engaged again.  If the display message does not disappear:  ▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.  ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  ▶ switch off the engine.  ▶ clean the sensors in the front bumper (▷ page 214).  ▶ Clean the camera's field of vision or remove impairments.  ▶ restart the engine.
Radar sensors dirty See Owner's Manual	A warning tone also sounds.  At least one of the following driving systems or driving safety systems is temporarily restricted or inoperative:  Brake Assist (BAS)  Possible causes:  the sensors in the radiator trim and/or in the bumpers are dirty.  the function of the driving system and/or driving safety system is impaired due to heavy rain or snow.  Once the causes listed above no longer apply, the display message goes out and the driving systems/driving safety systems are operational again.  If the display message does not disappear:  Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.  Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  switch off the engine.  clean the sensors (▷ page 214).  Clean the sensors in the following locations:  in the radiator trim  in the front bumper  in the rear bumper

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
SPEEDTRONIC km/h	While depressing the accelerator pedal (kickdown), the speed limiter cannot be activated  ▶ If conditions permit, drive faster than 30 km/h and store the speed.
SPEEDTRONIC suspended	You are depressing the accelerator pedal. Whilst you are accelerating, the speed limiter does not control the speed.  ▶ Release the accelerator pedal. The speed limiter is reactivated and limits the speed.
Lane Keeping Assist inoperative	<ul> <li>The Lane Keeping Assist is inoperative Possible causes are:</li> <li>The drive range 4L is activated.</li> <li>The Lane Keeping Assist is deactivated and a warning message sounds.</li> <li>Lane Keeping Assist is malfunctioning.</li> <li>Drive range 4L is activated: the Lane Keeping Assist can be manually activated again once drive range switched from 4L to 4H or 4MAT.</li> <li>Lane Keeping Assist is malfunctioning: Consult a qualified specialist workshop.</li> </ul>
Lane Keeping Assist currently unavailable See Owner's Manual	Lane Keeping Assist is deactivated and temporarily inoperative.  Possible causes:  • the windscreen is dirty in the camera's field of vision.  • visibility is impaired due to heavy rain, snow or fog.  • there are no lane markings for an extended period.  • the lane markings are worn away, dark or covered, e.g. by dirt or snow.  Once the causes listed above no longer apply, the display message goes out and Lane Keeping Assist is operational again.  If the display message does not disappear:  ▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.  ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  ▶ clean the windscreen.
Cruise control	An activation condition for cruise control has not been met.  You have tried to store a speed below 40 km/h, for example.  ▶ If conditions permit, drive faster than 40 km/h and store the speed.  ▶ Check the activation conditions for cruise control (▷ page 124).

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
TSA inoperative	Traffic Sign Assist is malfunctioning.  ► Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
TSA currently unavailable, see Operating Instructions	Traffic Sign Assist is deactivated and temporarily inoperative. Possible causes:
	• the windscreen is dirty in the camera's field of vision.
	<ul> <li>visibility is impaired due to heavy rain, snow or fog.</li> </ul>
	Once the causes listed above no longer apply, the display message goes out and Traffic Sign Assist is operational again.
	If the display message does not disappear:
	► Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.
	► Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).
	► clean the windscreen.

Engine	
Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
See Owner's Manual	A warning tone also sounds. The battery is no longer being charged.  Possible causes:  • faulty alternator  • torn poly-V-belt  • a malfunction in the electronics  ► Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions, and switch off the engine.  ■ Do not continue driving. The engine could otherwise overheat.  ► Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  ► consult a qualified specialist workshop.
Refill AdBlue See Owner's Manual	A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue <sup>®</sup> level has dropped to the reserve level. The AdBlue <sup>®</sup> range is approximately 2400 km.  ▶ Refill AdBlue <sup>®</sup> as soon as possible (▷ page 116).
Refill AdBlue No start in mi	A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue <sup>®</sup> supply is almost used up and only sufficient for the indicated route. If you subsequently switch off the engine, the engine management prevents the engine from being started again. You can then only start the engine if you have refilled the AdBlue <sup>®</sup> tank.  ▶ Refill AdBlue <sup>®</sup> immediately (▷ page 116).

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions

Refill AdBlue Eng. start not possible A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue<sup>®</sup> supply has been used up. When you switch off the engine, the engine management prevents the engine from being started again. You can then only start the engine if you have refilled the AdBlue® tank.

When you stop and park the vehicle:

- ▶ stop the vehicle in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- ▶ add at least two refill bottles or approximately 4 litres of AdBlue® (⊳ page 116).
- ▶ turn the key to position 3 in the ignition lock for approximately one minute.

When the new level is detected by the engine management, you can then start the engine again.

▶ start the engine.



A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue® supply is almost used up and only sufficient for the indicated route. If you subsequently switch off the engine, the engine management prevents the engine from being started again. You can then only start the engine if you have refilled the AdBlue® tank.

► Refill AdBlue<sup>®</sup> immediately (> page 116).



ua1

Emer. oper.: 20km/h No start in: ... mi See Owner's Manual

A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue® supply has been used up. You can drive a further 50 km at a maximum speed of 20 km/h. If you subsequently switch off the engine, the engine management prevents the engine from being started again. You can then only start the engine if you have refilled the AdBlue® tank.

When you stop and park the vehicle:

- ▶ stop the vehicle in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- add at least two refill bottles or approximately 4 litres of AdBlue® (⊳ page 116).
- ▶ turn the key to position 3 in the ignition lock for approximately one minute.

When the new level is detected by the engine management, you can then start the engine again.

▶ start the engine.



AdBlue system Malfunction See Owner's Manual

A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue® system is malfunctioning.

► Consult a qualified specialist workshop.

AdBlue malfunction Emer. oper. in ... mi See Öwner's Manual

A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue® system is malfunctioning. The displayed route is the maximum you can drive. The engine management then prevents the engine from being started again.

consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.



Emer. oper.: 20km/h No start in: ... mi See Owner's Manual

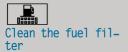
# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions

A warning tone also sounds. The AdBlue® system is malfunctioning. You can drive a further 50 km at a maximum speed of 20 km/h. If you subsequently switch off the engine, the engine management prevents the engine from being started again.

▶ Drive on to a qualified specialist workshop.

or

► Stop the vehicle in accordance with the traffic conditions and consult a qualified specialist workshop.



There is water in the fuel filter. The water must be drained off.

► Consult a qualified specialist workshop.



Coolant Stop vehicle Switch engine off A warning tone also sounds. The coolant is too hot.

## **↑** WARNING

Never drive with an overheated engine. Driving when the engine is overheated can cause fluids which may have leaked into the engine compartment to catch fire.

In addition, steam from an overheated engine can cause serious burns, which can occur just by opening the bonnet.

There is a risk of injury.

- ► Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions, and switch off the engine.
- ▶ secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).
- ▶ Wait until the engine has cooled down.
- Make sure that the air supply to the engine radiator is not obstructed - by frozen slush, for example.
- ▶ Do not start the engine again until the display message goes out and the coolant temperature is below 120 °C. The engine could otherwise be damaged.
- ► Monitor the coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster.
- ► If the temperature increases again, consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

Under normal driving conditions and with the correct coolant level, the display L. may rise to 120 °C.



The fan motor is faulty.

► Check the coolant temperature gauge in the instrument

If the coolant temperature is below 120 °C, you can drive on to the nearest qualified specialist workshop.

Avoid heavy engine loads, e.g. driving in mountainous terrain, and stop-and-go traffic.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
	The coolant level is too low.
Check coolant level	Avoid making long journeys with too little coolant in the engine cooling system. The engine will otherwise be damaged.
	► Top up the coolant, making sure to observe the warning notes (> page 210).
	► If you have to top up the coolant more frequently, have the engine cooling system checked at a qualified specialist workshop.
	The engine air filter is dirty and must be replaced.
Replace air cleaner	Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
	A warning tone also sounds. The oil level has dropped to the minimum level.
Check eng. oil lev. when next	► Check the oil level, at the latest when next refuelling (> page 209).
refuelling	▶ If necessary, top up the engine oil (▷ page 209).
	► Have the engine checked at a qualified specialist workshop if the engine oil needs topping up more often than usual.
	Avoid long journeys when there is too little coolant in the cooling system. Otherwise the engine will be damaged.
<b>1</b>	The oil level is too low. There is a risk of engine damage.
Engine oil level	▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions, and switch off the engine.
Stop vehicle, switch engine off	▶ secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).
	<ul> <li>► Check the oil level (▷ page 209).</li> <li>► If necessary, top up the engine oil (▷ page 209).</li> </ul>
	The fuel level has dropped to the reserve range.
Reserve fuel level	▶ Refuel at the nearest filling station.
	There is very little fuel in the fuel tank.
	► Refuel at the nearest filling station without fail.

Tyres	
Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Check tyre(s)	A warning tone also sounds.  The tyre pressure in one or more tyres has dropped significantly. The display shows the wheel position.  ✓ WARNING  Tyre pressures that are too low present the following hazards:  • the tyres may burst, especially as the load and vehicle speed increase.  • the tyres may wear excessively and/or unevenly, which may greatly impair tyre traction.  • the driving characteristics as well as steering and braking characteristics may be severely impaired.  There is a risk of an accident.  ▶ Stop the vehicle without making any sudden steering or braking manoeuvres. Pay attention to the traffic conditions while doing so.  ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  ▶ Check the tyre pressure (▷ page 231).  ▶ If necessary, correct the tyre pressure.  ▶ Check the tyres and, if necessary, change the wheel (▷ page 234).
Tyre press. moni- tor inoperative	The tyre pressure monitor is malfunctioning.  ▶ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Key	
Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Change key batteries	The key battery is discharged.  ▶ Replace the battery (▷ page 63).
Key not detected (White display message)	The key battery is discharged.  ▶ Replace the battery (▷ page 63).
Key not detected (Red display message)	The key is not detected and may no longer be in the vehicle. The key is no longer in the vehicle and you stop the engine:  • you can no longer start the engine.  • you cannot lock the vehicle centrally.  Make sure the key is in the vehicle.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
	The key battery is discharged.  ▶ Replace the battery (▷ page 63).
	The key is faulty.  ▶ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.

Vehicle	
Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
To start engine, shift to either P or N	You have attempted to start the engine in transmission position <b>R</b> or <b>D</b> .  ▶ Shift the transmission to position <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> .
Auxiliary battery malfunction	The auxiliary battery for the transmission is no longer being charged.  ▶ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
Apply brake to deselect Park (P) position	You attempted to shift the transmission to position D, R or N without depressing the brake pedal.  ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
Risk of vehicle rolling Transmis- sion not in P	A warning tone also sounds. The driver's door is open and the transmission is in position [R], [N] or [D].  ► Shift the transmission to position [P].  ► Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).
Only select Park (P) when vehicle is stationary	<ul> <li>The vehicle is still moving.</li> <li>▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.</li> <li>▶ Shift the transmission to position P.</li> </ul>

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Clutch overheated Avoid pulling away Engage/disengage clutch quickly if req.	A warning tone also sounds. The clutch is under considerable load and the permitted operating temperature has been exceeded.  Avoid frequent pulling away and driving at walking pace over longer distances.  ▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.  ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (▷ page 117).  ▶ Leave the engine running.  The clutch is cooled more quickly with the engine running.  or  ▶ If possible, continue driving at a steady speed.  ▶ Remove your foot from the clutch pedal and do not allow the clutch to slip.  The clutch may also cool down during the journey.  It may take several minutes for it to cool down. When the clutch has cooled down, the display message disappears and the clutch is fully
	operational again.
<b>ĕ</b> ─ <b>₱</b>	<ul> <li>A warning tone also sounds. The bonnet is open.</li> <li></li></ul>
	An additional warning tone sounds while the vehicle is in motion. The display shows the open door(s).  ▶ Close all the doors.
Power steering mal- function See Own- er's Manual	<ul> <li>A warning tone also sounds. The steering power assistance could be malfunctioning. You may need to steer more forcefully.</li> <li>Carefully continue to a qualified specialist workshop and have the steering checked immediately.</li> </ul>
TCO Tachograph	The tachograph provides the driver with relevant information, e.g. that the tachograph is malfunctioning.  Possible causes for malfunctions are displayed on the tachograph and in the manufacturer's Operating Instructions.
Top up washer fluid	The washer fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir has dropped below the minimum.  ▶ Top up the washer fluid (▷ page 212).

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
LOW RANGE Stop Apply parking brake	<ul> <li>The transfer case is malfunctioning.</li> <li>▶ Pull over and stop the vehicle, in accordance with the traffic conditions.</li> <li>▶ Apply the manual parking brake.</li> <li>▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away, if necessary.</li> <li>▶ Shift the transmission to position P.</li> </ul>
Different. lock sys. Malfunction	The transfer case is malfunctioning.  ➤ Do not shift the transfer case.  ➤ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by applying the manual parking brake.  ➤ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
LOW RANGE Malfunc- tion	The transfer case is malfunctioning.  ➤ Do not shift the transfer case.  ➤ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by applying the manual parking brake.  ➤ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
LOW RANGE Shift to position N briefly	One or more shift conditions were not been met.  ➤ Shift the transmission to position N.  ➤ Repeat the shift operation.
LOW RANGE Max. speed 40 km/h	The maximum permissible speed of 40 km/h has been exceeded for the shift operation.  ▶ Drive more slowly.  ▶ Repeat the shift operation.
LOW RANGE Malfunc- tion To park, apply parking brake	The transfer case is malfunctioning.  ➤ Do not shift the transfer case.  ➤ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by applying the manual parking brake.  ➤ Consult a qualified specialist workshop.
LOW RANGE Max. speed 70 km/h	The maximum permissible speed of 70 km/h has been exceeded for the shift operation.  ▶ Drive more slowly.  ▶ Repeat the shift operation.
Gearbox protection Limit 30 km/h Switch off LOW RANGE	The oil temperature in the transfer case is too high.  ▶ Shift to the on-road position HIGH RANGE.
Different. locking sys. cooling down Please wait	The differential locks have overheated.  ▶ Wait briefly.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
LOW RANGE Shifting cancelled Please reactivate	The transfer case has not performed the shift operation.  ▶ Repeat the shift operation.  ▶ Maintain all shift conditions .
LOW RANGE Max. speed 10 km/h	The maximum permissible speed of 10 km/h has been exceeded for the shift operation.  ▶ Drive more slowly.  ▶ Repeat the shift operation.
LOW RANGE Max. speed 20 km/h	The maximum permissible speed of 20 km/h has been exceeded for the shift operation.  ▶ Drive more slowly.  ▶ Repeat the shift operation.

# Lights

**♪** 

On vehicles with LED headlamps and/or LED tail lamps the display only shows certain messages when a certain number of LEDs for a light function have failed.

Display messages	Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
Left dipped beam or Right dipped	The left or right-hand dipped-beam headlamp is faulty.  ▶ LED headlamp: consult a qualified specialist workshop.

# Indicator and warning lamps

# Overview of indicator and warning lamps

When switching on the ignition, some systems carry out a self-check. Some indicator and warning lamps may temporarily turn on or start to flash. This is not an indication of any problem. Only when these indicator and warning lamps turn on or start flashing after the engine has started or during the journey has a malfunction occurred.

D	Dipped-beam headlamps (▷ page 86)
<del>-</del> 00 <del>-</del>	Side lamps (⊳ page 86)
≣D	Main-beam headlamps (▷ page 87)
¢	Turn signal lamp (⊳ page 87)

Rear foglamp (⊳ page 86)

<b>\$</b> D	Front foglamps (⊳ page 86)
4	Seat belt (⊳ page 271)
<b>(</b> (1)	Braking (⊳ page 267)
(ABS)	ABS (⊳ page 268)
25	ESP <sup>®</sup> (⊳ page 268)
OFF	ESP <sup>®</sup> OFF (⊳ page 268)
<b>(P)</b>	Parking brake (red) (⊳ page 270)
(P)	Parking brake (yellow) (▷ page 270)
<b>⊕</b> !	Power steering (⊳ page 275)
<b>≱</b> ⁄	Restraint system (▷ page 270)
	Engine diagnostics (⊳ page 275)
<b>4</b>	Reserve fuel (⊳ page 275)
≈ <b>t</b>	Coolant (⊳ page 276)
	Distance warning signal (▷ page 275)
(!)	Tyre pressure monitor (▷ page 277)

#### Safety systems

# Warning/ indicator lamp

#### Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



 ➤ The red brake warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. EBD is unavailable due to a malfunction. ABS, Brake Assist (BAS), hill start assist and ESP® as well as its driving safety systems, for example, are therefore

#### **↑** WARNING

also unavailable.

The brake system continues to work, but without the functions listed above. The wheels could therefore lock prematurely if you brake hard, for example.

This greatly impairs steerability and braking. The braking distance can increase in emergency braking situations.

If ESP® is not operational, ESP® will not stabilise the vehicle.

There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

- ▶ Switch the engine off, wait briefly and start the engine again.
- ► Check if the display message has disappeared and ESP® is operational.
- ▶ If the display message continues to be displayed:
  - drive on with care.
  - consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

(I)

> The red brake warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. A warning tone also sounds.



#### **↑** WARNING

The brake boosting effect is malfunctioning and the braking characteristics may be affected.

There is a risk of an accident.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions. Do not drive on.
- ▶ secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- consult a qualified specialist workshop.
- ▶ observe the display messages.

# Warning/ indicator lamp

### Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> The yellow ABS warning lamp is lit while the engine is running.

ABS has been deactivated due to a malfunction. Brake Assist (BAS), hill start assist and ESP® as well as its driving safety systems, for example, are therefore also deactivated.



#### ♠ WARNING

The brake system continues to work, but without the functions listed above. The wheels could therefore lock prematurely if you brake hard, for example.

This greatly impairs steerability and braking. The braking distance can increase in emergency braking situations.

If ESP® is not operational, ESP® will not stabilise the vehicle.

There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

- ▶ Switch the engine off, wait briefly and start the engine again.
- ► Check if the display message has disappeared and ESP® is operational.
- ▶ If the display message continues to be displayed:
  - · drive on with care.
  - consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

If the ABS control unit is faulty, there is also a possibility that other systems, such as the navigation system or the automatic transmission, will be restricted or unavailable.



The yellow ESP<sup>®</sup> warning lamp flashes while the vehicle is in motion.

ESP® or traction control is intervening because there is a risk of skidding or at least one wheel has started to spin.

Cruise control is deactivated.

- ▶ When pulling away, depress the accelerator pedal only as far as necessary.
- ► Ease off the accelerator pedal while driving.
- ▶ Adapt your driving style to suit the weather and road conditions.
- Do not deactivate ESP®.

In rare cases, it may be best to deactivate  $ESP^{\otimes}$  ( $\triangleright$  page 122).



The yellow ESP<sup>®</sup> warning lamp is lit while the engine is running.

ESP®, Brake Assist (BAS) and hill start assist are unavailable due to a malfunction.



#### ♠ WARNING

The brake system continues to work, but without the functions listed above.

The braking distance can thus increase in emergency braking situations.

If ESP® is not operational, ESP® will not stabilise the vehicle.

There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

- observe the display messages.
- drive on with care.
- consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

# Warning/ indicator lamp

### ⇒ Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> The yellow ESP® OFF warning lamp is lit while the engine is running or the ECO start/stop function is activated.

ESP® is deactivated.



#### **↑** WARNING

If ESP® is deactivated, vehicle stabilisation assistance is significantly reduced. There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

▶ Reactivate ESP<sup>®</sup>.

In rare cases, it may be best to deactivate ESP<sup>®</sup> (⊳ page 122).

▶ Adapt your driving style to suit the weather and road conditions.

If ESP® cannot be activated:

- ▶ drive on with care.
- ▶ have ESP<sup>®</sup> checked at a qualified specialist workshop.



> The yellow ESP® OFF warning lamp is lit while the engine is running, the

display also flashes in the multifunction display.

The differential lock button was pressed, but the conditions for activating the differential lock have not been met.

ESP® is deactivated.



#### **↑** WARNING

If ESP® is deactivated via the differential lock button, vehicle stabilisation assistance is completely deactivated.

There is an increased risk of skidding and accidents.

- Reactivate ESP® by pressing the differential lock button (▷ page 112).
- ▶ Adapt your driving style to suit the weather and road conditions.

under "Occupant safety".

Warning/ indicator lamp	Signal type Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
<b>(P)</b>	<ul> <li>▷ The red indicator lamp for the parking brake flashes or is lit and/or the yellow warning lamp for the parking brake is lit.</li> <li>The parking brake is malfunctioning or the display instructs the driver to release the parking brake.</li> <li>If only the red parking brake indicator lamp is lit, the parking brake has been applied.</li> <li>▶ Observe the display messages (▷ page 255).</li> </ul>
<b>9</b> ;	
	The airbags or belt tensioners may either be triggered unintentionally or, in the event of an accident, may not be triggered.  There is an increased risk of injury.  ▶ observe the display messages.  ▶ drive on with care.  ▶ have the restraint system and its components checked immediately at a qualified specialist workshop.

Further information on the restraint system and its components can be found

# Seat belt Warning/ Signal type indicator Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions lamp 4 ▶ After starting the engine, the red seat belt warning lamp lights up or flashes. A warning tone may also sound. Only for certain countries: the red seat belt warning lamp lights up for a maximum of six seconds after the ignition is switched on. The seat belt warning lamp reminds the driver and co-driver to fasten their seat belts. ► Fasten the seat belt (> page 41). 4 > The red seat belt warning lamp lights up after the engine starts, as soon as the driver's or the co-driver's door is closed. The driver or co-driver has not fastened their seat belt. ► Fasten the seat belt (> page 41). The warning lamp goes out. On vehicles with the co-driver's automatic front airbag deactivation system, there are objects on the co-driver's seat. ▶ Remove the objects from the co-driver's seat and store them in a safe place. The warning lamp goes out. 4 > The red seat belt warning lamp flashes and an intermittent audible warning sounds. The driver or co-driver has not fastened their seat belt. At the same time, you are driving faster than 25 km/h or have briefly driven faster than 25 km/h. ► Fasten your seat belt (> page 41). The warning lamp goes out and the intermittent audible warning ceases. On vehicles with the co-driver's automatic front airbag deactivation system, there are objects on the co-driver's seat. At the same time, you are driving faster than 25 km/h or have briefly driven faster than 25 km/h. ▶ Remove the objects from the co-driver's seat and store them in a safe place. The warning lamp goes out and the intermittent warning tone ceases.

# Automatic front passenger airbag actuation

#### PASSENGER AIR BAG ON

# Warning/ indicator lamp

### ⇒ Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp goes out and PASSENGER AIR BAG ON lights up.

The front-passenger front airbag is enabled during the journey although the codriver's seat:

- is occupied by a child in a child restraint system, or a person of small stature or
- is not occupied.

The system may detect objects or forces that are adding to the weight applied to the seat.

#### **↑** WARNING

The front-passenger front airbag may deploy unintentionally.

There is an increased risk of injury.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the co-driver's door.
- ▶ Remove the child and the child restraint system from the co-driver's seat.
- ▶ Make sure that no objects are applying additional weight to the co-driver's seat, or that there are no objects trapped by the co-driver's seat. The system may otherwise detect the additional weight and interpret the vehicle occupant's weight on the co-driver's seat as greater than it actually is.
- ▶ Make sure that the co-driver's seat is unoccupied, close the co-driver's door and switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Observe the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp in the centre console and check the following:
  - the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp must light up continuously when the seat is unoccupied and when the ignition is switched on. If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system has disabled the front-passenger front airbag.
- ▶ Wait for at least one minute until the necessary system checks have been completed.

If these conditions are met, the co-driver's seat can be occupied again. Depending on the build of the person on the co-driver's seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be off or may light up continuously. Observe the notes regarding weight classification for the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system.

Warning/ indicator lamp	Signal type Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions
	If these conditions are not met, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system is malfunctioning.
	► Fit the child restraint system on a suitable rear seat.
	or
	► Seat a person of small stature on a suitable rear seat.
	► Consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.
	You can find further information on front-passenger front airbag deactivation under "Status of the front-passenger front airbag" ( $\triangleright$ page 43).

#### PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF

# Warning/ indicator lamp

#### Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.

The front-passenger front airbag is disabled during the journey even though an adult or a person with a corresponding build is occupying the co-driver's seat. If additional forces are applied to the seat or the co-driver is not sitting on the seat cushion properly, the weight the system detects may be too low.

#### ↑ WARNING

The front-passenger front airbag does not deploy during an accident.

There is an increased risk of injury.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ The co-driver must get out of the vehicle.
- ▶ Make sure that no objects are trapped by the co-driver's seat. The system might otherwise detect too low a weight and interpret the vehicle occupant's weight on the co-driver's seat as lower than it actually is.
- ▶ Make sure that the co-driver's seat is unoccupied, close the co-driver's door and switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Observe the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp in the centre console and check the following:

the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp must light up continuously when the seat is unoccupied and when the ignition is switched on. If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is on, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system has disabled the front-passenger front air-

▶ Wait for at least one minute until the necessary system checks have been completed.

If these conditions are met, the co-driver's seat can be occupied again. Depending on the build of the person on the co-driver's seat, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp may be off or may light up continuously. Observe the notes regarding weight classification for the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system.

If these conditions are not met, the automatic front-passenger front airbag deactivation system is malfunctioning.

► Consult a qualified specialist workshop immediately.

You can find further information on the correct status of the front-passenger front airbag under "Status of the front-passenger front airbag" (⊳ page 43).

# **Driving systems**

# Warning/ indicator lamp

#### ⇒ Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> The red distance warning lamp is lit. A warning tone also sounds.

Active Brake Assist has detected a danger of collision and has initiated autonomous braking.

- ▶ Be prepared to brake immediately.
- ▶ Pay particular attention to the traffic situation. You may have to brake or take evasive action.

#### **Vehicle**

### Warning/ indicator lamp

#### Signal type

### Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



> The red power steering warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. A warning tone also sounds.

The steering power assistance could be malfunctioning. You may need to steer more forcefully.

 Carefully continue to a qualified specialist workshop and have the steering checked immediately.

# **Engine**

#### Warning/ indicator lamp

#### ⇒ Signal type

# Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions



 $\triangleright$  The yellow engine diagnostics warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. There may be a fault, for example:

- in the engine management
- in the injection system
- in the exhaust system
- in the ignition system (for vehicles with petrol engines)
- in the fuel system

The emission limit values may be exceeded as a result and the engine may be running in emergency mode.

Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible at a qualified specialist workshop.



▷ The yellow reserve fuel warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. The fuel level has dropped to the reserve range.

Refuel at the nearest filling station.

system checked.

# Warning/ Signal type indicator Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions lamp > The red coolant warning lamp is lit while the engine is running and the cool-|≈₺=| ant temperature gauge is at the start of the scale. The temperature sensor for the coolant temperature gauge is faulty. The coolant temperature is no longer being monitored. There is a risk of engine damage if the coolant temperature is too high. ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions, and switch off the engine. Do not drive on. ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117). ► Consult a qualified specialist workshop. ~£~ ➤ The red coolant warning lamp is lit while the engine is running. The coolant level is too low. If the coolant level is correct, the air supply to the engine radiator may be blocked or the electric engine radiator fan may be malfunctioning. The coolant is too hot and the engine is no longer being cooled sufficiently. ▶ Observe the display messages. ▶ Stop the vehicle immediately, in accordance with the traffic conditions, and switch off the engine. ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117). ▶ Exit the vehicle and keep a safe distance from the vehicle until the engine has cooled down. ► Check the coolant level and top up the coolant, observing the warning notes (⊳ page 210). ▶ If you have to top up the coolant more frequently, have the engine cooling

- frozen slush, for example.

   Monitor the coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Monitor the coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Do not start the engine again until the coolant temperature is below 120 °C. The engine could otherwise be damaged.

▶ Make sure that the air supply to the engine radiator is not obstructed – by

- ► Check the coolant temperature using the analogue display in the instrument cluster (▷ page 138).
- Drive to the nearest qualified specialist workshop. Avoid heavy engine loads, e.g. driving in mountainous terrain, and stop-and-go traffic.

# **Tyres** Warning/ Signal type indicator Possible causes/consequences and ▶ Solutions lamp (i) ▷ The yellow tyre pressure monitor warning lamp (pressure loss/malfunction) is lit. The tyre pressure monitor has detected a loss of pressure in at least one of the **↑** WARNING Tyre pressures that are too low present the following hazards: • The tyres may burst, especially as the load and vehicle speed increase. • The tyres may wear excessively and/or unevenly, which may greatly impair tyre traction. The handling as well as steering and braking characteristics may be severely impaired. There is a risk of an accident. ▶ Stop the vehicle without making any sudden steering or braking manoeuvres. Pay attention to the traffic conditions while doing so. ▶ Secure the vehicle against rolling away (> page 117). Observe the display messages. ► Check the tyres and, if necessary, change the wheel (> page 234). ► Check the tyre pressure (> page 231).

(i)

> The yellow tyre pressure monitor (pressure loss/malfunction) warning lamp flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit.

The tyre pressure monitor is malfunctioning.

▶ If necessary, correct the tyre pressure.



#### **↑** WARNING

The system is possibly unable to detect or register low tyre pressure as inten-

There is a risk of an accident.

- ▶ Observe the display messages.
- ► Visit a qualified specialist workshop.

#### **Publication details**

# Internet

Further information about Mercedes-Benz vehicles and about Daimler AG can be found on the following websites:

http://www.mercedes-benz.com http://www.daimler.com

#### **Documentation team**

You are welcome to forward any queries or suggestions you may have regarding these Operating Instructions to:

Daimler AG, HPC: CAC, Customer Service, 70546 Stuttgart, Germany

<sup>©</sup> Daimler AG: reprinting, translation and reproduction, even in part, is forbidden without written permission from Daimler AG.

# Vehicle manufacturer

Daimler AG Mercedesstraße 137 70327 Stuttgart Germany



Order no. T470 0022 02 Part no. 470 584 86 04 Edition 09-18

